Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

गुरुकुल कांगड़ी विश्वविद्यालय, हरिद्वार
पुस्तकालय

R
181-48
A 5
V.XVI

विषय संख्या
पुस्तक संख्या
आगत पंजिका संख्या

पुस्तक पर किसी प्रकार का निशान लगाना वर्जित है। कृपया १५ दिन से अधिक समय तक पुस्तक अपने पास न रखें।

110021

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

यह पुस्तक वितरित न की जाय
NOT TO BE ISSUED

सन्दर्भ ग्रन्थ
REFRENCE BOOK

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Vol. XVI] NOV., 1958—FEB., 1959 [Parts 1—2

CHECKED 1973

THE JOURNAL OF THE GANGANATHA JHA RESEARCH INSTITUTE

64043

Ganganatha Jha Research Institute
1943
Allahabad.

ALLAHABAD

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Vol. XVI] NOV., 1958—FEB., 1959 [Parts 1—2

110021

THE JOURNAL OF THE GANGANATHA JHA RESEARCH INSTITUTE

ALLAHABAD

Ganganatha Jha Research Institute
1943
Allahabad.

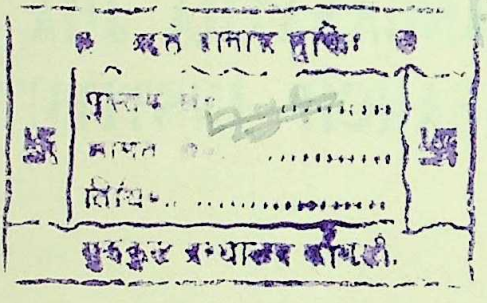
CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Board of Editors

Dr. B. C. Law
Dr. A. Siddiqi
Dr. Ishwari Prasad
Mm. Dr. Umesha Mishra

R
181.48
A5J
v. XVI
P.1-4



Published by
The Honorary Secretary,
Ganganatha Jha Research Institute
Allahabad

Printed by P. L. Yadava
at The Indian Press (Private) Ltd.
Allahabad

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

110021
Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri
Ganganatha Jha Research Institute 1943 Allahabad.

JOURNAL
OF THE
GANGANATHA JHA RESEARCH INSTITUTE

Vol. XVI, Pts. 1—2

NOV., 1958—FEB., 1959

CONTENTS

	PAGE
A Peculiar Gift Recorded in the Matsyapurāṇa and Dānasāgara. By Bhabatosh Bhattacharya, M.A., B.L., Kāvyatīrtha	1
Nature of Meaning. By Dr. P. S. Sastri, D.Litt., University, Gorakhpur	5
Śarvilaka—Not a Resident of Ujjainī. By Prof. Sadashiv A. Dange, M.A., Prof. G. S. College, Khaurgaon (B.S.)	39
Aspects of Ancient Indian Society as Revealed in the Dharmasūtras By Dr. Sures Chandra Banerji, M.A., D.Phil., Government College, Darjeeling ...	49
Role of the Vedic Gods in the Gṛhya-Sūtras. By Sri Alakh Niranjan Pande, M.A., B.T., Asst. Inspector of Skt. Pāṭhaśālās, Vārāṇasī	91
Kauṭalya and His Arthaśāstra. By Śrī Dev Raj Channa	135
Ancient Schools of Vedic Interpretation. By Dr. S. K Gupta, M.A., Ph.D., University, Gorakhpur...	143
A Plea for 'Umāsahitā Akṣa-krīḍāmūrti'. By Śrī R. Sen Gupta, Deptt. of Archaeology, Aurangabad	155
Similes in Śaṅkara's Bhāṣya on the Kaṭhopaniṣad. By Dr. M. D. Paradkar, M.A., Ph.D., R. R. College, Matunga, Bombay	159
"Religion" and "Science"—In Vedāntic Ensemble. By Bhabes Chandra Chaudhur, F. R. A. S., Babupara, Jalpaiguri	171
Science of Geography in the Ṛgveda. By Śrī Māyā Prasad Trīpaṭhī, University, Allahabad ...	185
The Critical and Comparative Study of Indian Aesthetics. By Śrī H. L. Sharma, Inspector of Schools	201
Reviews of Books	245
Obituary of B. R. Dr. Bhagwan Dass. By Dr. Hafiz Syed, M.A., Ph.D., D.Litt., Allahabad (with a Photograph from Rājyapāla Śrī Śrīprakāsh, Bombay)	259

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

JOURNAL

OF THE

GANGANATHA JHA RESEARCH INSTITUTE

Vol. XVI, Pts. 3—4

MAY—AUGUST, 1959

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Studies in Indian History and Geography Based on Early Greek Accounts. By Dr. B. C. Law ...	265
Some Reflections and Notes on South Indian Mysticism. By Dr. K. C. Varadachari	307
Dharmaśātras and the Modern Age. By Dr. P. T. Raju	325
Dr. Radhakrishnan and Idealism. By Dr. P. Nagaraja Rao	373
"A Suggestion for a Ballet—*Abhijñāna-Śākuntalam.*" By Dr. J. K. Balbir	379
Some Aspects of Administration and Society in Orissa under Marathas. By Dr. Bhabani Charan Ray ...	397
On the Import of a Paurānic Verse. By Dr. Viman Chandra Bhattacharyya	423
The Critical and Comparative Study of Indian Aesthetics. By Śrī H. L. Sharma, Inspector of Schools	433
Survey and Cartography in the Śulvasūtras. By Shri Maya Prasad Tripathi	469
Reviews of Books	487

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

पुस्तकालय
गुरुकुल कांगड़ी विश्वविद्यालय
हरिद्वार

Ganganatha Jha Research Institute
1943
Allahabad

JOURNAL
OF THE
GANGANATHA JHA RESEARCH INSTITUTE

Vol. XVI] NOV. 1958—FEB. 1959 [Parts 1—2

A PECULIAR GIFT RECORDED IN THE *MATSYA-PURĀṆA* AND *DĀNASĀGARA**

By BHABATOSH BHATTACHARYA

THE just published *Dānasāgara* of Ballāla Sena[1] describes 1375 gifts in its 75 *āvartas* or chapters. Though its chapter 33, consisting of 20 pages,[2] contains an elaborate description of 37 kinds of gift of gold, collected from various authorities, yet its chapter 44, covering 3 pages only,[3] is concerned with the peculiar gift of 30 kinds of *Kalpas*, made of gold, the only authority being the *Matsyapurāṇa*. As we have not discussed the nature of this gift in our Introduction to the *Dānasāgara*, so we propose to do the same here.

"I shall now describe the gift of *Kalpas*, which not only destroys all kinds of sin but the recital of which also endows the reciter with the religious merit, resulting from the chanting of the Vedas. The first *Kalpa* is the *śveta* (*i.e.* white), the second one is the *Nīlalohita* (*i.e.* partly blue and partly red, meaning 'Śiva'), the third one is *Vāma-*

*Paper submitted to the Classical Sanskrit section of the 19th Session of the All-India Oriental Conference, Delhi, 1957.

[1] Edited by the present writer and published by the Asiatic Society, 1956, as work No. 274, Bibliotheca Indica.

[2] Pp. 415—434.

[3] Pp. 492—494.

[4] Chap. 290, vv. 2—12, 18-19.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

deva (a name of Śiva), the fourth *Rāthantara*, the fifth *Raurava* (the name of Śiva's hell), the sixth *Prāṇa* (*i.e.* life), the seventh *Bṛhatkalpa* (*i.e.* Great *Kalpa*), the eighth *Kandarpa* (*i.e.* the God of Love), the ninth *Sadyaḥ* (*i.e.* fresh), the tenth *Iśāna* (*i.e.* Śiva), the eleventh *Tamas* (*i.e.* darkness), the twelfth *Sārasvata* (*i.e.* pertaining to Sarasvatī, the Goddess of Learning), the thirteenth *Udāna*, the fourteenth *Gāruḍa* (*i.e.* pertaining to Garuḍa, the carrier bird of Viṣṇu), the fifteenth *Kaurma* (*i.e.* pertaining to *Kūrma*, meaning 'tortoise', an incarnation of Viṣṇu, which was born on a full-moon day), the sixteenth *Nārsiṁha* (*i.e.* pertaining to *Narasiṁha*, *i.e.* half-man, half-lion, the second incarnation of Viṣṇu), the seventeenth *Vāmana* (*i.e.* dwarf, the third incarnation of Viṣṇu), the eighteenth *Āgneya* (*i.e.* pertaining to *Agni* or fire), the nineteenth *Soma* (*i.e.* the moon), the twentieth *Mānava* (*i.e.* man), the twenty-first *Pumas* (*i.e.* male human being), the twenty-second *Vaikuṇṭha* (the abode of Viṣṇu), the twenty-third *Lakṣmī* (the wife of Viṣṇu), the twenty-fourth *Sāvitrī* (the wife of Brahman), the twenty-fifth *Ghora* (*i.e.* terrible), the twenty-sixth Vārāha, (*i.e.* pertaining to *Varāha*, *i.e.* boar, the fourth incarnation of Viṣṇu), the twenty-seventh *Vairāja* (*i.e.* pertaining to *Virāja*, the Supreme Being), the twenty-eighth *Gaurī* (wife of Śiva,) the twenty-ninth *Māheśvara* (*i.e.* pertaining to *Maheśvara*, *i.e.* Śiva, when he killed the demon Tripura) and the thirtieth Kalpa is *Pitṛ*, which is called Kuhū (or the newmoon day, in which no moon is visible in the day-time). These thirty *Kalpas*, collectively known as the month of Brahman, clear away all the sins of the donor and have been formerly named by him after their respective attributes. He, who gives away the golden images of these *Kalpas* in auspicious days, is honoured in the heavenly abodes of Brahman and Viṣṇu by the sages for *Kalpas* (*i.e.* cyles of existence). As the gift of *Kalpas* causes the vanishing of all sins, so an intelligent man should

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

have them constructed in the shape of sages and then give them away".

The *Dānasāgara* adds in the accompanying prose comment that the donor should first make thirty *Kalpas* in the form of Brāhmaṇa sages, supposing them to have assumed the appearance of golden images, with the rosary in the right hand and the water-bowl in the left, worship them and then make gifts of them in their serial order on the full-moon day, the new-moon day, the two eighth *tithis*, the two fourteenth *tithis* and on the *saṅkrānti* day to the Brāhmaṇa, who has ceremonially purified himself and has been duly honoured by the donor.

It may be added here that the V. 8a of the *Matsya-purāṇa* quotation, corresponding to V. 9a of Chapter 290 of the same, which is wanting in the *Dānasāgara*, presumably owing to its utilisation of a defective *Matsyapurāṇa* Ms., is to the following effect :—

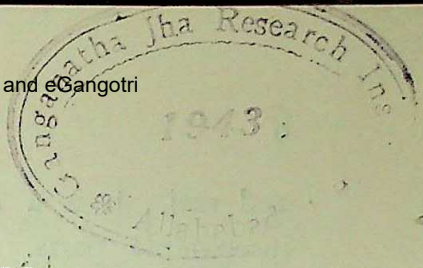
'*Caturviṁśatimaḥ proktaḥ sāvītrīkalpsamiñakaḥ*', *i.e.* the twenty-fourth Kalpa is said to be named Sāvitrī. So Ballāla Sena, being at a loss to find out the name of the twenty-fourth *Kalpa*, thought *Lakṣmī*, really the twenty-third *kalpa*, to be the twenty-fourth and suggested that the formula of giving away the twenty-third *Kalpa*, after the gift of *Vaikuṇṭha*, should contain the serial number only of the twenty-third one.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri



NATURE OF MEANING*

By Dr. P. S. Sastri

1. The word is already in existence and human effort makes it manifest. After it is uttered, it is not the word that is destroyed, for the word once again assumes its original unmanifested or potential existence. People cannot therefore make the words but they can make the sounds that manifest them. The word resides in the mind, or is latent in the mind or conciousness. It gets itself articulated only when there is a felt need for expression, and soon after it assumes its original form. In this way a word may be repeated many times. Yet the repetitions do not imply the births and deaths of the word, but of the desires behind these. In this sense we are told that at the same time and at different places many people can utter the same word. This does not however make the word lose its real nature. Jaimini tells us that the case is similar to the sun who is one, but who can be perceived by many at different places at the same time. This argument denies the plurality of existence for the same word; and the word thus becomes single, unique,

---

* *Abbreviations* used in this Article :

AKJ—Anekāntajayapatākā.
B—Bhāmatī.
MS—Mīmāṁsā-Sūtra.
NBV—Nyāya-Bhāṣya.
NV—Nyāya-Vārtika.
PKM—Prameya-Kamala-Mārtaṇḍa.
PPV—Pañcapādikā-Vivaraṇa.
PS—Pramāṇa-Samuccaya.
PV—Pramāṇa-Vārtika.
PVA—Pramāṇa-Vārtikālaṅkāra.
SB—Śāḥara-Bhāṣya.
SD—Śāstra-Dīpikā.
SVNR—Nyāyaratnākara.
TB—Tattva-Bindu.
TP—Tattva-Pradīpikā.
TS—Tattva-Saṅgraha.
V—Vākyapadīya.
VP—Vedānta-Paribhāṣā.
VPS—Vivaraṇaprameyasaṅgraha.
VSB—Vedānta-Sūtra Bhāṣya of Śaṅkara.
YSB—Yoga—Sūtra-Bhāṣya.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and real. It is a unitary one without any separable or inseparable parts. The word being devoid of parts, it neither gains nor loses, and it is only the sound that acquires volume which we wrongly transfer to the word which does not undergo modifications, for it is only the manifesting medium that changes. The word is real since its utterance gives rise to the knowledge of the meaning; but if it perishes with its utterance, it ceases to convey any meaning. It is uncaused, since the vocal apparatus only manifests it, and the uncaused is not liable to be destroyed.[1] Hence, the word is not only real but is an existent; and if it is nonexistent no one can bring it forth into existence, for nothing can never afford to become something.

Yet the word is not purely subjective; it is not the expression of an ego-centric predicament, since it is called forth as a response to the external world. The word springs into existence from some positive object which is presentable to consciousness. The object must have positive character of its own. The word which refers to such an object constitutes the element of significant speech. One group of these elements signifies, means, or names, actions or inactiveness; while another signifies, means or names, agents or patients. Thus, we get verbs and nouns; and the combination of these two units of significant utterance gives rise to a sentence. Every statement is about something or somebody, and it has a certain character. This character belongs to the objects and to the words. The words are constituted by certain primary unanalysable elements. Those first elements or simple reals, are the letters of the alphabet; and no account can be given of them. Things too are composed of simple unanalysable elements. The simple element has only a name with which we refer to it. We

[1] See MS. 1.1.14—21.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

cannot make any statement about it, except refer to it by name. But as the element is unanalysable, the name of the element is indefinable. The name is a word, and a word is not a whole composed of parts. It is an aggregate of syllables, placed in a certain order. The syllable is devoid of parts, pervasive and real; and hence, it is capable of signifying something. But the full denotation becomes explicit only when the syllables adopt a specific sequence. This sequence is not inspired by a conventional association, whence the name or word is not a symbol of some mental mood, but a vocal sign. It is manifested through the vocal organs signifying something. It stands for something and means it. It refers to the existence of some object and therefore it is itself existent. It signifies or means the nature or the character of an object; and at the same time it stands for or refers to an existent. The word by its very nature becomes denotative of the meaning and the meaning is the denoted and this itself constitutes the relation. Since the word expresses the meaning without depending upon anything else, it is said to possess the primary significative force. The relation between the word and its meaning thus comes out to be that between a designation and the thing designated.[2] The very fact that the knowledge of the meaning arises immediately from the cognition of the word, shows that the word expresses the meaning. We may come to acquire this meaning through convention and other processes which are only accessory, and not fundamental, aids.

If a word remains unconnected with its meaning, we cannot fix a relation between the word and the object. Thus one cannot point to an object and call it a cow; and even if he uses this term, he has to describe the object. In so doing he will refer to the dewlap, and the word 'dewlap' will not convey any meaning unless it stands

[2] SD 90.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

for the object. It can stand for it not as a symbol, since human beings do not normally succeed in changing the words. Human machinery works in enabling us to know the meanings of the words and the names of the objects. But the part played by convention in linguistic matters nowhere tells us that human beings have created languages and established words.

Scientists have given new names to their discoveries, navigators to the lands, and expeditioners to the peaks. Here the names are symbols and the meanings are only associated with the words. We find that numeral notation too is employed to denote the objects. Whenever words can be substituted by numerals and other symbols, they stand for things, not for events involving consciousness.

2. Ordinary experience accepts some sort of a relation between a word and the object; for, in the absence of such a relation, there can be no thinking, no understanding, no experience. But the essential nature of a word lies in its meaning which is comprehended by the understanding. This meaning consists in the relation of the word to the object it refers to or signifies. Thus the very nature of the word brings about the unity of sound with two other significant factors. The cognition of a word results in the understanding of the object concerned. The word or sign refers to and conveys the idea of the object referred to. This is assumed in popular usage too, and it goes to confirm an integral relation between the two. It is the nature of the word to denote or convey the idea embodied in it, and this nature is inherent to it[4]. The meaning of a word, therefore, is precisely presented to us when we hear it. It is, moreover, the relevant words that are involed in knowledge.[5]

[3] See V. I. 125 ff.

[4] V. I.6,

[5] V. I. 124,

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

This relevancy is only regulated by convention; for the nature of the object is centralised in the word. And with the advance in the comprehension of the nature of the object, the word also acquires changes of meaning. But these changes are to be relevant to the nature of the object and to that of the word. Hence every word communicates its own specific meaning, and it is through a word that we cognize an object.[6] Every object has accordingly a corresponding competent word to denote it. A word therefore plays a dual role; it reveals its own form and also the object comprehended. The moment we hear a word, that very moment we comprehend the word, the object referred to, and the speaker's intention.[7] Just as fire possesses the power of burning, the words also have a power of their own according to which they mean certain objects irrespective of any one's volitions. There is the general awareness of objects presented by words. In other words, in language we have words embodying intelligence and thought, and these words deal with things other than the symbols themselves.

If the meaning of such a word is said to be an acquired character of the objects, it is a relation between an object and the image of the object.[8] But "meaning is to some extent subject to the will." This picture raises two questions of great importance. On the one hand, meaning is not purely volitional or intellectual affair; for, it is relative to the whole personality. On the other hand, the mental image cannot explain the nature of meaning because an image can be made to mean anything we like.[9] Further imagery cannot be discovered in the utterances of many and yet they talk sense; for, the meaning becomes

---

[6] V. III. 7. [7] V. II.329.

[8] See Russell : *On propositions—What they are and How they Mean* (*Arist. Soc.* 1919, pages 7, 19, 24).

[9] See Schiller : *Meaning of Meaning* (*Mind*, No. 116.393).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

clearer and clearer as the vividness of imagery recedes step by step. Different images can evoke the same meaning, and different meanings can give rise to the same image. Meaning then does not and need not depend upon the images.

It has been said by some that images mediate thereby leading us to a meaning. The image or picture is visualised; but the visual picture cannot be divorced from the act of visualising. Isolating these two, they observe that meaning is an observable property of observable entities.[10] Such a meaning is also said to be a "relation"; a relation "constitutes" meaning, and a word not only "has" a meaning but is related "to its meaning"[11].

Meaning, here is a "relation" and an "observable property." But a relation is not an observable property, in which case meaning cannot afford to be a relation. Further, it is a word that has a meaning. If meaning is a relation, is the word related to a relation?

Meaning is said to be an observable property of observable entities called images. When it is said that a visual image "resembles" or "copies" sensations[12] by meaning is not meant a subjective or introspective phenomenon; for, we seek the meaning of the signs or symbols. Recognising this difficulty, one may say that the "visual image" is associated with the past "visual sensations." When the "visual image" causes actions appropriate to the "visual sensations", then it is said to "mean" them. That is, the image need not resemble the sensations in order to "mean" them, but it must only cause actions "appropriate" to the associated sensations. Sensations and images are dissimilar, while the objects and sensations too are dissimilar. And yet the image is made effective to give rise to meaning. This is the Yogācāra position.

[10] *Russell in Mind*, 116.402.

[11] *Russell in Arist. Soc.* 1919, Pages 7, 19.

[12] *Ibid.* Pages 22-23.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

A word does not denote the different features of the various objects that form the particulars of a class. It denotes the distinctive features alone, and these features are objective. And if the word simply refers to the mental image and not to the objects outside, words as expressive of our experiences would be futile, unpurposive, and insignificant.[13]

Let us take three sentences speaking about the same object. "Theophilus is Greek", "Theophilus is dear to God', "Theophilus has measles." The last one tells us of a disease of a man; the second gives the meaning of a name; and the first uses the word as a sign or symbol without telling us what it stands for, what it means. If the word as a sign has a *definite* signification, then the sentences are meaningless since not all the words are signs. Even a sign must stand for something definite, and it must mean. This the sign cannot do.[14] A word, therefore, is not a mere sign or symbol.

The theory of the image appears among the Yogācāra Buddhists, according to whom a cognition free from conceptual constructions is valid. A word refers to a particular object. Yet it generates a conceptual image which is distinct from other concepts. The denotation of a word lies in the evocation of this conceptional image. The mental image indirectly reflects the directly reflected reality.[15] The image constitutes the concept from which is derived the name. Diṅnāga, however, said, name and concepts originate in one another. The name functions as the middle term which enables us to cognise the object. It is an indirect mark of reality.

But if the word gives rise to a conceptual image, then the cognitive act can tell us nothing about the objects

[13] *Cf. PKM* 136.

[14] *Cf.* Bradley : *Principles*, 157.

[15] See *SVNR* 559.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and the words. It will tell us only something about the image. The verbal relation does not comprehend the particulars; for the Buddhists argue that if words refer to objective entities there would be no difference between a verbal cognition and sense-perception. But if words do not convey a definite meaning which is objectively held to be true, and if this meaning does not involve a reference to the object as such,[16] then there is no need of language. Moreover, the word need not evoke a conceptual image,[17] for its purpose is to make us understand that for which it stands.[18] If it is not the word that enables us to understand the object, but only the conceptual image, then either we have to assume a close connection between the image and the word, or we have to admit of an inseparable relation between the object and the image. Otherwise any word may have to denote any meaning.

Now the conceptual image, we are told, is distinct from other images, and hence it implies 'the negation of what it is not.'[19] "Knowledge derived from words does not differ in principle from inference. Indeed the name can express its own meaning only by repudiating the opposite meaning."[20] Thus the words 'to have an origin' express their own meaning only through a contrast with those that have no origin. This exclusion is a necessity of thought or reason which is essentially dialectical and which operates with concepts. While the direct knowledge given by the senses is an affirmation, the indirect knowledge arising from the analytical or dialectical intellect is primarily negative. The pure affirmation being only the pure

---

[16] *Cf. Acintyastava*, 33.

[17] See Stout: *Analytic Psychology*, I. 83 ff.

[18] *Apohasiddhi*, 13.

[19] PVA 262.5—10.

[20] PS V.1; *Cf.* NV 332.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

sensation, it is unutterable. When we come to the understanding, we find a new creation of the real 'through a negation of its contrary.'[21] Only because the red, just as red, is at the same time not-blue, not yellow etc., only (through these negations) is it that definite colour which we call red.[22] This differentiation is possible, as Sigwart said,[23] only between already existing differentiated presentations.[24] Thus the meaning of the word 'cow' is said to depend to a certain extent on the 'non-cow'. The 'non-cow' is a different object from the cow, and this different one has to be negated.[25] If the word 'cow' has fulfilled its meaning by negating the 'non-cow', what is the other word on which the positive meaning of the 'cow' has to depend? Words are always positive entities. They cannot affirm something and deny something else at the same time, for a word can have only one meaning; and if this meaning is negative we can never arrive at the positive one. The 'non-cow' is negated not by the word 'cow' but by the absence of the utterance of the 'non-cow'.[26] But the affirmation and the negation is one inseparable thought.[27] Later day Buddhist thinkers have modified their views on this question; and Śāntarakṣita observes that a word first and foremost denotes a concept, and that the negative import is only a resultant cognition.[28]

3. The syllables placed in a certain order are denotative. In the word 'cow' is it the syllables alone that constitute the word, or is it some sphoṭa which is different from them? The word here consists of three letters

[21] See Herbart: *Metaphysik*, II. Section 202. *Cf. NV* 331.
[22] Ulrici: *Compendium der Logik*, 60.
[23] Sigwart: *Logic*, I. 333 note.
[24] *Cf. AKJ* I.333-4.
[25] *PV* and *PVA* II.170.
[26] *Cf. AKJ* I. 348—350.
[27] See Lotze: *Logic*, I. Section 11.
[28] *TS* 1017 ff.

Ganganatha Jha Research Institute 1943 Allahabad.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

placed in a certain order. Apart from that order it is not this word. These letters are grouped together into a word. But the letters themselves are not parts of the word in any organic sense; for a succession of sounds employed in a certain order does not constitute an integral whole.[29] We derive no idea of the meaning from the individual letters; and yet the meaning is apprehended only after listening to all the letters that constitute the word. It is only the combination of the letters that could yield the meaning; and we apprehend this combination through the impressions, since the apprehention of the meaning demands a single agency and a specific order in the utterance of the letters. This single agency working through the mental impressions enables one to recollect the past sounds and hold them together.[30] The mental impressions, instead of manifesting the sphoṭa, reveal the word and its meaning.

A syllable by itself is not denotative, since it requires other syllables also to articulate the sense. Nor can we say that a combination of syllables has the power to signify sense, since the same syllables can be combined in as many ways as there are syllables.[31] And yet if it is said that each syllable produces a mental impression, what is the nature of this impression? If we are ignorant of the syllables and of the way in which they are combined, we cannot apprehend the sense; and no mental impression can alter this state. If we admit that the syllable produces a mental impression, that these impressions are remembered till we come to the last syllable, and that we apprehend the meaning only then, we are pursuing an illogical method. The syllable has to produce a memory impression, and this memory impression produces the meaning. The

[29] *SD* 94.
[30] *TB* 6—10.
[31] *B* 323.2—4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

memory impression is that evoked by the power of the syllable; and to this impression we attribute the ability to denote a meaning. One ability cannot produce another ability, since all abilities are related to a distinct individual. For instance, fire burns and illumines; here illumining is not the effect of burning, nor is burning a latent capacity for illumination, for these are two aspects of the same fire.[32] And if we are to rely on memory impressions produced by the syllables, then if the syllables are uttered or cognised in the reverse order, we have to get at the same meaning since the syllables are the same.[33] But this is a blatent absurdity. Thus we have to admit that the letters alone constitute a word, that they follow a specific order in constituting it, that the letters in a certain sequence give rise to the meaning, and that the meaning is presented to us through the word.[34]

Our cognition does not give the clue to the existence of 'sphoṭa'[35], for we cognise the syllables only. Speech is significant or meaningful only in its syllables or letters;[36] and the letters form into a unity only because of the meaning conveyed by this unity. The rejection of the sphoṭa, therefore, makes the word and its meaning significant. In popular usage we use the words to mean something and we convey our meanings by the words we employ. Throughout we recognise the necessity of the word, for the word cannot be bypassed or ignored in any theory of meaning. The apprehension of the meaning does not fall outside that of the syllables that compose the word; and if a word has any meaning, this meaning must have a close relation with the sounds produced by the word. In a

---

[32] *B* 323.7—13.

[33] *B* 323.13-14; *TB* 14.1-2.

[34] *TB* 12. 14 ff.

[35] See *Sāṅkhya-Sūtra*, 5.17.

[36] *YSB* 3.17.

Gangānatha Jha Research Institute 1943 Allahabad.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

sound like 'cow' the word and the meaning as well reside in the syllables that follow a specific sequence. This is the view of Upavarṣa endorsed by both Śabara and Śaṅkara.[37]

Letters alone constitute the word. But each letter by itself is not denotative; nor can the socalled unity of the letters be significative if the letters are removed from this unity. The word is a combination of the letters; and this combination is distinct from each individual letter, but it is the same as the letters that comprise it. The letters, we have to remember, constitute the unity of the word; and it is this unity that embodies the meaning. Bhartṛhari might treat the meaning as a transformation of the word. But as Durgācārya observed, the word is the cognisable aspect, or the finite embodiment, of meaning.[38]

4. Has a word one meaning? Can it convey many meanings? Some thinkers have gone to the extent of saying that we arrive at the meaning of a word only through implication. There are others who contend that we immediately apprehend the meaning of a word, and this immediate apprehension is based on 'suggestion.' A word can express a meaning, convey an import, and imply inferentially an idea; and yet it may not be intelligible in the given propositional form. In other words, a word is sometimes capable of yielding many possible meanings; and since each meaning is the expression of one function of the word, we have to postulate many functions for each word. A philosophic approach to the problem of meaning demands an examination of the nature of each function, and an investigation into the interrelations of these functions.

---

[37] See *SB* on 1.1.5; *VSB* 324.12—325.1.

[38] On *Nirukta*, 3.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

First, we have words whose meanings are settled by convention or by etymology.[39] The conventional meaning has a priority over the etymological. A word like "gauḥ" means etymologically "a moving being", but its meaning is settled and fixed as "cow". Such words are treated as signs or symbols. Etymology fixes the meanings when this meaning is derived from the parts of the words. Next, we have words whose meaning is in-separable from the primary denotation. The expression 'hamlet on the Ganges', is interpreted as 'the hamlet on the banks of the Ganges'. When we say that x is a lion we are by implication referring or transferring the quality of a lion to x. All possible meanings can be brought under these divisions.[40]

Then again, we have denotative words and also those that convey an implied meaning. Finally, there are those that suggest a meaning. These changes or differences are due to the contextual variations and the needs and demands of propriety.

9. What is expressed in the propositional form is a meaning. The meaning denoted by the word varies with the context and with the intention of the speaker or listener. A word can have only meaning and that meaning is not exhausted by its significance because it comprehends the nature of the object inadequately. But can a word suggest a meaning over and above its primary significance?

A word is denotative of a meaning, and this meaning is the essential feature comprehended by the word. If so, the word cannot possibly suggest any other meaning. The beauty of the word and its meaning in a poem is said to be highly suggestive; but this suggestive quality is seen to arise not from the word but from the back-ground of the imagery and the figures of speech in which

[39] *Śabdaśakti*. 16.

[40] *Cf. PPV* 132.22 ff; VPS 134-5.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

it is placed. This back-ground constitutes the beauty of expression and it gives rise to varied suggestions; and if we were to speak of the suggestive nature of a word, we have to look for this element of suggestion also in this background. But if it is said that the word by itself is capable of suggesting a meaning over and above its primary denotation, then this is a feature which we have to excavate; and this might turn out to be a fiction. If this suggestive nature brings forth the beauty of a composition, one might reply that this beauty emanates from the imagery and the figures. There is then no need to postulate a new capacity for the words, when this capacity to suggest actually arises from the imagery and the like.

Ideas are embodied in words and the words denote these ideas. This is the denotation of the word. This primary denotation takes cognisance of the nature of words in terms of etymology and convention; and the necessary connection between a word and its denotation distinguishes one statement from another. This primary meaning is determined by various factors. The relation which a word has with other words, its nature in isolation, its coexistence with other words, its homonyms, its purpose, the intention of the speaker, the context, its juxtaposition, its capacity, propriety, the place and time when it is used, its gender, its accent—these are some of the principles that determine the meaning of the word precisely and accurately. In spite of this complexity in the meaning of a word, we have various thinkers who have oversimplified the matter. Thus primary denotation is the unalterable symbolic presentation of a meaning according to the Nyāya thinkers; it is just suggestive or indicative of the subject according to the grammarians; it is the principle of relation between the expressive word and its expressed sense, according to the author of the Mañjūṣā; and to the Mīmāṁsakas it is a power. All these explana-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

tions do not carry us farther in the understanding of the word.

6. Words are classified into various groups with reference to their meanings. We have words that denote classes, particulars, qualities, relations, and actions. This division is arbitrary. The word embodies a concept in ordinary usage. Whatever meaning is presented by the word, that meaning is organically related to the word, and it presents only one aspect of the embodied thought-content. Thus when we speak of a plurality of meanings for the same word, we are only stating that the embodied thought content which is in the word can be comprehended in many ways. Those ways constitute its various aspects: and the meaning of a word is a significant coherence of all these possible meanings. Which meaning is primary and which is not, is dependent on other factors like the context and the intention of the speaker.

On the one hand, we have a meaning which in current usage is said to be primary. On the other hand, we have a meaning given by the context and other factors, and this too can be said to be the primary meaning of a word. The word "cow" and the object "cow" are related directly, and this power is said to be latent in the word. A word signifies or means something; it has a meaning, and it refers to something. This can be further established by asking whether another word which is said to mean the same can be substituted in its place. In other words, the primary meaning of a word is that for which it alone stands as a sign. It is the nature of the word, to reveal that meaning which is the proper one. A word does not fulfil its function until it expresses that meaning which the context demands. This meaning may be the suggested one; and yet it is expressed by the word. And as such one need not feel worried in accepting a suggestive function for the word.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Let us consider some instances before we arrive at an understanding of the meaning. 'The hamlet on the Ganges' means the hamlet *on the banks of* the Ganges; and it can also mean that the hamlet is cool and sacred. By implication we are able to arrive at the idea of the banks of the river only. The word by itself is unable to mean the coolness or the sanctity of the hamlet; and yet the expression gives rise to these ideas. In such a case the words are only functioning as mere indicators or sign-posts. Words here become symbolic values, comparable to gestures and signs. They give rise to an intuition which is associated with the objective entities. Thus, words cannot present any idea or thought by themselves, but only suggest vaguely or dimly the facts referred to. The intuition that arises from the words is purely subjective; and hence, we find different people interpreting the same texts differently.

The objective fact referred to is the same for all minds; and yet various minds intuit varied meanings. How can a particular word evoke these varied suggestions? If it is said that the verbal suggestions have no relation with an objective fact, the words will become figments of imagination and therefore meaningless. But if an objective fact is denoted by a word, then the varied suggestions or intuitions will turn out to be individual or subjective reactions or responses to given situations. These responses lack objective validity and value. To escape from such a position we should hold that the suggested sense emanated not from the subjective response but from the object itself. The object, being a complex entity, can and does give rise to varied meanings to various minds.

7. In ordinary usage words are employed by the cultured with a specific meaning. Such words are used not merely with reference to their meanings, for words

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

are capable of uniting themselves with one another through their significant meanings[41]. They are governed by choice, intention, context and the like. If the speaker has not intended a meaning and still the unintended import is apprehended, then the sentence fails in its purpose. A good deal of what we mean falls within the scope of intention; and it is conditioned and determined by the intention of the speaker. The word comes to embody the thoughts of the speaker and it is influenced by this thought as such.

In those places where an implied meaning is apprehended immediately, there it is also the context that determines the sense. The expressed sense, being the medium for the suggested, is conditioned and influenced by the context a good deal.[42] The elements of a sentence are continually combined in all possible ways in spoken or written discourse and they mutually modify each other[43]. The circumstances under which a word is employed also bring about changes in its meanings. Thus, intention, context, and circumstance attempt at the specification of the sense.

8. According to the grammarians, the knowledge of the meaning of a word is unreal, for the word is an unreal abstraction. It has no individual existence of its own. The import of a word depends upon the import of a sentence, which in its turn is said to depend upon sphoṭa. This view deprives the importance of the word. In literature as in language we are primarily concerned with words and their meanings and functions. Any theory that minimises the value and the reality of words is inadequate.

---

[41] See *TP* 153.11—13.

[42] *Cf. Vyakti-Viveka*, 10; *Dhvanyāloka*, 405.

[43] See Stout : *Manual of Psychology*, 538.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The Bhāṭṭa Mīmāṁsakas argue that the meaning of the word is not unreal, since the word is as much real as the sentence. It is through the knowledge of the words that we arrive at the understanding of the sentence. The words are the parts, and the parts lose their separate existence in the whole called the sentence. In interpreting the relation of words, their meanings, the sentence, and its meaning to one another, we are asked to accept implication as one of the functions of a word. Here, we are not allowed to attach any power to the expressed sense of the word; this is the other extreme.

But in the case of a word which has a primary expressed meaning and which also suggests another meaning, we have to presume that both these meanings are related to each other. What the nature of this relation is, we have to examine carefully.

Suggestion is said to arise from the primary meaning. Is this suggestion different from the primary denotation or not? If it is different, does it spring into existence of its own accord as an independent entity being manifested by another entity which is closer to it or even identical with it called suggestion? The suggested meaning springs into existence from the same word which gives rise to the primary sense. It is the manifestation of the power to suggest which is one aspect of the word; and this manifestation is aided by the primary sense.

In the expression, 'the hamlet on the Ganges', the primary denotation of the words is incapable of meaning the sanctity of the hamlet. Implication too cannot give rise to the meaning, for implication is based upon the primary meaning which meaning does not provide any scope for this interpretation. The expression can imply the bank, but the bank is not what we mean here; nor can the bank imply the idea of sanctity. If it can, we have to presume that a meaning 'M' is derived from a

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

word 'W' through an implication 'I' which again is said to imply 'M'. That is, an implication cannot be said to imply something else. But if it is said that the expression implies a sanctified bank, we are taking the implication along with its consequences. A word implies something, and the consequences arise from this implied something. In other words, it is not the implied sense that gives rise to the idea of sanctity, but a new power altogether.

Thus, a word expresses a primary meaning and also reveals suggestion. These two meanings are not identical but two distinct entities since they refer to two distinct objects. This implies that they emanate from two different functions of the word.

Suggestion has been distinguished from the primary meaning, the total import and implication of which are presumed to follow one another. First there appears the primary meaning which makes us apprehend the sense expressed by the word which is only a sign for it. Next comes the import which is taken to be the apprehension of the meaning of the syntactically related group of words. If this too does not help us, we have to take up implication which comes when the primary meaning is incompatible. In the expression, 'the hamlet on the Ganges' the primary denotation of the words tells us of a house on a certain river and nothing more, because it cannot give rise both to a general and to a specific sense. The total import being a mere syntactical relation it can only relate the primary meanings of the words to one another: and this too does not explain the matter. Since the primary meaning of the sentence makes no sense, we look for its implication which can take us only to that to which the meaning of the expression is related unalterably by convention and popular usage; for the properties of the related thing or object are attri-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

buted to it. Thus we get at the banks of the river. Yet we mean the coolness and sanctity of the hamlet. This meaning is not arrived from perception since it is apprehended from the word. It is not arrived through inference since the idea of the proximity of the waters to the banks can in no way imply coolness or sanctity. Nor is it a case of memory explaining the sentence, for memory is based on a prior experience and we have had no such prior experience.[44] Consequently we have to admit that this meaning arises from some other function of the word; and this function is the suggestive one which is not comprehended in any of the other functions.

But what is the import of a word? The realistic Nyāya gives a narrow meaning to the term.

9. A word is an expressive sign which is distinct from a suggestive sign. We associate A with B, or relate A to B; and this A may remind us of B, or may indicate the presence of B. Here, A is used not to express a meaning, but to aid our memory; and the moment we remember B, we reject A as of no use. This A has functioned then as a suggestive sign. An expressive sign then makes us attend to its significance, while a suggestive sign draws our attention away from it.[45] In so doing an element of abstraction seems to enter into all suggestion.

But abstraction from personal meaning appears to be an indispensable element in all expression.[46] Interruptions of a psychical nature attempt to strangle the smooth course of thought, while thinking endeavours to effect a sudden break in the continuity of feeling or experience. The narration of these obstacles is not the task of metaphysics, nor that of aesthetics; and they have

[44] See *Locana*, 60.

[45] See Stout: *Analytic Psychology*, II.193.

[46] *Cf.* Haldane: *Pathway to Reality*, I.80.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

to avoid the representation of these in the interests of the consistency of the argument and unity of feeling respectively.

10. A word is a complex whole capable of unfolding a plurality. The whole is a class of things, qualities or actions. Further, the various particulars that are comprehended by one word are themselves related to one another; and these relations or connections too are contained in the meaning of the word. Thus every word presents a synthesis. When we understand the meaning of the word we do not make any distinction of the multiplicity of the parts or particulars involved therein. It is after we have an understanding that we begin to analyse our apprehension into its constituent parts in order to communicate it to others.[47]

A word sums up the nature of the object to which it is said to refer. Yet a word cannot fully comprehend the entire nature of the object. Language designates objects in an inaccurate way. It is incomplete because the word sun, for example, does not exhaust all that can be said of it when we assert it to the shining. It is inaccurate because we cannot speak of the sun as shining when it has set.[48] Language is thus in its very nature delimited and finite. Since it has to embody thought, and since thought is always struggling after its emancipation from the embodied state, language is primarily suggestive. It is not at all possible for a word to express all the ideas which an object awakens in the mind.[49] Sometimes the word may not represent even the most prominent aspect of the object; for the words depend a good deal on the attitude, intention, reaction, and outlook of the individual. This is the principle which has given rise to the synonyms, and

[47] See Lotze: *Nicrocosmus*, I.536.

[48] *Cf. Sāhityadarpaṇa*, 73; Breal: *Semantics*, 170.

[49] See *Breal*, 171.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

this explains clearly that meaning is not entirely dependent upon expression. There are states of experience where the mind is full of meaning, and expression is obstructed as in aphasia and the like. In such cases meaning is very intensely felt; and the clue to the nature of the meaning revealed by the word lies in this felt background.

There are also cases where the mind does not make any reference to any object and yet is full of content. There may not be any images present; and yet the felt content is the most positive one.[50] Our thought is not yet articulate and yet we feel intuitively what we are going to say. Such an experience is there even when we read a poem for the first time. We modulate our voice in such a way that we are able to anticipate the rhythm and the thought because of our implicit apprehension of the whole.

This intuition of the whole is the complete meaning of the word or of the sentence. But it is a meaning which is only felt intensely and deeply. Similarly there is the intensely active gap which fills consciousness when we endeavour to recollect a forgotten name. We struggle to express it, we come across a variety of words, and we often reject them. We feel our closeness to the forgotten name and then sink back. A wrong name is rejected at once since it does not fit into the gap. These gaps reveal that a great part of language functions by presenting the signs of direction in thought.[51]

11. The purpose of language is to express thought; and thought is expressed primarily in sentences. Sentences are the basic units of language; for, we do not think in insolated words, but in relevant combinations of words, called sentences or propositions. Every sentence is made up of some significant (sārthaka) words

[50] See James: *Principles of Psychology*, I.253.
[51] *Ibid.* I.252-3.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

which are related to one another through expectancy (ākāṅkṣā) and compatibility (yogyatā), so that they may give rise to a coherent and logical verbal cognition ('śābdabodha').[52] The meaning of a sentence, however, is different from and greater than the meanings of its component parts called words. In other words, the meaning of a word and the verbal cognition are two different things. The former conveys the meanings of the words employed, while the latter communicates a unified idea as such.[53] The principles of proximity, expectancy, compatibility and import govern the logical aspect in the correlation of the meaning.[54] These principles, however, govern our construction of an intelligible sentence.[55]

Language, the vesture or embodiment of thought, is a powerful instrument of communication. In the first place, it crystallises and embodies thought, for it expresses what we feel or think. A significant sound, called word, is at the basis of language. It has neither life nor reality apart from the mind. The language of a community represents the ideas, beliefs, aims and struggles of that community; and with this real human life commences, and human values are developed and cherished.

But a single word can, at times express a complete idea and function like a sentence, as the verb in the imperative mood, or as the word emanating from an emotional excitement. Vyāsa goes to the extent of saying that every word has the force of a sentence, and that some words at least retain the meaning of a sentence.[56] But by a word he does not mean a word taken by itself in isolation; for he states that the simple utterance of the

---

[52] *SS* 1. 97; *Śabdaśakti*, 12.

[53] *VP* 239.

[54] See *Laghumañjūṣā*, 497, 503-4; *cf. VP* 241.

[55] *TP* 261.7-8.

[56] *YSB* 3.17.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

word 'tree' means for us the sentence 'the tree is'. That is, a word does not exist as significant and communicative, apart from a sentence. It is only in and through a sentence that a word acquires its power to convey or communicate an idea. Thus, the denotative and connotative powers of words depend upon sentences. The problem of the import of a word therefore, is the same as that of the import of a sentence.

This raises important and interesting problems. Is a sentence the unit of linguistic expression of thought? Or is it the word? In the Vedic texts we come across passages which speak of sentences as though they are originally divided into parts.[57] Durgācārya observes that the seers beheld the Saṁhitā as a coherent whole and not as isolated words.[58] In this wise, the grammarians treat the 'Vākyasphoṭa' as the only significant and real one. Consequently, the splitting of a sentence into its units is an unnatural fiction sanctioned not by any rational necessity but by mere convenience. It is for purposes of instructing the under-developed minds that a sentence is split into so many words.[59] The sentences, as complete expressions or utterances of the ideas, thoughts, and feelings of the individuals, are natural. They emanate from the nature of a situation or mood. This characteristic feature condemns all divisions and analysis of sentences as artificial and untrue to experience. The verbal congnition of the words severally is not true to experience.[60] A word appears to differ from the others and seems to stand in isolation mainly because of the difference in the determining sounds. Thus, we can analyse a word into its components, but these units cannot be further analysed.

---

[57] See *Taittirīya -Saṁhitā*, 6.4.7; Ṛ *K Prātiśākhya*, 2.1.

[58] On *Nirukta*, I.17.

[59] See *Māhābhāṣya*, VI. 1.207; V. II.240.

[60] See *TB* 2.9-10. *Cf.* Puṇyarāja on II.22,129.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

With reference to the sentence too, the words stand in the same predicament.[61] Just as we analyse a word into its root and suffix, we can handle the sentence too.[62]

Verbal cognition arises from words that are logically and significantly related to one another in a sentence.[63] The sentence thus is the significant and relevant unit of speech, and this presupposes the inherent relatedness of words.[64] This requires the correlation of a group of words and of a system of meanings.[65] That is, the process of thought manifests itself in the syntax. Thus, for example, in a compound different words are combined, and their meanings are so related to one another that they yield one specific idea. Two different concepts are made to evolve a synthesis at the bidding of the mind and of reality. They have a reciprocal competency (sāmarthya), and they together form into a single inflected word. This feature is reflected in the sentence, for the sentence is the expansion or widening of the same principle. The sentence is an indivisible unit expressive of sense; and its meaning is indivisable.[66] To understand the sense we have to take the sentence as a whole. In such a case, words lose their identity and individuality as they enter the sentence and occupy their proper stations.[67]

12. What is the import of a sentence which is a unity or a system of many words, where the many are to serve the interests of the whole? Here we have a variety of answers offered by the ancient thinkers. The force of a sentence is sometimes said to be gathered in

---

[61] *Cf.* V I. 73.
[62] *V* I.77; II.10.
[63] *Śabdaśakti*, 12.
[64] *NBV* 2.1.55.
[65] *Cf. Bhāṣāpariccheda*, 91.
[66] *Cf.* V II.13.
[67] *Cf.* TB 3.13-4.6.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the verb; the essence of a sentence lies in action, in conation. In association with an indeclinable, case or adjective, a verb can be the nucleus of a sentence. If these associates only qualify the verb, then such a united or qualified predicate can make a sentence.[68] From this position one can push forward to say that a verbal form itself is a sentence. But if there are two finite verbs in a sentence, one of them is to be taken as qualifying the other, since a sentence can express one and only one idea. In every sentence, therefore, we face a verb, and a verb refers to or implies a noun.

A verb denotes an action, and a noun denotes a subject or thing. On the activistic theory, activity is said to be latent in all things. In sentences where the verb is not explicitly expressed, action is to be understood. This action gets itself transformed into a subject or substance.[69] In other words, substance and being are not different from each other.[70] The difference between the two is only one of emphasis; and it depends on the intention of the speaker.[71] This points to the conclusion that the differences between those who emphasise the noun and those who insist on the verb, are not fundamental. These differences do not alter the nature of the meaning which a sentence offers. At times we do think simultaneously of both the subject and the predicate, presumably because they are not mutually exclusive. There is an intimate relation of interdependence between noun and verb; and the Āryan verb was originally a noun, as much as the Āryan noun was originally a verb. We have the verbal roots, 'dhana', 'jana', 'vadha', 'gaveṣa', which appear to be substantives. The Kabojas, says

[68] See *Vārtika* 9 on *Pāṇini*, 2.1.1.

[69] *Mahābhāṣya*, 5.4.19. *Cf. Bṛhad-devatā*, I.44.

[70] See Durgācārya *Nirukta*, I.9.

[71] See *Bṛhad-devatā*, I.42; ṚK Prātiśākhya, 22.5.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Yāska, took 'śava' to be a verb, while the Āryans accepted it as a noun.[72] And we have a series of denominative roots too.

According to Śākaṭāyana, all words are derived from verbal roots.[73] If so, we have to call every passerby as 'aśva' or horse, for the word 'aśva' etymologically refers to walking. If etymology were at work, it would have corrected the words "puruṣa", "aśva", and "tṛṇa", into "puriśaya", "aṣṭa", and "tardana", respectively. If the verbal root preceded the noun in order of existence, and if action determines a noun, how is the earth called 'pṛthivī' before it was extended in space? Gārgya and the grammarians therefore refused to accept this principle as universally applicable and valuable.

13. The verb is an important element in the sentence, and the meaning of a sentence depends on the meaning of the verb. Maṇḍana held that the verbal root conveys the idea of the result of an action, for the verbal terminations denote action proper. Some others reverse this process, since a result generally follows an action. But if the root denotes action, the verbal terminations are meaningless and superfluous. The root must therefore be taken to denote some qualified action.[74] In the realist systems the verb originally served the function of a noun and gradually came to serve the function of an adjective, while in the grammatical systems the verb became more and more comprehensive. A verb like 'pacati' presents in itself a synthesis of pot, fire, fuel, cook and the rest.

But the apprehension of the meaning of a sentence is not necessarily dependent upon an action. In the sentence 'he cooks rice in the vessel with faggots', we have

---

[72] *Nirukta*, II.2.

[73] *Nirukta*, I.12; See *Mahābhāṣya* 3.2.115; 3.3.1.

[74] See *Vyutpatti-vāda*, 37.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

an action no doubt; but there are sentences referring to existing things. When I ask, 'who is this king?', and when I am told that he is Pāñcāla, all reference to action is absent. When they are first used some words may refer to action, but they are subsequently seen to refer to existing things. Further, when a sentence communicates pleasant news, we find that the words denote an existing something which is the cause of joy. There is then no invariable rule that words should signify action[75].

In Mīmāṁsā, the verb is a combination of many words; and action is inherent in every noun. Action demands effort which unites action with the goal or result. Koṇḍabhaṭṭa observed that a root denotes action and result as well, while the verbal termination refers to the substratum[76]. Thus the root refers to the time, mood, and action; while the termination involves action, time, number and the like.

The meaning of a sentence depends upon and involves a reference to the consequences that can be derived from it in action or otherwise. It is here that insight and understanding work together in close cooperation. The consequences depend not on one word or two, but on the system of words called the sentence. This system is a unity. The words denote only one un-differentiated meaning, by surrendering their individual meanings; for, even the union of the words in a compound gives rise to a new meaning[77]. And this same principle is found in a sentence too.

14. There are eight views in the interpretation of the import of a sentence.[78] All those who speak of it

---

[75] B 70.6—71.1; SD 16-17. See *NMA* 165.

[76] See *Vaiyākaraṇabhūṣaṇa*, 2.

[77] See *Śabdaśakti* 33.

[78] See V. II.1,2.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

in terms of a verb, a significant word, and a series of related words, hold that the import of a sentence centres round a significant word or round the related words. Those who emphasize the combination of words and on the sequence of words adopt the principle that the words unite with one another to give rise to the ideal content. There are others who insist on the nature of words as universals, on their unity, and on the intellectual awareness; and according to these thinkers the sentence is an indivisible unit. All these views once again presuppose propriety, expectancy, and proximity amongst the words as aiding the syntactical relation which alone is taken to have a meaning. The factors like expectancy and proximity are said to be merely the cooperative factors. Hence, it is said that expectancy depends on the word, while propriety thrives on the meanings of the words,[79] though they do overlap. As regards the proximity of words, we are told that this feature is of no importance at all, since the slow-witted understands the words violating proximity, while the quick-witted does not require it.

15. The meaning of a sentence is immediately apprehended by the mind. The mind recalls the deep-rooted impressions which enter into our understanding of a sentence, idea, or fact.[80] A sentence, therefore, signifies the meaning that abides in intelligence, and this meaning is treated as intuition by the grammarians.[81] This meaning is manifested through the words that are related to one another in the form of a sentence. According to Bhartṛhari, it is an intuition that reveals the

---

[79] See *Śabdaśakti*, 4.

[80] See *YS* and *YSB* I.25,47, III.49.

[81] *Cf. Bodhicaryāvatāra-Pañjikā*, 348.

[82] V II. 147—9. See, however, *VSB* on 1.1.5; 2.1.14; and *Taittirīya Vārtika*, Anuvāka 9.160.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

meaning. It reveals itself through words, and is expressed by the intellect that is aided by experience and memory; it determines the ultimate reason for all inclination or activity, since it is an innate function of the mind, an intellectual heritage. This meaning is at the basis of all instinctive and well-thought-out activities; and words stimulate this intelligence.[83]

According to the Indian grammarians, the words that constitute a sentence have no separate meanings at all. They are meant to convey the united or synthetic meaning of the sentence as a whole. But the meaning of a sentence is not merely an aggregate of the meanings of its words; nor does it repudiate the meanings of the words entirely. In the sentence we find the words combined in a specific way, and therefore the sentence comes to possess a new meaning. If the meaning of a sentence is totally different from that of the words, we can never understand it. And if the sentence can offer nothing but the aggregate of the meanings of the words, it can never be new. On the contrary, we do experience a new unity or a new synthesis in every new sentence. This unity is a special feature of a sentence; and it is a unity based upon the relation between the parts and the whole. The parts are integral to the composition of the whole; and yet the whole is always greater than the sum of its parts. It is this strange feature that makes the whole unique and one. The meaning of a sentence, therefore, runs through the meanings of the words; for, as the grammarians have correctly observed, we always begin with sentences and arrive at words through analysis. Consequently the separate words do really breathe the spirit of the whole sentence and are determined and conditioned by it. This spirit of the whole sentence is the ideal content expressed by the judgment.

[83] See V II.53. *Cf. VVN* 248—253.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

16. We find ourselves in the midst of two views, one emphasizing the ideal content or the whole, and the other insisting on the import of the parts only. To resolve the entire problem we have to examine closely the nature of the ideal content of a sentence. Some thinkers hold that a definite knowledge of the ideal content is essential for the understanding of a sentence. Some others observe that this content should be known only when the words are ambiguously employed. Others consider that it is necessary for verbal knowledge, though it is comprehended in the mutual expectancy of words. The mutual expectancy is a demand born out of the need to convey the intention of the speaker[84].

But is the ideal content nothing but the intended meaning? The parrot and the child imitate the sentences of the elders. They have no intention to convey, and yet we understand those sentences. There are people who chant Vedic hymns without knowing what they mean, and yet the hearer can and does make out the meaning. That is, we have to distinguish between the personal meaning or the intention of the speaker, and the objective meaning. The objective meaning is conveyed by the fitness of the words of a sentence. In other words, the ideal content refers to the ability to give rise to the apprehension of the true meaning.[85]

Language makes us know things and also experience them. It shows the facts and states them in a way that evokes and organises our moods and emotions with the result that the words employed vivify our experiences. In this process the words that refer to facts are united with and synthesised in an experience, for the words induce in us a vision of those mysteries and secrets that are seen in a new light. This dual function arises from the two-

[8] See *Muktāvalī*, 390.

[85] *PPV* 235.3—7; *VPS* 228.

Jha Research Institute Allahabad. 1943

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

fold nature of the word, its sound and its sense. On the one hand, language defines or describes reality, and expresses the intelligence or thought, on the other. Things like theories, systems and words, things which no sense-perception can comprehend, are brought, to our attention because of the intellectual function of language.

Meaning is a function of the context or situation, for the verbal meaning is to some extent controlled by intention. The meaning of an object or word is no other than the value it has for us, and it is from the standpoint of value that we cognise and experience. Thus the meaning of a word might appear to be the meaning of those who use it. Thus, the three words, 'I love you' may mean a declaration of love; but we can know their meaning fully only when we know the specific meaning of 'I' and 'you'[86]. That is, we have to take into consideration the context in which the words are uttered along with the attitude or outlook colouring this utterance. The real meaning of a man cannot be understood, however, apart from the words he employs. And these words must have agreed meanings, meanings that are accepted by the speaker and the listener as well. Without this agreement, the speaker cannot convey his real meaning even. As such the distinction which a personalist effects between verbal meaning and personal meaning is rather futile.[87] When it is said that personal meaning is the primary and important meaning, and that the verbal meaning is secondary and derivative, the ideal content refers to the intention. We move from the meaning of the word to the meaning intended by the speaker.[88] Such an argument refuses to recognise the fact that the meanings of the pronouns, relative words, and demonstrative words,

[86] See *Schiller in Arist. Soc. Suppl.* Volume 7, Page 101.

[87] See *Ewing in Arist.* Soc. Suppl. Vol. 7; Pages 108 ff.

[88] See *Schiller*, Ibid. 104.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

are determined by the context in which they are employed. By language we do not mean a system of personal meanings, since language by its very nature is a social activity. What language offers to us is a system of meanings mainly objective and impersonal, and therfore concrete. This is the major contribution of the context; and as the context is classified and defined more and more sharply, the reader or listener comes to apprehend the same objective system as the author or speaker. Thus, two laymen might talk about motor cars, each meaning all the while a thing different from that of the other. But when two mathematicians begin studying the works of each other, their personal meanings disappear and they are at home in an objective system of meanings. This objectivity eliminates the possibility of misunderstanding.[89]

The sentence, 'the sun is setting' is fit to convey the relation of the sun to the act of setting, and not to the act of rising. It refers to the evening, to night-fall, whatever may be the intentions of the speakers. In the context of time it denotes the onset of the night. But if two robbers are talking it will assume a special context and hasten to denote their intention to steal that night. But if it is a mendicant speaking, the context will focuss our attention on his evening prayers. And if a lover is the speaker, it expresses a gesture of love. In all these cases we find that the meaning determined by the context is to some extent personal, relative to the speaker's intention.[90] But this meaning is only an extension of the primary meaning which is objective and which does not involve the intrusion of one's intentions into the understanding of the sentence. This is the direct consequence of the view that the primary meaning is inherent in the word, and not something imported into it.

---

[89] See *Hardie in Arist.* Soc. Suppl. Vol. 7, Page 119.

[90] See, however, *Dharmakīrti* quoted in *Nyāyāvatāra*, 2.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Consider those instances where we do have knowledge of the meaning of words used by one who is ignorant of their sense, or who being in a state of sleep has no control over his will.[91] Here the personal meaning has little to modify the actual meanings of the words. Further, the meaning of the important word determines the import of the proposition. In the sentence, 'bring the cow', it is bringing that is emphasized and the other words qualify or condition it. They are adjectival and as such give rise to a particularised meaning of the word 'bring'. This particularised meaning is not personal but relational and specific. This idea is expressed through the denotation of the word. Here we notice how the meaning of a word ets itself modified in a context as it gets related to other words.[92]

[91] *SD* 91.
[92] *SD* 154.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ŚARVILAKA—NOT A RESIDENT OF UJJAINĪ*

By PROF. SADASHIV A. DANGE

Mṛcchakaṭika has been and even now is one of the most enchanting dramas in the Sanskrit Literature. There have been discussions as to whether it is an enlarged edition of the *Cārudatta* or whether *Cārudatta* is itself a shortened *Mṛcchakaṭika*. Then again, opinions differ on the point of the main theme of the drama—whether the love episode is the main current or the Political plot is the back-bone!

Without commenting on any of the debatable points, the motive of this article is to turn the focus on only one character—that of Śarvilaka and to see whether from the drama we can take him to be a resident of Ujjainī or not. First of all it is necessary to see in exactly what capacity he figures in the Prakaraṇa. As we know, the Prakaraṇa is an inter-mixture of two things—love on the one hand and the political plot on the other. Both these get fused into each other and in a way, help each other. The Prakaraṇa begins in an atmosphere of love giving no hint whatsoever to the future political shuffling, the first hint coming only from the mouth of Darduraka[1], who cleverly saves the Samvāhaka from the hands of his creditors. It is here that we have the first mention of Śarvilaka as a dear friend (Priyavayasyaḥ) of Darduraka. Love between Vasantasenā and Cārudatta being well established, and Śakāra being fixed as the cruel villain in the garb of his crooked humour, Śarvilaka, being casually introduced by the minor Darduraka, suddenly

---

+ (Article read at the All-India Oriental Conference, 19th Session at Delhi, December, 1957).

[1] कथितं च मम प्रियवयस्येन शर्विलकेन यथा किल आर्यकनामा गोपालदारकः सिद्धादेशेन समादिष्टो राजा भविष्यतीति। (p. 55).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

arrives on the scene as a wayward brāhmaṇa youth, well versed in the art of house-breaking, a regular disciple of the worthy master whose name he utters with due reverence! And all this for Love! He wants to win Madanikā's freedom. That is in the third Act. Here he does not strike us as anything of an important personality. The remark about him by Darduraka (Act II) has been completely washed away from our minds. The 4th Act shows Śarvilaka as an ardent lover, happy in union with his beloved, jealous and foamy in suspicion, cooling off into a guileless child as truth dawns upon him and as he feels sure about Madanikā's fixation in himself alone!. He gets Madanikā and in the happiest moment of his life there is a turn of events which throws full light upon his personality and we know him as a heroic youth ready to save his friend Āryaka, the Gopāladāraka who has been imprisoned by King Pālaka in wicked jealousy!, at any cost. He is gone and we meet him only in the 10th Act as the victorious one who set free his friend and thus helped him to become the king. That is all the part played by Śarvilaka. His love for Madanikā does not strike us as being important as far as his own character goes. The stern and dutiful soldier in him is what we see and hear in the most part of the play, wherever the attention is focussed on him. He comes before our eyes more as the whip of the political plot than as a tender lover. This leadership is nowhere smoothly brought about; but is referred to more than once. We have referred to speech of Darduraka in the 2nd Act. Candanaka also refers to Śarvilaka as—'My dear friend'[2] and goes after him. The Viṭa also joins Śarvilaka, saying —'I shall go where Śarvilaka and Candanaka etc. are'[3].

[2] अरे निष्क्रमतो **मम प्रियवयस्यः** शर्विलकः पृष्ठत एवानुलग्नो गतः। (Act. VI. p. 153).

[3] यत्रार्यशर्विलकचन्दनकप्रभृतयः सन्ति तत्र गच्छामि। (Act. VIII. p. 188).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Thus, we clearly see that Śarvilaka is the pivot of the plot for the release of Āryaka, the Gopāladāraka. Śarvilaka is, as a matter of fact, the 2nd hero of this Prakaraṇa; for, in the absence of Śarvilaka, though Cārudatta possibly would have been set free, the evil-doer Śakāra might not have been punished or at least might have been humiliated. It is clear from his behaviour in the court scene (Act IX), where he asserts that he would replace even the judge.[4] It is Śarvilaka, who, as the Savior of Āryaka has a profitable position and utilizes it to the full as we see in the prakaraṇa. But this key-holder of the plot does not seem to be a resident of Ujjainī, at least at the time and a considerable length of time before the events described in the play. Why?

Well, we shall see presently! He does not know Cārudatta at all, and Cārudatta is a permanent resident of Ujjainī for more than a generation.

We will examine the situation gradually.

(1) There are clear references in the Prakaraṇa to the benevolence of Cārudatta which makes him popular and sufficiently a known figure in Ujjainī.
Maitreya refers to his benevolence in the ninth act in the court of justice.[5]

(2) He is very well known to all from the Adhikaraṇika[6] to Madanikā.[7]

---

[4] आः किं न दृश्यते मम व्यवहारः। यदि न दृश्यते तदाऽऽवुत्तं राजानं पालकं भगिनीपतिं विज्ञाप्य भगिनीं मातरं च विज्ञाप्यैतमधिकरणिकं दूरीकृत्यात्रान्यमधिकरणिकं स्थापयिष्यामि। (Act. IX.p. 197).

भो भो आर्याः येन तावत्पुरस्थापनविहारारामदेवालयतडागकूपयूपैरलंकृता नगर्युज्जयिनी.....। (Act. IX. p. 215).

[6] तुलनं चाद्रिराजस्य समुद्रस्य च तारणम्।
ग्रहणं चानिलस्येव चारुदत्तस्य दूषणम्॥ (IX—20) and
आर्यचारुदत्तः खल्वसौ कथमिदमकार्यं करिष्यति।

[7] स खलु श्रेष्ठिचत्वरे प्रतिवसति। And स खल्वार्ये सुगृहीतनामधेय आर्यचारुदत्तो नाम। (Act. II. p. 44) and also the speech of Samvāhaka p. 58.
'आर्ये क इदानीं तस्य भूतलमृगाङ्कस्य नाम न जानाति।'

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

(3) Even the ordinary policemen know him.[8]

(4) The Cāṇḍālas also know him to be the leading man of Ujjainī,[9] nay, an ornament of the city. The tender sentiment shown by the Cāṇḍālas to this special guest of their trade is self-eloquent of his popularity.[10]

(5) The ladies in the city also shed tears for him. To command such gushes of feellings Cārudatta must have a tremendous amount of popularity in the city.

Here, on the one hand, Cārudatta enjoys this popularity. Everybody seems to know him by virtue of his qualities; and on the other, Śarvilaka does not seem to know him at all!

(1) He does not know the house, where he commits the theft, to be that of Cārudatta. Had he been staying in Ujjainī permanently, he would have been surely in the know of the condition of Cārudatta. He would have had good chances to see the house of such a worthy one as Cārudatta. Not only this, but

(2) he has not ever seen Cārudatta previously; for, when he breaks the house of Cārudatta, he is clearly analysing the facial expression of Cārudatta and Maitreya (for they are sleeping close to each other, as can be seen form the action of Maitreya in offering the bundle of ornaments to Cārudatta just with a stretch of his hand!) (See Act III). This clearly shows that Śarvilaka has had no occasion to see Cārudatta previously, though the latter is staying in Ujjainī as the scion of a well-set family!

---

[8] *Cf.* VI—13, 14 and 15.

[9] *Cf.* X—8. नगरीप्रधानभूते वध्यमाने कृतान्ताज्ञया । etc. also X—14
एष गुणरत्ननिधिः सज्जनदुःखानामुत्तरणसेतुः ।
असुवर्णं मण्डनकमपनीयतेऽद्य नगरीतः ॥

[10] *Cf.* भगवति सह्यवासिनि! प्रसीद प्रसीद। अपि नाम चारुदत्तस्य मोक्षो भवेत्, तदानुगृहीतं त्वया चाण्डालकुलं भवेत्। Act. X. p. 241.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

(3) He tells Madanikā that it is only the next morning (after the theft) that he heard[11] that the house in which theft had taken place belonged to Cārudatta. That shows his complete ignorance about Cārudatta's house. The way he speaks of Cārudatta, as Sārthavāha Cārudatta and not as 'Ārya', shows he was totally ignorant as to the latter's eminence! His vehement emotional out-burst in '*Āḥ Durātman Cārudatta! Ayam na bhavasi*' just after IV-17, leaves no doubt of his being completely oblivious of the merits of Cārudatta who has won the heart of Ujjainī by his virtues!

(4) There is another very important point to be noted in this connection and it is the mention of Rebhila who is mentioned by Cārudatta as Bhāva-Rebhila.[12]

Even Maitreya refers to him only as Bhāva Rebhila in the court scene, act IX.

(5) He is once more referred to in the 4th Act and there by Śarvilaka in the tense situation arisen out of the capture of his friend Āryaka. It is interesting to note, however, that Śarvilaka thinks only of him to keep his wife with and that he refers to him only as 'Rebhila Sārthavāha' without the pre-fix 'Bhāva.' Thus, it seems Rebhila was a close friend of Śarvilaka.[13]

---

[11] अयि प्रभाते मया श्रुतं श्रेष्ठिचत्वरे यथा सार्थवाहस्य चारुदत्तस्येति। (Act. IV. p. 90).

[12] अहो साधु साधु रेभिलेन गीतम्। and वयस्य सुष्ठु खल्वद्य गीतं भावरेभिलेन। (Act. III pp. 67 and 68).

[13] Ryder is rightly criticised by M. R. Kāle and Dr. V. G. Parāñjape for his contention that Śarvilaka was the son of Rebhila—see Kāle notes—p. 79; and Parāñjape—notes, p. 48.

But Kāle is doubtful about Śarvilaka's relationship with Rebhila; for, he contradicts himself—(Cf. notes page 58) where he remarks about Rebhila as—'See page 97 (text) where *he is spoken of as a friend of Śarvilaka* also—since the latter sends his wife to his house.' and further after criticising Ryder's statement, remarks—'Rebhila, it appears, was *some distant relation of Śarvilaka*!'

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

(6) From Śarvilaka, again, we know that Rebhila is a 'Sārthavāha' having the same profession as Cārudatta has. Cārudatta must often be visiting Rebhila's house for musical entertainment, for Cārudatta is very fond of music. In the third act, when Śarvilaka scrutinizes the house of Cārudatta, he cannot fail to see the various musical instruments and concludes that it must be the house of a music-master.[14]

Thus, it is also possible that Rebhila might have often visited the house of Cārudatta for musical performance and hence, they must be known to eaeh other. How can a 'rasika' like the benevolent and virtuous Cārudatta exclude Rebhila from his company! Two points are common between them. Both are of the same profession and have the same urge for music. We can go still further and see the possibility of Rebhila being residing in the same *Śreṣṭhi-Catvara* where Cārudatta lived, as it is probable that all Sārthavāhas might be living in one part of the city!

Kāle is again, far from being correct in his (or may we remove this contradiction by saying that a relative can also be a friend!!) remark on p. 58 notes; for Rebhila is *never 'spoken as a friend of Śarvilaka'* in act IV (text page 97 Kāle's Edition) as is clear from Śarvilaka's speech to the ceṭa qouted above.[12] 'Bhadra, Jāniṣe etc.' It is Kāle's own inference! Rebhila can only be a close friend of Śarvilaka. Close because he sends his wife to him; and only a friend, because there seems to be no expression of reverence whatsoever in his reference to Rebhila. Ryder is obviously misled by the words of Madanikā. 'Tat param nayatu mām Ārya-putraḥ *Samīpam Gurujanānām.*' and the very words might mislead us to think that Rebhila was at least an elderly relative of Śarvilaka. But we can very well understand that Śarvilaka need not take Madanikā's words in their exact sense and at that moment of tension (for his utmost thought is setting his friend Āryaka free at any cost!) he wants to keep Madanikā in a place of safety—and not exactly with the 'Gurujana'. For Madanikā it is all the same, for she seems to have no knowledge of Śarvilaka's 'Gurujana' and moreover, has no reason to contradict him. The unreverential way of reference to Rebhila goes well with this explanation. This Rebhila might or might not be in Sarvilaka's plot, but must have been a very faithful friend of Śarvilaka.

It is surprisingly pleasant to note how Rebhila is made a living and important character without actually being present on the stage.

[14] *Cf.* कथं नाटचाचार्यस्य गृहमिदम्। (Act. III—p. 75).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Now, from Śarvilaka's close friendship with Rebhila who was in close relation with Cārudatta, we naturally expect Śarvilaka to know Cārudatta and his house; but we have already seen that he does not know Cārudatta, nor does he seem to have seen or heard about him at all! This cannot happen if Śarvilaka is a resident of Ujjainī; for, in that case, Rebhila's not mentioning Cārudatta to him even once does not seem probable or natural.

Śarvilaka's total absence of knowledge in the case of Cārudatta can only be explained by stating that—

(1) He was *not* a permanent resident of Ujjainī; or was only a new-comer.

(2) He might not also be a frequent visitor at Rebhila's; but had old friendship with Rebhila, probably before the latter had settled in Ujjainī and might have renewed his touch with him, meeting him only once or twice casually;[15] and in this city of uncertain stability at that particular time, he might have suddenly remembered his faithful old friend Rebhila alone to be of any help! Thus Śarvilaka's visits to Ujjainī might have been very recent and only a few and even these must have been only for political purposes: and he found little time to spend at Rebhila's.

Coming now to this conclusion that Śarvilaka was a new-comer to Ujjainī only for political purposes, another delicate question that crops up in the mind is—How could he have become intimate with Madanikā in such short visits? Well, this also can be explained easily. In act III, Śarvilaka's

---

[15] We have no definite mention of Rebhila being in the conspiracy. Paranjape's suggestion that 'probably Rebhila' was in the conspiracy does not seem to be correct, for, then as a leader of the conspiracy there is a possibility of Śarvilaka's meeting with Rebhila on many more occasions and then even casually, the mention of a famous and great man like Cārudatta is not impossible.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

remorse for such an act for a 'gaṇikā' (and not Priyā)[16], that too on the part of the son of a high-born brāhmaṇa[17], strikes a clear contrast and a bit of censure of the beloved lady. This tends to show that Madanikā was not of deep acquaintance with him; but was probably a recent find whose charms turned him mad and goaded him to this evil act. The evil act (Akāryam) is not the theft (for he is adept in it); but it is *the theft in the house of a poor man*. He clearly gives vent to this feeling of his after seeing the soiled and tattered bundle of ornaments, wishing to take it yet hesitating with the words—'It is not fair to wrong a high-born man who is (in difficulty) just as I am'.[18] It is only the fear of a curse from the dozing Maitreya that urges him to accept the bundle! This pricks Śarvilaka as the 'Akāryam'. The theft *as such* was not a throb of pain for him who had taken to it with quite a study![19] Thus, to rob a poor man for *only a courtesan*, he himself being a high-born man! is the cause for pang. The word, 'gaṇikā' betrays his lack of seasoned love for Madanikā.

(2) Śarvilaka does not seem to have visited Vasantasenā's house many times. It was just possible that he never visited it before. Probably that is why Madanikā, on seeing Śarvilaka in Vasantasenā's house, is surprised and exclaims—'Āścaryam! katham Śarvilakaḥ! Śarvilaka, svāgatam te. *Kutra tvam*?' This clearly shows that she never expected Śarvilaka to go to Vasantasenā's house. It also shows that he had never before visited the house of Vasantasenā (Cf. *Kutra tvam*?), though it could entertain any visitor! Vasant-

---

[16]—[17] अहं हि चतुर्वेदविदोऽप्रतिग्राहकस्य पुत्रः शर्विलको नाम ब्राह्मणो गणिकामदनिकार्थमकार्यमनुतिष्ठामि। (Act. III—p. 76).

[18] अथवा न युक्तं तुल्यावस्थं कुलपुत्रजनं पीडयितुम्। (Act. III. p. 75).

[19] Mark the various authorities mentioned by him on pages 72 and 73, Act. III.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

asenā's remark that Madanikā is talking with some stranger, is meaningful[20].

(3) The speech of Madanikā and her sorrow that Śarvilaka should have committed this act of theft only for an ordinary woman (*Strī kalyavartasya kāraṇāt*) shows that their love was just beginning and that she is trying to dissuade him from it ! Madanikā's epithet 'strīkalyavarta' for herself tends to bring out the rashness of the deed on her account on the part of Śarvilaka who even did not care for his noble birth ! It has a feeling of recognised obligation also.

All this goes to point out that the acquaintance of Śarvilaka and Madanikā was not very old. It is possible, that on his political errands Śarvilaka might have chanced to see her sometimes and knowing her to be a courtesan might have expressed his desire. But Madanikā might have laid down her setting free as a condition precedent which led Śarvilaka to go a bit away from his political errand and manage to collect money for buying Madanikā's freedom; and, *being quite new to Ujjainī*, broke the house of Cārudatta, being deceived by its outer apperance !

There is another point though not very important. How is it that Darduraka and Candanaka refer to Śarvilaka as a 'beloved friend' (Priya-Vayasyaḥ) if he was a newcomer to Ujjainī ? It is simple to cast this doubt away. In the first place this term need not be taken very seriously. It is used in a general sense. It is possible that Śarvilaka might have asked his friend Candanaka to enter the Royal guard some how at Ujjainī deeming the uprise that was to come forth. Candanaka accepted the duty as Śarvilaka had once *saved his life*.[21] The rest of it upto the escape of Āryaka

---

[20] *Cf.* p. 87 Act IV.

[21] ...प्राणप्रदस्य मे आर्यशर्विलकस्य मित्रम्। (Act. VI. p. 149).
This, however, is not an event in the play.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

might have been arranged by Candanaka, though to all practical purposes he successfully wore the mask of loyalty to Pālaka and discarded it when he could no longer wear it after his skirmish with Vīraka. That Candanaka also might have been active in the plot can be seen from the words of the Viṭa who wants to join 'Śarvilaka-*candanaka* thus, showing Candanaka also to be an important figure. Thus, Candanaka can be taken to be the active member of the plot while Śarvilaka as the actual whip and the brain behind it.

Thus, it is clear from what has been seen that Śarvilaka was not a permanent resident of Ujjainī; his acquaintance with Ujjainī was quite new. He might have been visiting it formerly just for political purposes only and now he was awaiting to deal the final blow, everything else being arranged by Candanaka whom he kept on purpose to soften the opinion of the people, towards Āryaka who was to dethrone Pālaka. Meantime Āryaka, who took shelter in the cowherd-hamlets was *accidentally* arrested and kept in prison by Pālaka, the king. The Siddhādeśa was purposely rumoured to give the whole plot a divine shade.

Āryaka also in all probability took shelter in the 'ghoṣa' at the time of this final blow and was not much acquainted with Ujjainī for, he also like Śarvilaka did not recognise Cārudatta even seeing him face to face at the 'Pravahaṇa-Viparyaya' incident.[22]

---

[22] Cf. Act. VI. 1.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ASPECTS OF ANCIENT INDIAN SOCIETY AS REVEALED IN THE DHARMASŪTRAS*

By Dr. Sures Chandra Banerji

The Dharmasūtras constitute one of the most valuable literary sources for the reconstruction of the social history of ancient India. Prof. P. V. Kane is inclined to place the period of composition of the principal works on Dharmasūtra between 600 and 100 B. C. There may be differences of opinion about the period of their composition. But, their high antiquity admits of no doubt whatsoever.

From a study of the major Dharmasūtra treatises, hitherto available in print, we propose herein to deal with the following aspects of Indian society reflected in them :—

(1) Varṇāśrama-dharma,

(2) Administration of secular Law and royal duties,

(3) Manners, morals and customs,

(4) Superstitions,

(5) Āpaddharma.

* The following abbreviations have been used in this paper :—

A—Āpastamba-Dharmasūtra, Banaras, 1932.

B—Baudhāyana-dharmasūtra, Banaras, 1934.

DS.—Dharmasūtras.

G—Gautama-dharmasūtra, Mysore, 1917.

HG.—Haradalla's Com. (Mitākṣarā) on Gautama-dharmasūtra, Poona, 1931.

MB.—Maskari-bhāṣya, Com. on *G.* above.

U—Ujjvalā, Haradalla's Com. on *A.* above.

V—Vaśiṣṭha-dharmaśāstra, Bombay, 1883.

Vai.—Vaijayantī (See Nand., above).

Vi.—Viṣṇu-smṛti, Calcutta, 1881.

VK.—Vaikhānasa-smārta-sūtra, Calcutta, 1927.

Vna.—Vivaraṇa, Com. of Govindasvāmin, on *B* above.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

1. VARṆĀŚRAMA-DHARMA

Introductory remarks

The DS. literature deals with the rights and duties of men belonging to the four castes and four stages of life. We propose here to systematise the information, scattered all over the works, in a critical manner, making, at the same time, a comparative study of the contents of the different works on particular topics. Such a survey will enable us to have glimpses of the social, cultural and religious outlook of the people of those remote times, if not of the actual conditions prevailing in those far-off ages.

Different castes

The four principal castes, viz., Brāhmaṇa, Kṣatriya, Vaiśya and Śūdra, constitute the social set-up. The mixed castes owe their origin to the intermixture of these castes either in the regular (*anuloma*) or in the reverse order (*pratiloma*). All people, outside the pale of the caste-system, are regarded as casteless and impure with whom association of those belonging to one or other of the castes is condemned. A place, where the rules of castes and of the four stages of life are not observed, is branded as '*mleccha-deśa*' a sojourn to which renders a member of any of the castes liable to expiation.

According to *A*[1], in the list of castes enumerated above, each preceding is superior to each succeeding one. Besides the four principal castes which may be called pure, the DS. mention a number of sub-castes or rather mixed castes. The various castes originating from all kinds of permutation and combination of castes may be classified as follows :—

Anuloma—One begotten by a man of the higher caste from a female of the lower caste.

[1] I.1.5.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Antarāla—Begotten by an *anulomaja* man on an *anulomaja* woman.

Pratiloma—The reverse of *anuloma*.

Vrātya—Begotten by a *pratilomaja* male upon a *pratilomaja* female.

We name the various mixed castes below, and describe them according to the different works on DS.

Abhiṣikta[2]: Son of a Brāhmaṇa father begotten secretly upon a Kṣatriya maiden.

Adhonāpita[3] : Son of an Ambaṣṭha by a Kṣatriyā. (Ambaṣṭha defined below)

Ambaṣṭha[4] : Born of the union of Kṣatriya and Vaiśyā[5]. Issue of a Brāhmaṇa and a Vaiśyā[6].

Āyogava[7] : According to *MB*., born of a Śūdra male and Vaiśya female (*G*.). Issue of a Vaiśya by a Kṣatriyā[8].

Bhṛjyakaṇṭha[9] : Issue of a Brāhmaṇa by a Vaiśyā wife.

Bhoja[10] : Son of a Kṣatriya by a Kṣatriyā, born secretly, the sacred rites not having been performed.

Cakrin[11] : Son of a Vaiśya paramour by a Brāhmaṇa girl.

Caṇḍāla[12] : Born of a Śūdra and a Brāhmaṇī.

Carmakāra[13] : Son of a Vaidehaka and a Brāhmaṇī. (For Vaidehaka, see *infra*.)

---

[2] *VK*.X.12.
[3] *VK*.X.15.
[4] *G*.IV.16; *B*.I.16.7; I.17.2; *VK*.X.12, 15.
[5] *M.B*. on *G*.
[6] *B*,*VK*.
[7] *G*.IV.17; *B*.I.16.8; *VK*.X.14, 15.
[8] *B*,*VK*.
[9] *G*.IV.20.
[10] *VK*.X.11.
[11] *VK*.X.13
[12] *G*.IV.17; *B*.I.16.8; *VK*.X.14,15.
[13] *VK*.X.15.

Ganganatha Jha Research Institute 1943 Allahabad.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Cūcuka[14] : Son of a Vaiśya and a Śūdrā.

Dauṣyanta[15] : Issue of a Kṣatriya and a Śūdrā.

Dhīvara[16] : Born to a Vaiśya by a Kṣatriya wife.

Karaṇa[17] : Issue of a Vaiśya by a Śūdrā.

Karmakāra[18] : Son of a Madgu and a Kṣatriyā.

Kṣattā[19] : Born of a Vaiśya and a Brāhmaṇī.[20]
Born of a Śūdra and a Niṣādī (*B*).
(For Niṣādī, see *infra*.)

Maṇikāra[21] : Son of a Vaiśya by Vaiśyā wife, the marriage rite not having been performed.

Matsyahandhu[22] : Son of a Cūcuka by a girl of the Kṣatriya caste.

Māgadha[23] : Born of the union of a Vaiśya and a Kṣatriyā (*MB*.). *G*.[24] defines this as an issue of a Brāhmaṇī and a Vaiśya.
Born to a Śūdra by a Vaiśyā (*B*.).
Son of a Vaiśya father and a Brāhmaṇa mother (*VK*).

Mālavaka[25] : Son of a Śūdra paramour by a Śūdrā female.

Māhiṣya[26] : Issue of a Kṣatriya by a Vaiśyā wife.

Mūrdhābhiṣikta[27] : Born of the union of a Brāhmaṇa and a Kṣatriyā.

---

[14] *VK*.X.13, 14.
[15] *G*.IV.17.
[16] *G*.IV.19.
[17] *G*.IV.21.
[18] *VK*.X.15.
[19] *G*.IV.17; *B*.I.16.8.12; I.17.14.
[20] *MB*. on *G*.
[21] *VK*.X.11.
[22] *VK*.X.14.
[23] *G*.IV.17; *B*.I.16.8; I.17.6; *VK*.X.13.
[24] *G*.IV.18.
[25] *VK*.X.12.
[26] *G*.IV.20.
[27] *G*.IV.19.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Nāvika[28] : Son of an Ambaṣṭha father and a Brāhmaṇa mother.

Niṣāda[29] : Born of a Brāhmaṇa and a Vaiśyā[30].

Born of the union of a Brāhmaṇa and a Śūdrā (*B.*)

Pāraśava[31] : Issue of a Brāhmaṇa and a Śūdrā[32],

Pulinda[33] : Begotten by a Vaiśya paramour on a Kṣatriyā.

Pulkasa[34] : Born of the union of a Śūdra and a Kṣatriyā[35].

Issue of a Niṣāda by a Śūdrā (*B.*)

Rajaka[36] : Born of the union of a Pulkasa and a Brāhmaṇa woman.

(for *Pulkasa*, see above.)

Rathakāra[37] : Son of a Kṣatriya paramour by a Brāhmaṇī (*VK.*)

Born of the union of a Vaiśya and a Śūdrā (*B.*)

Savarṇa[38] : Son of a Brāhmaṇa father and a Kṣatriyā mother.

Sūcika[39] : Son of a Vaidehaka by a Kṣatriyā woman.

Śulika[40] : Begotten by a Kṣatriya paramour of a Śūdra girl.

Sūta[41] : Born of a Kṣatriya and a Brāhmaṇī[42].

Son of a Kṣatriya father and a Brāhmaṇī mother.

---

[28] *VK.*X.15.
[29] *G.*IV.17; *B.*I.16.7.
[30] *MB.* on *G.*
[31] *G.*IV.17.21; *B.*I.17.3; *VK.*X.13; II.3.30.
[32] *MB.* on *G.*
[33] *VK.*X.14.
[34] *G.*IV.19; *B.*I.16.8; 11, I.17.13; *VK.*X.14, 15.
[35] *G.*, *VK.*
[36] *VK.*X.15.
[37] *VK.*X.13; *B.*I.17.5.
[38] *VK.*X.12.
[39] *VK.*X.15.
[40] *VK.*X.13.
[41] *G.*IV.17; *B.*I.17.8; *VK.*X.13.
[42] *MB.* on *G.B.*

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Śvapāka[43] : Issue of an Ugra by a Kṣattā wife.
(For *Ugra*, see *infra*.)

Śvapaca[44] : Son of a Caṇḍāla by a Brāhmaṇī girl.

Taskara[45] : Son of a Cūcuka and a Brāhmaṇa maiden.
(For *Cūcuka*, see *supra*.)

Tāmra[46] : Begotten by an Āyogava on a Brāhmaṇī maiden.
(For *Āyogava*, see *supra*.)

Udbandhaka[47] : Son of a Khanaka and a Brāhmaṇī maiden.

Ugra[48] : Issue of a Kṣatriya and a Śūdrā[49].
Issue of a Vaiśya and a Śūdrā (*G*.)

Vaidehaka[50] : Born to a Vaiśya by a Brāhmaṇī woman (*B*.)
Born of a Śūdra and a Vaiśyā woman[51].

Vaiṇa[52] : Born to a Vaidehaka by an Ambaṣṭha wife.

Velava[53] : Begotten secretly by a Śūdra on a Kṣatriyā woman.

Veṇuka[54] : Son of a Madgu and a Brāhmaṇī maiden.

Yavana[55] : Born to a Kṣatriya by a Śūdrā.

Duties of castes :

The general duties of the four castes are clearly laid down by *V*[56]. Those of a Brāhmaṇa are :—

(i) Vedic study, (ii) Teaching, (iii) Performance of sacrifice for ownself as well as for others, (iv) Making gifts, and (v) Acceptance of gifts.

---

[43] *B*.I.16.9, I.17.11.
[44] *VK*.X.15.
[45] *VK*.X.14.
[46] *VK*.X.15.
[47] *VK*.X.15.
[48] *B*.I.16.7, I.17.4; *G*.IV.17; *VK*.X.13.
[49] *B*, *VK*.
[50] *B*.I.16.8, I.17.7; *G*.IV.17,20.
[51] *G*, *VK*.
[52] *B*.I.16.8, 10; I.17.12.
[53] *VK*.X.14.
[54] *VK*.X.15.
[55] *G*.IV.21.
[56] II.14—20.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The duties of a Kṣatriya consist in (i) Study, (ii) Sacrifice, and (iii) Making gifts.

Protection of people by weapons is the means of livelihood of Kṣatriyas.

Besides the above, a Vaiśya has the following to do :—

(i) Agriculture, (ii) Commerce, (iii) Rearing of cattle, and (iv) Lending money at interest (*Kusīda*).

For the Śūdra, the only duty is the service of the higher castes.

V. lays down that a member of a particular caste, when unable to maintain himself by his own avocation, may take to the occupation of the next inferior caste, but never to that of the higher one. But a Brāhmaṇa or a Kṣatriya, if compelled to adopt the occupation of a Vaiśya, is debarred from dealing in the following commodities :—

Stones, salt, jewels, hempen cloth (*śaṇa*), silk (*Kauśeya*) linen cloth (*kṣauma*) and skins, dyed cloth of all kinds (*tāntavam, raktam*), prepared food (*Kṛtānna*), flowers, fruits, roots, perfumes for flavouring food, water, juice extracted from plants, *soma*, weapons, poison, flesh, milk and its preparations, iron, tin (*trapu*), lac (*jatu*), lead, tame animals with uncloven hoofs and having an abundance of hair, wild animals, birds, beasts having tusks, sesamum produced by others.

The practice of lending money at interest is also condemned for Brāhmaṇas and Kṣatriyas.

Vi. points out that the three regenerate classes (*dvija*) are distinguished from the other caste by this that the rites, connected with the former from *niṣeka* (impregnation) down to funeral practices, are accompanied by the recitation of incantations (*mantravat*).

But for certain minor differences, *Vi.* generally agrees with the previous works on the occupation to be followed by the different castes. The innovations, introduced by

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Vi., are as follows : '*Yonipoṣaṇa*', i.e., storing seeds,[57] has been mentioned as an additional duty of the Vaiśya. Another thing that deserves mention is that *Vi.* allows a Śūdra to resort to all kinds of art (*Sarva*[58]-*śilpāni*)[59]; besides the service of the higher castes.

Besides the specific occupations of the particular castes, the following are mentioned by *Vi.* as duties common to all the castes :—

forbearance, truthfulness, restraint (*dama*), purity, liberality, self-control, non-violence (*ahiṁsā*), service of Guru (*guru-śuśrūṣā*), visiting places of pilgrimage, kindness, straightforwardness (*ārjava*), freedom from covetousness, reverence towards gods and Brāhmaṇas, freedom from jealousy (*anabhyasūyā*).

As regards the duties and occupations of the castes, VK. agrees substantially with the previous works. In the case of Śūdras, it adds agriculture only besides the usual service of the three superior castes.

Stages of life :

The four well-known stages of life are recognised. It must, however, be pointed out that there is no agreement among the works with regard to the name and order of the four stages. The number and order of the stages, according to *G*[60]. are :

(i) that of the student (*brahmacārī*), (ii) that of the house-holder (*gṛhastha*), (iii) that of the ascetic (*bhikṣu*), and (iv) that of the hermit (*vaikhānasa*).

---

[57] Jolly's rendering as "growing seeds" appears to be inaccurate, in view of the fact that Nand. explains the word as '*rakṣaṇam*'. Nand. explains the seeds as those of barley and paddy.

[58] Sarva-śabdena vaiśya-vṛttīnāṁ kṛṣyādīnāmapī grahaṇam. Nand. That is to say, *sarva* (all) implies the occupations of the Vaiśya also, e.g., tillage, etc.

[59] 'Śilpāni citra-karaṇādīni'—*Nand.* '*Śilpa*' means painting, etc.

[60] III.2.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

B[61] agrees with *V*. in designating a person in the third and the fourth stage as *vānaprastha* and *parivrājāka* respectively.

A[62] enumerates the stages in the following order :—

(i) Gārhasthya, (ii) Ācārya-kula, (iii) Mauna, and (iv) Vānaprastha.

A prescribes duties for a *parivrājaka*, i.e., one who renounces the world in quest of the soul (*ātman*). This, however, does not appear to have been a compulsory stage of life to be resorted to by all, but one that might be adopted by one at one's option, because *A* provides that one can take recourse to this life just after studenthood[63]. A man, resorting to this mode of livelihood, shall forsake all kinds of *agnikārya* (rites to be performed in fire), renounce home (*aniketa*), and give up all desires for worldly pleasures (*aśarma*), shall not seek anybody's shelter (*aśaraṇa*), shall observe silence except while performing Vedic studies, beg in villages only as much food as is necessary for keeping alive (*prāṇavṛtti*)[64]. He shall abandon all things conducive to material welfare or to benefit in the life hereafter (*aniho' mutra*). He shall wear things thrown away by others[65] or go naked[66].

From the trend of *A's* discussion on the different stages of life, it appears that, according to him, it was not compulsory for one to go through all the stages in succession. In other words, *A*. does not seem to have divided the life of a *dvija* into these stages. What *A*. appears to mean is that one might choose any one of these modes of life; *brahmacarya*, however, was the basis of all of them[67]. Thus,

---

[61] II.11.14. [62] II.21.1.

[63] II.21.8.

[64] Haradatta comments (on II.21.10) that such a man will enter the village only for the sake of alms, but usually live outside.

[65] II.21.11. [66] II.21.12.

[67] II.21.3-4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

directly from *brahmacarya* one might proceed to the life of *parivrājaka*[68] or of a *vānaprastha*[69].

The order of the last two stages in *G's* list is reversed by *VK.* which also replaces the designation *vaikhānasa* by *vānaprastha.*

Duties in different stages

The general rules to be observed in the stages irrespective of caste, are as follows :—

Brahmacarya

The entrance to this stage is marked by the ceremony of initiation to Vedic studies (*upanayana*, lit. "taking near", i.e, near the preceptor)[70]. The chief rules, to be observed by a student, consist in regular Vedic study, implicit obedience to the preceptor, begging alms[71], and strict discipline in daily life[72]. The great importance, attached to *upanayana* by the DS., can be gauged from the restrictions imposed on an uninitiated person who is debarred from offering oblations to the fire (*agni-havana*) and from giving offerings (*baliharaṇa*). Such a person is not allowed to recite most of the Vedic texts.

Rules of rigid self-control are to be strictly observed by a student. He must abstain from rich and intoxicating food such as *māṁsa*, *madhu*, articles of luxury like perfumes,

---

[68] II.21.8. [69] II.21.19.

[70] He is usually called *ācārya* the etymology of which word has been given in *A*.I.1.14 thus :—

Yasmāddharmānācinoti, i.e., one from whom a person 'gathers' the knowledge of religious duties.

[71] *G.* allows begging from all castes excepting *abhiśastas* and *patitas.* The former is explained by *HG.* and *MB.* as one who has committed a sin technically known as *upa-pātaka.* But, *U.* on *A* I.21.8, in conformity with *A* I.24.7, interprets it as one who has committed brahma-hatyā.

[72] We refrain from recording the minutiae of the manner of saluting the preceptor, the mode of sitting near him, the rules about begging alms, etc., but indicate the broad rules only which are important for the purpose of drawing the picture of the society of those times.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

garlands, etc. He is debarred from participating in amusements of all kinds including dancing, music, etc. He cannot sleep by day, must avoid conveyances, umbrellas and footwears. Association with women, nay, even gazing at them, must be shunned by all means. *G*[73] sums up the rules of self-control by saying that the student should keep in subjection his speech, arms and stomach.

It is interesting to add that, as a rule, corporal punishment is prohibited for a pupil[74]. When no other course is possible (*aśaktau*), he may be punished with a thin rope or cane[75]. Teachers are forbidden from striking their pupils with any other thing on pain of punishment to be inflicted by the king[76].

As regards the period of stay at the preceptor's house, *G*. does not appear to have fixed any limit[77], although it prescribes twelve years' stay for one Veda or twelve years each for the other Vedas. From *G*. it appears that, for a person, the study of one of the Vedas only was required and that of the others was optional. A fee was to be paid to the teacher on the completion of instructions. Then the pupil was to perform ablution marking the completion of the period of his studenthood.

The teacher, according to some, or, the mother, according to others, is regarded as the chief among all the *gurus*.

B. declares that one is on a level with the Śūdrā before one's *upanayana*.

With regard to the period of studentship, *B*. says that it is forty-eight years according to the ancients[78]. *B*.

---

[73] II.28.
[74] *Cf*. Śiṣya-śiṣṭir-avadhena—*G*. II.49.
[75] *G*.II.50.
[76] *Cf*. anyena ghnan rājñā śāsyaḥ—*G*. II.51.
[77] *Cf*. sarveṣu grahaṇāntaṃ vā—*G*.II.54.
[78] "paurāṇam" (*B*.I.3.1).
This word has been interpreted by Vna. as follows :—
(i) Practised in the golden age (kṛta-yuga).
(ii) Ordained and practised by the ancients like Manu, etc.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

appears to have allowed the following alternatives in the matter :—

(i) Twenty-four or twelve years for each Veda.
(ii) At least one year (*saṁvatsarāvama*) for each *kāṇḍa*.
(iii) Until the Veda has been learnt.

According to *B*., the persons fit to be approached by a student for alms are the Brāhmaṇas and so forth (*brāhmaṇādyāḥ*) who follow their own occupations (*svakarmasthāḥ*).

B., like *G*., ordains strict obedience on the part of the student to his teacher. But the former, unlike the latter, does not assume a teacher to be above all faults, and provides for the impunity of a student transgressing such order of the teacher as, if followed, will cause loss of his caste.

As a measure of self-control, the student, after reaching puberty, is debarred even from saluting the young wives of brothers and of teachers.

The rule that one may study under a non-Brāhmaṇa teacher in times of distress[79] implies that normally one was required to study under a Brāhmaṇa.

A. clearly explains the significance of the term '*dvija*.' *A*.[80] declares that a teacher gives the student his intellectual birth which is far superior to the physical birth given by his parents. The initiation to Vedic studies was regarded as indispensable, so much so that all kinds of social intercourse was prohibited with a man whose two immediate ancestors remained uninitiated or the initiation of whose ancestors up to the great-grand father and of one's own-self was not remembered.

According to *A*, the shortest period of a student's residence at his teacher's house is twelve years (*dvādaśāvarārdhyam*). But, the following alternatives are also allowed :—

---

[79] *B*.I.3.42.
[80] I.1.16.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

(i) Forty-eight years, (ii) Thirty-six years, and (iii) Twenty-four years.

As regards the rules to be observed by a student, *VK.* generally agrees with the other works. Of the *brahmacārins*, *VK.* distinguishes four kinds[81], viz.,

(1) Gāyatra, (2) Brāhma, (3) Prājāpatya, and (4) Naiṣṭhika.

Gārhasthya :

This stage of life has been described by *G.* as the source (*yoni*) of the other stages, because others do not produce any offspring. *V.*[82] holds that this stage of life excels all others. *V.*[83] gives a very happy analogy. It compares a gṛhastha to a sea. Just as all rivers flow into the ocean, so also people in all other stages of life resort to the *gṛhastha*. *V.*[84] further says that, as all creatures live by resorting to their mother, so also all those who live by begging (*bhikṣukāḥ*) live by resorting to the *gṛhastha*. The life of a householder, as described in DS., does not appear to be one of ease and luxury. The householder is required to spend his days through a round of duties prescribed by the *śāstras*. Of his various daily duties, the most importtant are the following :—

(1) Performance of the sacrifices in honour of gods, Manes and human beings,[85] and Vedic study. Of these sacrifices, the first is the performance of the rite, known as Vaiśvadeva[86]. The second, the *pitṛyajña* as it is called, consists in feeding Brāhmaṇas for the benefit of the Manes. The third, the *manuṣya-yajña* or *nṛ-yajña*, means the

[81] For duties of each kind, see Caland's Eng. tr. of *VK.* pp.185-186.
[82] VIII.14. [83] VIII.15.
[84] VIII.16. [85] *G.*V.9.
[86] Name of a particular religious ceremony performed morning and evening, and especially before the midday meal.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

performance of the rites of hospitality towards guests. Vedic study is called *ṛṣi-pūjā* or *brahma-yajña*.

(2) *Bali-karma* also called *bhūta-yajña*.

This consists in offerings to the presiding deities of the different directions after the performance of the rite known as Vaiśvadeva.

(3) Giving water to the gods, the Manes and the *ṛṣis*.

All domestic rites (*gṛhyāṇi*) are to be performed in the sacred fire which must be preserved either from the time of one's marriage, or from the partition of one's family property.

While making gifts is generally commended by *G.*, for a householder it has been said to be particularly meritorious when made to a Brāhmaṇa who has mastered all the Vedas (*veda-pāragaḥ*). The following classes of people have been especially recommended as deserving gifts :—

(1) Persons begging for their preceptors, (2) Those who are in need of money for defraying expenses of wedding, (3) The sick requiring medicine, (4) Destitute, (5) Those who want to perform a sacrifice, (6) Those engaged in study, (7) Travellers, and (8) Those who have performed the *Viśvajit*[87] sacrifice.

But, gifts for an unlawful purpose have been expressly condemned even though one may have promised to make such a gift[88].

The householder is required to lead a life of self-restraint. Besides being abstemious in his food and drink, he must be restrained in enjoying his wife. He must meet his wife after her monthly illness[89] and must avoid sexual intercourse on festive occasions[90].

[87] This is the name of a sacrifice in which one has to give away one's all as sacrificial fee.

[88] *G.*V.24. [89] *G.*V.1.

[90] *G.*V.2.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Besides showing due consideration to all the members of his family, particularly the females and the children, the householder is to accord cordial reception to his guests. A guest is described by *G.*[91] as one who, belonging to a different village and intending to stay for one night only, arrives when the sun's rays pass over the trees (*adhivṛkṣa-sūryo-pasthāyī*)[92]. The status of the guests and their castes and relationship with the *gṛhastha* are factors which determine the manner of reception deserved by them. *Madhuparka*[93] should be used in welcoming one's priest, teacher, father-in-law, paternal or maternal uncles and in entertaining them in a sacrifice or wedding ceremony. A Brāhmaṇa guest is to be especially honoured. Among other things, he must be given water for washing his feet (*pādya*), special offerings (*arghya*) and food of a superior quality (*anna-viśeṣa*).

With regard to the duties of a householder, B. substantially agrees with *G.* Unlike *G*, *B.* ordains that the sacred fire, in which all the religious ceremonies are to be performed, must be kindled at the wedding[94] ceremony.

A. gives very elaborate rules about the life of a householder. We note below only the chief rules in which it differs from *G. A.* prohibits connubial intercourse in the day-time. It allows this act subject to the restrictions imposed by the *śāstras*, but allows it in the interval also provided the wife's consent is obtained.

The slave of a Brāhmaṇa householder should fetch rice from the royal store, and honour a Śūdra guest. *A.*

---

[91] V.41.

[92] This time has been said to be '*madhyāhna*' (midday) by *MB.* Haradatta, however, suggests that the word of the text may mean either midday or evening.

[93] A mixture of curd and honey or of milk and honey. In some Purāṇas and works on Smṛti, it has been described as an admixture of curd, ghee, water, honey and sugar.

[94] II.4.22.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

also lays great stress on the proper reception of guests[95]. But, according to *A.*, a guest is one who approaches a *gṛhastha* for the fulfilment of religious duties and not for any other purpose[96]. The prevalence of beef-eating, at the time of the composition of Āpastamba's work, is clearly proved by the rules[97] which provide for the offering of cows to distinguished guests, e.g., one who has mastered the Veda, preceptor, the priest known as *ṛtvik*, a *snātaka*, a king, father-in-law.

V. does not add materially to the above rules. It however, defines a guest as 'a Brāhmaṇa who stays for one night only[98].'

Vi. classifies the property, acquired by a householder of any caste, into[99].—

(1) White—what has been acquired by the mode of livelihood prescribed for his caste, (2) Mottled—what has been acquired by a man by the mode of livelihood of the caste next inferior to his own, (3) Black—what has been acquired by the mode of livelihood of the caste lower, by two or three degrees, than his own.

Each preceding in the above list is better than the succeeding one.

Vi. gives elaborate rules to be observed by the householder in his daily life. An important rule deserving

---

[95] *A.*II.4.21. While commenting on this, Haradatta sayst hat this *sūtra* implies that a king should set up stores of paddy, etc., in the villages for honouring the Śūdra guests.

[96] *A.*II.6.5. The "religious duties" (dharmapuraskāraḥ) have been explained by Haradatta as begging for the preceptor, etc.

[97] *A.* II.8. 5—7. Haradatta, in his U., takes the word '*go*' in these rules as dakṣiṇā or fee. But, his interpretation is not plausible in view of the fact that 'goghna' (lit. meaning one in whose honour a cow is killed) is found in the sense of 'guest' in many branches of ancient Indian literature. Cf., for instance, *Pāṇini*, III.4.73; commenting on this Bhaṭṭoji explains '*goghna*' as '*gām hanti tasmai goghno'tithiḥ*'. The practice of beef-eating presumably became obsolete in Haradatta's time.

[98] VIII.7.

[99] LVIII. 2—8.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

mention is that he must not converse with *mlecchas*, *antyajas* and *patitas*[100].

Vi. agrees with *V.* in the definition of '*atithi*' or guest, and, like the other works, dwells, at considerable length, on the mode of reception to be accorded to various kinds of guests.

The duties, prescribed by *VK.* for a householder, are substantially the same as those found in the other works. But, *VK.* introduces an innovation by classifying householders into four kinds[101], viz., (1) *Vārtā-vṛtti*, (2) *Śālīna-vṛtti*, (3) *Yāyāvara*, *and* (4) *Ghorācārika*.

Bhaikṣya[102]*:* Life of an ascetic—

The rules, to be observed by a man in this stage of life, are not so elaborate as those prescribed for the preceding stages. The chief rules are that an ascetic cannot possess any store. Living at one place during the rainy season, he will enter a village only in order to beg. He will live a life of strict discipline and self-restraint, and be kind and sympathetic to all creatures.

V., the '*parivrājaka*' of which corresponds to this stage, allows an ascetic to live in a village at his option[103].

Vānaprastha: Life of a hermit—

The chief rules to be observed by a hermit are as follows :—

Dressed in bark, he will dwell at a place outside the village, and sustain himself by roots, fruits, leaves and grass and by gleaned corns.

B. classifies *Vānaprasthas* in the following manner :—

A. Pacamānakas—those who cook their food—

[100] *Vi.* LXIV.15. '*Mleccha*' is generally used to denote those who do not follow the *varṇāśramadharma*. '*Antyaja*' means low-born people and '*patitas*' outcaste.

[101] For the description of each kind, see Caland's Eng. tr. of *VK.*, p. 187.

[102] This corresponds to '*pravrajyā*' mentioned by *B.* as the last stage.

[103] *X.*26.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

(a) *Sarvāraṇyakas*—those who eat everything available in the forest, (i) *indrāvasiktas*—those subsisting on forest produce generated by Indra, e.g., lianas, shrubs, creepers, (ii) *retovasiktas*—those subsisting on forest produce generated from semen, e.g., flesh of animals slain by tigers, wolves, and other carnivorous beasts. (b) *Vaituṣikas*—those who live upon unhusked grains, (c) *Kanda-mūla-bhakṣāḥ*—those who live upon bulbs and roots, (d) *Phala-bhakṣāḥ*—those who eat pot-herbs and fruits.

B. Apacamānakas—those who do not cook their food.

(a) Unmajjakas—those who avoid the use of instruments made of iron and stone, (b) Pravṛttāśins—those who eat their food with their hands, (c) Mukhenādāyins—those who take their food with the mouth only (like beasts), (d) Toyāhāras—those who subsist on water only, (e) Vāyubhakṣas—those who eat nothing.

VK, however, gives the following classifications of *Vānaprasthas*[104] :—

(1) Sapatnīka—with wife, (i) Audumbara, (ii) Vairiñca, (iii) Bālakhilya, (iv) Phenapa. (2) Apatnīka—without wife.

Of this class there are numerous sub-divisions[105] which are as follows :—

Kālāśika, uddata-saṁvṛtta, aśmakuṭṭa, udagraphalī, dantolūkhala, uñchavṛttika, saṁdarśana-vṛttika, kapota-vṛttika, mṛga-cārika, hastādāyī, śaila-phalakādi, arka-dagdhāśī, baivāśī, kusumāśī, pāṇḍu-patrāśī, kālāntara-bhojī, eka-kālika, catuṣ-kālika, kaṇṭaka-śāyī, vīrāsana-śāyī, pañcāgni-madhya-śāyī, dhūmāśī, pāṣāṇa-śāyī, abhyavagāhī, uda-kumbha-vāsī, maunī, avāk-śiras, sūrya-pratimukha, ūrddhva-vāhuka, eka-pāda-sthita.

---

[104] For details about each class, see Caland's Eng. tr. of *VK*., pp. 189—190.

[105] For descriptions of the sub-divisions, see Caland's Eng. tr. of the *VK*., p. 191—

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

2. Administration of Secular Law And Royal Duties

Administration of justice :

G. lays down that the administration of justice shall be regulated by the Veda, the Institutes of the sacred law, the Aṅgas and the Purāṇs.

The king is advised to come to a decision regarding a matter concerning a class of people after consulting those who have authority over that particular class. Of such classes of people are mentioned cultivators, traders, herdsmen, money-lenders, artisans, etc.

In the cases of conflicting evidence, the king will have to arrive at a decision after consulting Brāhmaṇas versed in the Vedas.

Rural administration :

Vi. lays down a very interesting system of administration. A village has been taken as the unit of administration. A man will be appointed at the head of each village. Ten villages together will have one chief. Every hundred villages will have one, and a whole district will have a lord. A wrong done in a village will be righted by the village-chief. On his failure, he will bring it to the notice of the chief of ten villages. Each succeeding chief in the above order will have higher authority.

Departmental officials :

The king should appoint able officials to look after his various departments, viz., Mines, Taxes, Fares to be paid at ferries, Elephants, Forests, etc. Persons, placed in charge of different departments, must be endowed with requisite qualities. Thus, for financial business, skilled men will be appointed; for fighting brave men, and so on. It is interesting to note that eunuchs are recommended for protecting the harem of the king.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Taxation:

The rates of tax, to be levied by the king, should be as follows :—

1. Sixth part of the annual produce in the case of grains and seeds, 2. Two per cent, in the cases of cattle, gold and clothes, 3. Sixth part of flesh, honey, clarified butter, herbs, perfumes, flowers, roots, fruits, liquids, condiments, wood, skins, earthen pots, stone vessels, things made of split bamboo.

A tenth part of the marketable commodities, sold within the country of the king, shall have to be paid as duty. A twentieth part is fixed on exported commodities. The goods of a man, fraudulently avoiding the toll-house, are to be forfeited.

Subversive activities:

Proper punishment is ordained for those who try to subvert the constituent elements of a state, viz., Monarch, Council, his Fortress, Treasury, Army, Realm, King's ally.

Espionage:

Vi. provides for the appointment of spies to secure information both in the king's realm as well as in that of his enemy.

Political expedients:

Towards his neighbouring kings, who may be allied to him, neutral or inimically disposed, the king should adopt, according to the exigencies of the situation, the four modes of obtaining success, viz., negotiation (*sāma*), division (*bheda*), presents (*dāna*) and force of arms (*daṇḍa*).

According to the exigencies of the situation, the king should have resort to the six measures, viz., alliance (*sandhi*), war (*vigraha*), marching to battle (*yāna*), sitting encamped (*āsana*), seeking the protection of a more powerful king (*saṁśraya*), and distributing his forces (*dvaidhībhāva*).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Conquered territory:

A very practical piece of advice has been given by *Vi.* to the king by holding that, after conquering the country of his foe, he should not abolish all the laws prevailing there.

Treasure-trove:

Of a treasure-trove, the king should give one half to the Brāhmaṇas, and take the other half himself. A Brāhmaṇa, coming across a treasure-trove, may keep the whole of it.

Minor's property:

The king is required to protect the properties of minors, of helpless persons having no guide and of women having no guardians.

Recovered stolen goods:

Regarding recovered stolen goods, *Vi.* ordains that the king must restore the entire propetty to the owner. That the recovery of a stolen thing was regarded as a bounden duty of the king is clearly proved by *Vi's* rule that a king, failing to recover such a property, must make good the loss sustained by the owner.

3. Manners, morals and customs[166]

The DS. yield a good deal of information on the manners and morals of the society which they represent. We propose herein to note the salient features in their practices and moral outlook. For the sake of convenience, we shall deal with the subject under each of the four stages of life.

The stage of a *Brahmacārin*.[167]

The *ācārya* is held in high esteem. He is to be saluted every morning. Before proceeding to study, the student

[166] Care has been taken to avoid repetition of the above rules dealt with under *varṇāśrama-dharma*.

[167] *Gautama*

Ganganatha Jha Research Institute 1943 Allahabad.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

is to request the teacher to begin his lecture. This request is to be made by the pupil after touching one foot[168] of the preceptor. The pupil, seated on the *darbha* grass, to the right of the teacher, facing east or south, shall proceed to study only when asked by the teacher to do so. If anybody passes between the teacher and the taught, the student has to follow anew the procedure necessary for commencing his study. The names of the preceptor, his son and his wife must not be uttered by the pupil. The bed or seat of the pupil must be lower than those of the preceptor.

The student should retire to bed after his preceptor, but get up before him.

The reply to a question, asked by the preceptor, must be given by the pupil after rising from his seat. He should alwaye engage himself in doing what is pleasant and beneficial not only to the preceptor but also to the preceptor's wife and sons. But he must not eat the leavings of the food of the preceptor's wife and son, nor should he bathe them or help them in toilet, nor wash their feet and salute them by touching their feet.[169]

Daily prayers are to be said at both junctures of the day, in the standing posture in the morning and sitting till stars are visible in the evening.

In the presence of superiors, he should avoid the following practices :—

Putting a piece of cloth on the neck, placing a foot on the knee (avasakthikā), sitting on a raised spot, stretching the feet.

The following are to be avoided in the presence of all :—spitting, laughing, yawning, cracking the fingers (avasphoṭana).

---

[168] See Haradatta on *G.* (*A. A.* ed., I. 1. 49). But, *MB.*, on the same *sūtra*, appears to mean that the preceptor's hand should be touched.

[169] *G.* II. 39. Both Haradatta and *MB.* point out that this rule, by implication, provides for these things to be done by a pupil for the teacher.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

A student is forbidden to use harsh words to anybody, and is required to practise control over his speech, arms and the stomach.

A brahmacārin may beg food of members of "all the castes" (*sārva-varṇika*) excepting those who are known as abhiśasta[170] and *patita* (degraded or apostate). It is not very clear as to whether by 'all castes' *G.* includes Śūdras also. The following sūtra[171] provides that, in begging, the word 'bhavat' should be used at the beginning, in the middle and at the end (of the address at the time of begging) by the members of the three castes in order. If alms be not obtained from the persons noted above, a brahmacārin should approach the following persons in the order in which they are mentioned[172] preceptor, *jñāti* (sapiṇḍa, according to commentators), guru (= mātula, etc.). The food, obtained by alms, must at first be given to the preceptor and then taken for himself with his permission. In the absence of the preceptor, such food should be made over to the preceptor's wife, son or fellow-students. The brahmacārin shall drink water before eating, keep silent throughout the process of eating, and avoid over-eating.

The preceptor should refrain from inflicting corporal punishment on his students. In exceptional cases, however, where the student proves extremely unruly, and otherwise unmanageable, he may be given slight physical punish-

[170] The word has been explained by both *HG.* and *MB.* (on *G.* II. 43) as one who has committed a sin technically known as *upa-pātaka.* On *G.* XVII. 15, *MB.* explains it as one who is declared as having committed a fault. In this context, *HG.* explains it as one who is declared either rightly or wrongly, to be a wrong-doer. But, *A.* (I. 24-6-7) clearly defines *abhiśasta* as one who has killed either a Brāhmaṇa or a man of either the Kṣatriya or the Vaiśya caste who has completed Vedic studies (*Vedādhyāya*) or is engaged in performing *Savana* (=*soma-yāga*, acc. to *U.*) *A.* (I. 28. 17,) however, describes such a sinner as one who kills one's ownself or any other person. On *A.* (I. 29. 8), U. explains the word as *patita*; on *A.* (II. 2. 6), *U.* says that the word means 'murderer of a Brāhmaṇa'. The word also occurs in *A.* I. 3. 25 and I. 24. 15; in the latter case, *U.* explains it as *brahmahā.*

[171] II. 43.

[172] II. 44-45.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ment[173]. Heavy physical punishment for a student has been condemned as a crime[174].

At the conclusion of Vedic studies, the student should ask his preceptor what he should do for him (preceptor). Having acted up to his order, the student should, with his permission, take the ablution marking the completion of Vedic studies.

B.[175] gives us the additional information that, in begging, the word '*Bhavat*' should be used in the beginning, 'bhikṣā' in the middle and a word indicating 'prayer' at the end[176]. This, together with the subsequent sūtra, appears to have been meant for the Brāhmaṇa alone. In the case of Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas, the word 'bhavat' should be used in the middle and at the end respectively. *B.*[177] clearly provides that members of all the castes (sarveṣu varṇeṣu) may be approached for begging. The immediately following sūtra requires that the persons, to be approached for the purpose, must be Brāhmaṇas, etc., following their own occupations[178]. Govindasvāmin, presumably in consonance with the practice prevelent in his time, says that here Śūdras are excluded; what is meant is that the members of the regenerate classes alone are to be approached, and among them those who follow their own avocations (sva-karma) are to be preferred to others.

B. does not push devotion to one's preceptor too far. *B.*[179] requires the student to obey the preceptor, but not as implicity as G. appears to ordain. The same sūtra of *B.* allows the student to transgress his preceptor's order when, if carried out, this may lead to the student's degradation. According to *B.*[180] while saluting the teacher, the student is

---

[173] II. 50.
[174] II. 51.
[175] *Baudhāyana.*
[176] I. 3. 17.
[177] I. 3.18.
[178] Cf. brāhmaṇādayaḥ svakarmasthāḥ, I. 3. 19.
[179] I. 3. 23.
[180] I. 3. 27.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

to announce his own name besides touching the ears. Another person, of pure conduct, shall also be saluted at the order of the preceptor. With sacrificial wood, a pitcher of water, flowers and rice in hand, one should neither salute others nor be saluted by others.

A student should hold the umbrella on his teacher, help him in toilet, bath, etc., and eat the leavings of his food[181]. For the teacher's son also he should do all these things except eating the remnants of his food. For the wife of the preceptor, however, he shall do none of these.

In times of emergency (āpat), when Brāhmaṇas are not available (brāhmaṇābhāvaḥ-*Vna.*), one can study with a person 'other than a Brāhmaṇa'. Govindaśvāmin explains *abrāhmaṇa* a as a member of any of the two other higher castes but not Śūdras. Such a teacher shall be served and obeyed like the regular teacher.

The[182] additional information that *A.* gives us is that a brahmacārin should not partake of what has been offered in a Śrāddha or to a deity. He should avoid day-sleep.

The student is required by *A.* not to be angry with or jealous of anybody.

A. also provides for the pupil's eating the leaving of such food of his preceptor as is not condemned by Śruti[183]. He can also take the leavings of the food of his father and elder brother.

A. gives an additional rule that a pupil should carry a pitcher of water in the morning and evening[184]. Blind obedience to the preceptor is forbidden by *A*[185] who allows a student to point out to him, in private, any breach of rule that may have been committed by the latter either inadvertently or wilfully. The next two sūtras ordain that, if the

[181] I. 3. 36.

[182] *Āpastamba.*

[183] I. 4. 1. 5.

[184] For the preceptor's drink and bath-*Vna.*

[185] I. 4. 25.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

preceptor does not desist even after that, the student himself shall perform the duty neglected by the former, or dissuade him[186].

Strict discipline on the part of the student is very strongly advocated in *A.*[187]

Regarding the castes, from which food can be begged, *A.*[188] is absolutely clear. It allows a *brahmacārin* always to beg food, for his *Ācārya*, of not only Śūdras but also of Ugras[189]. This is the opinion of others (*eke*) cited, apparently with the approval by *A.* In the previous rule, *A.* provides for such a measure in times of emergency.

A.[190] forbids a student to indulge in self-applause and censure of others.

A. requires a student to treat his preceptor's wife just like the preceptor himself subject to the restriction that the former should not be saluted, and that the leavings of her food must not be taken. Apart from the remnants of food, the rules of a student's conduct towards his preceptor's son are exactly like those towards the preceptor. The same rules to be observed by a student towards his preceptor's wife should also be observed by him with respect to one who teaches him at the direction of the preceptor, and to a fellow-student who is superior to him in age and learning.

They[191] hardly prescribe any noteworthy additional rules. Of them, Viṣṇu adds one noticeable innovation. He maintains that, for purposes of begging, a brahmacārin shall approach qualified persons (guṇavatsu) excepting those

---

[186] Either directly or through the student's superior, like father, etc.

[187] I. 5. 2.

[188] I. 7. 21.

[189] Cf. Sarvadā śūdrata ugrato vācāryārthasyāharaṇam dharmyam (*Vna.*) *B* (I. 17. 4) defines Ugra as one born of a Kṣatriya father and Śudrā mother.

[190] I. 7. 24.

[191] *Vaśiṣṭha*, *Viṣṇu* and *Vaikhānasa*.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul,Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

who belong to the family of the guru[192]. It should be noted that none of these writers imposes any restriction on the caste of the person to be approached for begging.

THE STAGE OF A GṚHASTHA

General rules, especially with regard to guests.

G.[193] ordains that one should feed the following persons, first of all :—guest, a child, diseased person, a pregnant woman, daughter and sister[194] The proper reception and entertainment of guests is regarded by the authors of DS. as a bounden duty of a house-holder. For example, *A.*[195] maintains that the honouring of guests leads to peace on the part of the host in this life, and to the attainment of heaven after death. There is some divergence of opinion among the authors about the technical meaning of the term 'atithi.' The definition given by *V.* is very clear. According to this work, an *atithi* (< na tithi) is so called because of his not staying permanently (anitya). *V.*[196] defines *atithi* as a Brāhmaṇa who stays for one night. This definition does not take non-Brāhmaṇas into account. It may be that *V.* defines an atithi in relation to Brāhmaṇas alone. The next verse of *V.* excludes a co-villager from this category. *G's* definition of atithi[197] substantially agrees with that of *V.* with this difference that the former does not specify the caste of the atithi.

If the preceptor, father or friend comes to the house, the householder should offer him food and follow his bidding. According to *G.*, such distinguished guests as ṛtvik, ācārya,

[192] What precisely is meant by this word is not clear. From the trend of the discussion, however, it seems to mean the preceptor. *Vai.* adds that, for this purpose, one's own family is excluded.

[193] V. 26.

[194] Sva-vāsinī (V. L. Su-vāsinī, according to *G.* On this *MB.* comments— garbhayuktā duhitā).

[195] II. 6. 6.

[196] VIII. 7.

[197] V. 41.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

śvaśura, pitṛvya (uncle), mātula, etc. must be welcomed with madhuparka. A king, who is a *śrotriya* (lit. a Brāhmaṇa versed in the Vedas), is entitled to the same honour. A king of other castes shall be offered a seat and water. A śrotriya Brāhmaṇa must be offered water for washing feet, (arghya) and special kinds of food (anna-viśeṣa). A householder, who is unable to receive a guest in the manner described above, hall welcome him with sweet words[198]. To guests, who are either superior or equal to the host, the latter must offer bed, seat, place in the house (āvasatha), etc., which should be like those used by the latter himself[199]. Besides, the host shall move behind such a guest and honour him in other ways.

A guest of the Brāhmaṇa or the Kṣatriya caste is to be welcomed with the words *kuśala* and *anāmaya* respectively. A Vaiśya and a Śūdra are to be addressed with the word 'ārogya'.[200] *A.*[201] provides that a Brāhmaṇa guest, who has not studied the Vedas, should not be welcomed by rising from the seat. He should, however, be offered a seat, water, food, etc. If he is otherwise worthy of this honour,[202] he should be welcomed in this manner. Guests of the Kṣatriya and Vaiśya castes also are to be treated similarly.[203]

G.[204] appears to mean that, of a Brāhmaṇa, no other person than a Brāhmaṇa can be an atithi in the technical sense of the term, except when the non-Brāhmaṇa guests are invited to a sacrifice. Of the non-Brāhmaṇa guests, who are not entitled to as respectful a reception as the Brāhmaṇa guests, the Kṣatriya is to be fed after the Brāhmaṇa guest. The guests of the other castes are to be

---

[198] G. V, 37. [199] G. V. 34.

[200] This is Haradatta's interpretation. But, according to *MB.* on *G. V.* 42, this sūtra does not relate to Śūdra guests the mode of addressing whom is to be learnt from other works.

[201] II. 4. 16-18. [202] See *A.* I. 14. 12.

[203] These rules must be taken to apply to a Brāhmaṇahost.

[204] V. 43-45.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

fed along with the servants. *A.*[205] ordains that a Śūdra guest should be engaged (in drawing water, etc.) and then fed. *A.*[206] refers to the interesting custom that the servants of the host used to bring food from the king's house (rāja-kula) for the entertainment of Śūdra guests[207].

G.[208] hints at the fact that the guests of the castes other than Brāhmaṇa and Kṣatriya are to be entertained merely from the point of view of humanity, because these people, not being atithis properly speaking, are not legitimately entitled to such reception.

Manner of Salutation

After returning from abroad, one should salute, by touching the feet, of the parents, their bandhus[209] who are older in age, teacher and the teacher of the father, etc.[210] When these superiors are present together, the one who is the most revered should be saluted first. In saluting, one should, first of all, announce one's own name. Superior women, excepting mother, aunt and sister, should not be saluted on any occasion other than on returning from abroad[211]. *G.*[212] prohibits the salutation, by touching feet, of elder brother's wife and mother in-law[213]. The ṛtvik priest, father-in-law, uncle maternal and paternal—these persons, if younger in age, should be respected merely by rising from the seat.

---

[205] II 4. 19-20. [206] II. 4. 21.

[207] Haradatta comments that this hints at the prevalence of the system of the king's keeping stores of paddy, etc., in every village for the entertainment of Sūdra guests.

[208] V. 45.

[209] Mātula-mātāmaha-pitṛvya-pitāmahādayaḥ-MB. mātula-mātṛsvasṛ-pitṛ-svasrādayaḥ-HG.

[210] G. VI. 3. [211] *G.* VI. 7.

[212] G. VI. 8.

[213] *Śvaśrū*—this prohibition does not carry conviction unless we take the word to mean 'mother-in-law who is younger in age.' The Ānandāśrama ed. of the *Gautama-dharmasūtra* reads *Svasṛṇām* which again contradicts *G.* VI. 7; the latter provides for constant salutation of the sister.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

THE STAGE OF A VĀNAPRASTHA

General Rules.

The movements of a vānaprastha are restricted within the forest. He cannot live on a piece of cultivated land, nor can he enter the village.[214] He will wear matted locks, cira (i.e., made of darbha grass, etc.) and ajina (i.e., carma or skin). *A.*[215] informe us that a man, intending to resort to this mode of life, may go to the forest either alone or with his wife and children. *Vi.* attempts to fix a particular time in the life of a gṛhastha for his taking to this stage of life, although it does not specify the age. *Vi.*[216] lays down that a gṛhastha should enter the third stage of life when wrinkles and grey hair are visible on his person. Or he may do so after the birth of a grandson.

Food, habits and manners.

A.[217] ordains that a vānaprastha shall not only subsist on forest-produce but shall also entertain guests, and perform religious observances with those things. He will offer caru (i.e., preparation of rice, barley and pulse boiled with milk). *G.*, while allowing a vānaprastha to live on roots and fruits alone, definitely forbids him[218] to take anything grown in a village. He has to perform the five great sacrifices (mahā-yajña) prescribed for the householder. He has to entertain all[219] the guests excepting those who are expressly prohibited.[220]

---

[214] *G.* III. 32-33.

[215] II. 22. 8-9.

[216] 94. 1-2.

[217] II. 22. 17.

[218] III. 28.

[219] The commentators point out that the restrictions of caste, etc. with regard to guests, imposed on a *gṛhastha*, e.g., a non-Brāhmaṇa, cannot be the guest of a Brāhmaṇa, do not apply to a *vānaprastha*.

[220] *E.g.*, thieves and people born in the reverse order of castes (pratilomaja).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

A man, in this stage of life, is not debarred from eating the flesh of animals killed by wild animals, such as tiger, etc. It is interesting to note that *Vi*[221] allows a vānaprastha to gather his food from a village even an entrance to which is forbidden by some of the authorities.[222]

B.[223] adds that a vānaprastha should abstain from injury even to insects, and be capable of enduring cold. *A.*[224] prohibits the acceptance of gifts for a vānarpastha. *A.*[225] ordains that he shall lie and sit on bare ground. *A.*[226] further provides that a vānaprastha, desiring to observe greater discipline, should beg only as much food as is necessary for bare maintenance.[227]

From *V.*[228] we learn that a vānaprastha should practise continence. *V.*[229] provides that he shall live at the roots of trees after six months.[230] It is interesting to note that *V.*[231] appears to enjoin upon a vānaprastha the performance of only three yajñas, viz. deva, pitṛ and manuṣya-yajña out of the usual five.

Vi. lays stress on the extreme self-mortification of the vānaprastha.[232] As an example of the severe austerities prescribed by *Vi.*, we may cite the practice of the 'five austerities',[233] in summer, lying under the sky in the rainy season and putting on wet clothes in the dewy season (hemanta).

---

[221] 94-94. [222] *E. g. G.* III. 33.

[223] III. 3. 19. [224] II. 22.11.

[225] II. 22. 23. [226] II. 23. 1.

[227] U explains that begging should be resorted to instead of gleaning corns. It further points out that a vānaprastha should beg of other vānaprasthas.

[128] IX. 5. [229] IX. II.

[230] The meaning of the passage is not very clear. Does it provide for his living in the open after six months from his entrance to this order of life?

[231] IX. 12.

[232] Vide Chap. 95.

[233] Sitting in the midst of fire on four sides with the sun overhead.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

THE STAGE OF A PARIVRĀJAKA OR BHIKṢU

General rules

G.[234] lays down that a man, in this stage of life, should not accumulate anything. Practising self-restraint, he shall fix his abode at one paticular spot (dhruva-śīla) during the rains. He shall enter the village for begging. *B.*[235] fixes afternoon as the proper time for begging. After the expiry of the rainy season, he is not to stay for more than one day in a village. *V.* ordains that he shall not live permanently at any place; he may fix his abode at any one of the following paces :—outskirts of village, temple, empty house (śūnyāgāra) and foot of a tree.

A.[236] adds that he shall renounce all worldly pleasures, shall not take recourse to any body's help or perform any act conducive to temporal well-being (aniha) and spiritual benefit derivable in the other world (anamutra).[237] This work further provides that such a person shall renounce even all that is ordained in the śāstras, not to speak of what is prohibited, shall keep above pleasure and pain, and meditate upon the Soul (ātman), such meditation being conducive to happiness.[238] *V.* does not lay so much stress on the renunciation of all work both ordained and prohibited—as *A.* does. But it agrees with the latter in holding the acquisition of knowledge of the Supreme Soul as a bounden duty of a parivrājaka. The subjects to be meditated upon, according to *Vi*,[239] are chiefly these :—transitoriness of life, impure character of the body (aśuci-bhāva), the effect of old age on appearance, distress in the shape of diseases—

[234] III. 11 ff.

[235] II. 11. 24.

[136] II. 21. 10.

[237] Cf., ihārthāḥ kṛṣyādayaḥ paralokārthāśca japahomādāyo yasya na santi so'nihonamutra ityuktaḥ *U.*

[238] Cf., ātmani buddhe.... tadeva jñānaṃ sarvamaśubhaṁ prakṣālya kṣemam prāpayati—*U.* on *A.* II. 21. 14.

[239] Chap. 96.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

physical, mental and extraneous (āgantuka), the woeful condition in the mother's womb, the various miseries of the mundane existence and its worthlessness, the lamentable stage of rebirth as lower animals, etc.

V.[240] lays down that a man, in this order of life, shall renounce all work excepting the study of the Vedas the giving up of which reduces him to the status of a Śūdra. With regard to begging, *V.*[241] appears to imply that he should go to seven such houses as may come on his way and not selected previously. *V.* expressly prohibits begging as a profession. *V.*[242] appears to imply that begging at the houses of Brāhmaṇas alone, is allowed. The vessels, to be carried while begging, are, according to *V i.*[243], to be made of earth, wood or pumpkin.

Food, habits and manners

He is debarred from eating fruits and leaves not falling down spontaneously from trees.

He shall wear as much of clothes as is necessary to cover his nakedness. *A.*[244] cites the opinion of 'some' who advocate nakedness. *G.*[245] refers to the view of 'some' according to which he should wear a piece of cloth, forsaken by others, after washing it[246]. *V.* appears to differ, to a great extent, from other writers in allowing a parivrājaka to wear a single piece of cloth[247]. As an alternative, it prescribes ajina or grass (?).

[240] Chap. X.
[241] X. 7.
[242] X. 24.
[243] 96. 7.
[244] II. 21. 12.
[245] III. 19.

[246] The commentators point out that this provision is necessary for obviating the fault that may be committed by the acceptance of gifts. This, however, seems incompatible with G. III. 14 which allows such a person to beg. The conflict may, perhaps, be reconciled by taking this rule as a manner of self-mortification on the part of the person taking to pravrajyā.

[247] Perhaps excluding the upper garment which is to be worn by other people.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

He may either have a shaven head or keep the śikhā.[248]

The parivrājaka will have equanimity towards all creatures. *A*[249]. prescribes silence (mauna) except when studying the Vedas. According to *V*., he should avoid the following :—

> Wickedness, jealousy, pride or vanity, egotism, faithlessness, crookedness (anārjava), self-applause, censure of others, boasting, greed, delusion (moha), anger, envy.

Vi.[250] lays down that such a person should not bow down[251] to anybody.

Morals.

Although the DS. do not teach moral principles as a separate topic, yet we can have an idea of the moral outlook of their authors, and, for the matter of that, of the then society, from a critical study of the contents of these works.

From what we have said above about the life of a brahmacārin, it is clear that the formulalors of the Śāstras were quite alive to the fact that the life of the student was the foundation of the life of the man in making. In course of the rules and regulations regarding the training of a student, the authors of DS. lay great stress on the principles of morality to be inculcated into him. The chief features of the moral training of a student consist in his relation to women. He is forbidden to touch or even look at such a woman with whom his sexual intercourse may be suspected

---

[248] *B*. II. 11. 20, provides for the shaving of all the hair excepting the śikhā. *V*. X. 6, advocates complete shaving of the hair.

[249] II. 21. 10.

[250] 96. 22.

[251] *Vai*. construes it to mean that, though greeted with namaskāra by others, he should not return the namaskāra, but should simply remember Nārāyaṇa. According to others, referred to in *Vai*., he should not bow down to anybody for alms.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

by others.[252] Although the wife of the preceptor must be saluted after returning from abroad, yet such salutation is prohibited if she is younger than the pupil.[253] The same prohibition applies, according to *B.*, to the wife of a brother also. B. further adds that he should speak with women only as much as is necessary.[254] Besides these restrictions, the student is debarred from indulging in gambling, and falsehood on his part is strongly deprecated.

Implicit obedience to the teacher, as we have seen above, is a bounden duty of the student according to most of the authorities.

Coming to the second stage of life, we find that a gṛhastha has to perform a series of duties not only towards the members of his family, viz. the women and children, but also towards others, particularly guests.

The general position of the woman in the society was exalted no doubt, but certain passages bear testimony to the fact that lasciviousness of men, in their enjoyment of women, was not only condoned but also indirectly encouraged by the formulation of social law. For example, among the various kinds of sons, having a legal status, we find Gūḍhaja, Sahoḍha, Kānīna, etc. The description of the origin of these kinds of sons betrays very loose morals of the society.

Clear evidences of the existence of the institution of levirate, contained in the DS., testify to the fact that the moral outlook of the society was not very high, at least judging by modern standards. That men were allowed great licence, in their enjoyment of women, is sufficiently proved by such remarks as—na strī duṣyati jāreṇa, i.e., a woman is not defiled by a paramour.

There may be some who would try to find out a deeper significance underlying these practices; but one,

[252] *G.* II. 22. [253] *G.* II. 41,
[254] I. 3. 24.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

going through the pages of the DS. with the spirit of a historian, feels constrained to brand them as moral laxities prevalent in the society of India at a time when civilisation did not reach a high degree of refinemcnt.

4. Superstitions[255]

Preliminary remarks

The DS. contain references to certain practices, presumably prevalent in the society reflected in them, which appear to us to be based on sheer prejudice or superstitious ideas. The most prominent and interesting of them are noted below.

Classification of Superstitions

References to these practices are scattered all over the leterature. For the sake of convenience, we broadly classify them as follows :—

(1) Superstitions relating to study, (2) those connected with food, (3) those concerning sins and their expiation, (4) miscellaneous superstitions.

(1) Superstitions relating to study. The following are some of the occasions when study had to be suspended :—

> Passing of a dog, an ichneumon, a snake, a frog or cat between the teacher and his pupil, blowing of dust-carrying wind, sound of certain musical instruments, cries of dogs, jackals and asses, sight of unseasonal cloud surchaged with water, incessant downpour, falling of a thunderbolt or a meteor, eclipse and so on.

[255] Some people, who look upon DS. with a spirit of reverence, may take exception to this word. They may argue that, though seemingly superstitious, these ideas are based on scientific principles. To assess their scientific basis, if any, is the work of specialists. It is, therefore, our concern here to note such of the practices as appear to be based on prejudice or superstitious belief according to modern outlook. (The references to Gautama in this section are taken from the Ānandāśrama ed. of this work, unless otherwise stated).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

It will be seen that most of these rules are based on superstitious ideas.

An interesting rule is that the learning of the language of Mlecchas is forbidden.[256]

(2) Superstitions about food.

One should not eat, at night, anything brought by a servant (preṣya).[257]

B.[258] mentions, *inter alia*, the custom of eating with women prevalent in the southern regions. *B.*[259] says that this practice is reprehensible to the northerners. It is not clear whether *B's* strıyā saha bhojanaṃ means eating in the company of women or eating from the same vessel with them. *V.*, with the same vagueness, condemns the practice of eating with one's wife.

The leavings of the food of the preceptor are believed to cure the pupil of his disease[260].

B.[261] forbids eating on a stool or chair (āsanādi). *A.* prohiblts eating on a boat and on a palace (prāsāda)[262].

Vi.[263] forbids eating during solar and lunar eclipses.

V.[264] on the authority of the Vājasaneyins, condemns the practice of eating with one's wife. He says that such a practice results in the birth of weaklings (avīryavat) to them.

(3) Superstition concerning sins or impurities, and modes of their expiation and removal.

According to *G.*,[265] talking to Mleccha, unholy or impious persons, is supposed to taint a man with impurity which can be expiated by meditating upon pious persons.

---

[256] V. VI. 4.
[257] *G.* I. 9. 57.
[258] 1. 2. 3.
[259] I. 2. 5.
[260] B. II. 1. 25.
[261] II. 6. 6.
[262] *A.* I. 17. 6, 7. This word is explained as dārumaya maṃca (wooden platform) by Haradatta.
[263] 68.1.
[264] XII. 31.
[265] IX. 17-18.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Gautama further lays down that bath, with all the clothes on, removes the impurity caused by the touch of a fallen person (patita, Cāṇḍāla, a woman delivered of a child before the usual period of impurity is over), a woman in her monthly illness, Śava[266] (corpse) and of one who has touched the preceding persons, etc.

Samudra-saṁyāna is regarded as one of the sinful practices causing degradation (patana). This word has been explained by Govindasvāmin[267] as going to another island by boat.

Minor Superstitions

Besides the above, we meet with a number of other superstitious ideas and practices throughout the DS. The principal among them are noted here.

Euphemistic expressions are to be used to indicate certain objects whose real descriptions are unpleasant. A dry cow is to be referred to as dhenubhavyā and an inauspicious thing as bhadra (auspicious)[268].

Indra-dhanu should be referred to as maṇi-dhanu. A cow, feeding its calf, should not be told of to others.[269]

With shoes on, one should avoid sitting, greeting others or saluting the elders (abhivādana) and salutation of gods[270]. A person should not salute another who is carrying samit (sacrificial wood), a pitcher of water, flower or rice, nor should he allow himself to be saluted by others in these conditions[271].

The rope, with which a *vatsa* is tied, should not be crossed over[172]. *MB.* interprets vatsa as go-jātyupalakṣaṇam.

[266] Explained by M. B. as a corpse or one who has touched it.
[267] On B. II. 2.2.
[268] *G.*
[269] *G.*
[270] *G.* I. 9. 45.
[271] B. I. 3. 32.
[272] *G.*

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

A.[273] prohibits the practice of counting birds remaining in a flock.

Riding a cart, drawn by asses, is prohibited by *A.*[274]

According to *Viṣṇu*[275], the performance of śrāddha should not be seen by a woman in her monthly course, dogs, pigs, village cocks (grāmakukkuṭa); but the performer of Śrāddha should carefully show it to an aja (goat).

5. Āpad-Dharma

(Rules to be observed in times of distress)

General remarks

From what has been stated under Varṇāśrama-dharma above, it is clear that the authors of DS. fixed the duties of the different castes with great rigidity. It was considered to be a gross violation of social discipline for a member of one caste to take to the occupation of another. But the authors were not devoid of practical considerations. They took into account the exigencies of an adverse situation when it might not be possible for a person to follow his own calling. Below we collect the imformation, contained in the DS., about the rules to be observed by one in times of danger as also the restrictions imposed on the person concerned in such circumstances.

Brāhmaṇas

In times of danger,a Brāhmaṇa is allowed to study under a non-Brāhmaṇa. In such a circumstance, however, the service (śuśrūṣā) of the teacher consists merely in the pupil's following him (anugamana), and the elaborate rules of attending upon the former will not be observed by the

[273] I. 31. 19. na patataḥ sa cakṣīta. The word 'patataḥ' is taken by Haradatta to mean birds in a flock. He refers to other views according to which it means luminaries falling from the firmament.

[274] I. 32. 25.

[275] 81. 6. 9.

Gangnatha Jha Research Institute 1943 Allahabad.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

latter. After the completion of studies, the Brāhmaṇa pupil will be treated as the guru by the non-Brāhmaṇa teacher.

At such times, a Brāhmaṇa is allowed to carry on his usual duties of yājana (performing sacrifice for others), adhyāpana (teaching) and pratigraha (acceptance of gifts) without such caste distinction as is to be usually observed. He can perform sacrifices on behalf of members of any of the castes. Likewise, he can teach all, and from all he can accept gifts[276]. Of these three kinds of work, each preceding in the list is superior to the succeeding one, so that the inferior one should be taken to at first; and on failure of that the next one should be chosen.

If the means of livelihood, set forth above, be not possible, a Brāhmaṇa can even take to the occupation of Kṣatriyas and Vaiśyas, the latter on failure of the former. But a Brāhmaṇa is debarred from dealing in unguents, oil, kṛtānna (prepared food), sesamum, hemp, flax and leather, dyed and washed cloth, milk and curd, roots, fruits, flowers, medicine, honey, flesh, grass, water and poison, beasts when there is the likelihood of their being killed, slaves, cows of the following descriptions:— barren, she-calf, one that has destroyed the foetus. *G.*[277] cites the opinion of 'some' who prohibit also *bhūmi*,[278] paddy, barley, goat, sheep, horse, bull, milch-cow and cart-drawing ox. *G.*, however, allows a Brāhmaṇa in distress to barter the following in exchange of similar things:—rasa, i.e., oil etc., beasts.

G.[279] ordains that, in times of extreme distress, a Brāhmaṇa may, in violation of the above restrictions, subsist

[276] *G.* VII. 4. As an alternative interpretation of this *sūtra*, the commentators suggest that the threefold occupation of the Brāhmaṇa can be resorted to by members of all other castes.

[277] *G.* VII. 15.

[278] Commentators explain it as gṛha (house).

[279] VII. 22.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

by any means (*sarvathā*) provided, however, he does not take recourse to the occupation of a Śūdra. In the next sūtra, *G.* cites the opinion of 'some', obviously with approval, that even the occupation of a Śūdra may be adopted by a Brāhmaṇa when there is the risk of loss of life, the only restriction in this case being that he cannot eat garlic, etc. nor sit together with a Śūdra nor can his body come in contact with the Śūdras.

When there is any risk of life, a Brāhmaṇa may use arms[280] for self-protection.

B.[281] allows a Brāhmaṇa at such a time to take to the occupation of a Kṣatriya, on its failure to that of a Vaiśya, but does not impose the restrictions as described above[282].

Kṣatriyas

In times of distress, a kṣatriya can take to the occupation of a Vaiśya.

Vaiśyas and Śūdras

It is interesting to note that the authors of DS. do not show any anxiety to formulate rules to be observed by Vaiśyas and Śūdras in times of distress. Even in the case of a Kṣatriya no restrictions are imposed. These facts tend to demonstrate that the non-Brāmhaṇas, particularly the Vaiśyas and Śūdras, were at liberty to take recourse to any means of livelihood without the risk of being degraded.

[280] *G.* VII 25.

[281] II. 4. 16, 19.

[282] It is interesting to note that, according to *B.* II. 4. 17, Gautama does not allow a Brāhmaṇa to take to the occupation of a Kṣatriya on the ground that the latter is too difficult for the former. Curiously enough, the extant work of Gautama does not contain this prohibition—a fact that has led Govindasvāmin to suppose that another version of Gautama's work existed.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ROLE OF THE VEDIC GODS IN THE GṚHYA-SŪTRAS

By Sri Alakh Niranjan Pande

The Vedic conception of a deity

The Vedic conception of a deity is purely spiritual and philosophical and the notion that the deities were merely the representation of the natural phenomena is not consistent with the notion about the deities as held by the Vedic seers. The vedic conception of a deity as propounded by the author of the *Nirukta* is nothing but monistic. On account of the super-eminence of a deity, a single soul is praised in different ways. "महाभाग्यात् देवताया एक आत्मा बहुधा स्तूयते"[1] It is manifest from such a consideration that the basic idea of deity was that of a single entity of light or power which was utilised for certain functions and for attainment of divine ends which was far beyond the human reach to attain. It also happened that according to functions the Gods multiplied and so the author of the *Nirukta* lays down that they are original forms of each other. They are produced from each other "एकस्यात्मनोऽन्ये देवाः प्रत्यङ्गानि भवन्ति", "इतरेतरजन्मानो भवन्तीतरेतरप्रकृतयः" They are 'कर्मजन्मानः' and they are 'आत्मजन्मानः' The author of the *Bṛhaddevatā* is also of opinion that the conception of a god is through and through monistic and the different gods originated from Agni alone and all the gods, really speaking have come into being from a single soul.

पृथक् पुरस्ताद्ये तूक्ता लोकादिपतयस्त्रयः[2] ।
तेषामात्मैव तत्सर्वं यद्यद्भक्तिः (प्रकीर्यते) ।
रसान् रश्मिभिरादाय वायुनाऽयं गतः सह ।
वर्षत्येव च यल्लोके तेनेन्द्र इति स्मृतः ।

[1] *Nirukta*, 7.4. 9—11.
[2] *Bṛhaddevatā* 1.73. 68.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The above words of the author of the *Bṛahaddevtā* apparently show that the idea of a deity was necessarily monistic and one and the same god could be called by a different name only as his functions changed. The following lines show the powers of Vedic gods as they take part in the daily rites of the Hindus. The great authors of the Gṛhyasūtras were fully conversant with the powers of these gods and invoked them according to their powers in different functions. Thus the functional division of gods in the Gṛhyasūtras is of a thoroughly spiritualised and specialised nature. We have tried to show in the following lines such a functional division of gods.

In spite of the fact that the Gṛhyasūtras have added some more gods to the list, they still maintain and lay emphasis only upon the thirty three gods of the Vedic pantheon. During the course of the Agrahāyaṇī ceremony the Yajamāna utters a significant mantra: "May the three times eleven gods, the thirty three, the gracious ones whose purohita is Bṛhaspati, on the impulse of god Savitṛ, may the gods with all the gods offer me bliss"[3].

The mantra clearly indicates that all the thirty three gods of the Vedic pantheon along with certain other gods formed part of worship and invocation in the age of the sūtras.

The Ṛgvedic conception that the gods occupied the three regions viz the earth, the air and the heaven, was also established in the minds of the people. During the Upanayana ceremony the teacher murmurs in right ear of the boy "Stand fast in Agni and on the Earth, in Vāyu and in the Air, in Sūrya and in Heaven"[4]. Again, during the Śrāddha ceremony the following is uttered which testifies the same view: "The Earth is steady, Agni is its surveyor, the Air is steady, Vāyu is its surveyor, the Heaven is steady, Āditya is its surveyor"[5].

[3] *Hir.*, 2.8.17.4. [4] *Hir.*, 1.2.6.3. [5] *Hir.*, 2.4.11.4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The delineation of gods according to their functions

AGNI

The author of the *Nirukta* has to say the following about Agni, "अग्निः कस्मात् । अग्रणीर्भवति । अग्रं यज्ञेषु प्रणीयते । अङ्गं नयति सन्नममानः । त्रिभ्य आख्यातेभ्यो जायत इति शाकपूणिः । इताद्अक्ताद्ग्धात् वा नीतात् । स खल्वेतेरकारमादत्ते । गकारमनक्तेर्वा दहतेर्वा नीपरः ।" From what root is Agni derived? He is the greatest leader. He is led first in sacrifices. Śākapūṇī says, "It is derived from three verbs from going, from shining, from burning and from leading. He indeed takes the letter अ from the root इ to go, the letter ग from the root añj, to shine, or from दह् to burn, with the root नी to lead as the last member.[6]

The foremost deity in the entire range of Gṛhya rites is Agni. No ceremony could be possible without its being ceremoniously kindled and oblations being offered to it. Every householder kept the sacred Gṛhya fires alive and offerings were made to them both by himself and his wife twice or thrice a day. Agni as viewed in the Gṛhyasūtras is the great symbol of physical power, capable of granting longevity and source of prosperity and happiness to the worshipper. It is of holy lustre for which the people so often invoke it with emotion. It is the chief god to make the people grow. So the mantra in Upanayana shows that Agni, as the foremost leader, is thought to be the source of all-round prosperity and giver of energy and power: "This fuel is thyself Jātavedas. Thereby thou shalt be inflamed and grow. Inflame us and make us grow; through offspring, cattle, holy lustre and through the enjoyment of food make us grow"[7].

Agni is deemed to be the source of all impulse, energy, intelligence, wisdom and divine effulgence. The student, before beginning his Vedic studies, makes oblations to

[6] *Nir.*, 7.4.

[7] *Hir.*, 1.1.2.18.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Agni with the words :—"To Agni, I have brought a piece of wood, to the great Jātavedas."

Agni is also thought to be responsible for the protection of human life and a deity capable of prolonging the span of life because it is ever saturated with ghee which is efficacious for longevity. Thus, the prayer used for Agni in Upanayana, shows its miraculous power to grant a long life as it is ever offered with plenty of ghee :—

" Life-giving O god, choosing long life, thou whose face is full of ghee, whose back is full of ghee, the noble ambrosia that comes from the cow, lead this boy to old age as a father leads a son[8]". In the same ceremony the teacher looks at the boy while he is eating and utters "Him Agni, lead to long life and splendour." Further seizing the right hand of the boy together with his thumb he says, "Agni is long lived. May Agni bestow on thee long life everywhere." This is why Agni is called the lord of food which preserves life.

Agni is very often believed to be the standard of immortality and an assurance against short life as in the following mantra :—

" Myself has returned, my life has returned, design has returned to me, Agni grown strong with his rays ; may he dwell in my mind, the standard of immortality[9]."

The Ṛg-Vedic conception of Agni as the carrier of oblations to gods and a witness of human activities and a giver of medicine is to be traced in the following mantra to Agni in daily offering :—

"Thou whom we have set to work, Jātavedas, carry forward our offering. Agni, perceive this work as it is performed by us. Thou art a healer, a creator of medicines, etc[10]." So the Agni is taken to be the lord of vows and

---

[8] *Hir.*, 1.1.3.11.

[9] *Hir.*. 1.5.17.4.

[10] *Hir.*, 1.1.2.18.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the student takes oath before it, "Lord of vows, I will keep my vows[11]."

The worshipper of Agni ever kept his favourite deity in his mind as he started in his struggle in life or whenever he happened to have a presentiment of certain evil approaching him. Thus for success in the assembly hall, "For me Agni and Indra accomplished my divine aim." Reciting this verse he looked at the assembly and turned towards it. And also whenever there was a cry of a she-wolf or an owl, Agni was prayed to avert the evil because in the Vedas it has been referred to as a killer of demons.

Agni, then, is the god responsible for the protection of cows. When the cows leave for the pasture, the following formula is said, "May Indra and Agni make you go[12]."

INDRA

"Indra" says the author of the *Nirukta* "is so designated because he distributes food (इरा + दृ) or he offers food (इरा + दा) or he keeps food or he sends food (इरा + दारय) or he holds food (इरा + धारय) or he runs for Soma (इन्दु + द्रु) or he pleases himself with Soma or he brightens (creatures by producing food and bestowing it)....or the word is rooted in इन्द,, to be powerful[13]".

Next to Agni is the importance of Indra in the Gṛhya-sūtras. Sometimes Indra gets a similar attitude as Agni, but the physical strength of Indra is more emphasised than that of Agni. Indra was the god who received daily oblations just as Agni did.

Just like Agni, Indra is also invoked for imparting intelligence, wisdom, vigour, splendour, and intellectual strength. In the Upanayana ceremony a brāhmaṇa invokes

[11] *Hir.*, 1.2.7.21.
[12] *Āśv.*, 2.10..; *Sāṅkh*, 3.9.; *Gov.* 3.6.
[13] *Nir.* 10.8.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

him for learning, a kṣhatriya for glory and a vaiśya for wealth. In the same ceremony the teacher looks at the boy as he is eating and repeats the words, "In every pursuit we invoke thee, Indra." Then approaching the acolyte he says, "Intelligence may Indra give thee". Before the student goes for alms, Indra is invoked for insight and the guest eats his madhuparka praying to Indra to offer him vigour.

As he was a weilder of thunderbolt, Indra was believed to destroy every thing evil with his invincible weapon. So the snātaka while holding his staff imagines that the staff that he holds is nothing but Indra's thunderbolt.

Indra had a great part to play in the family welfare. He was adored at the marriage ceremony for progeny and happy conjugal life and was also deemed to cause fertility even in a sterile woman. On the occasion of Garbhādhāna, Indra is requested to remove any sterility if it effected the woman at all, with the words, "Indra has laid down in the tree the embryo of the sterile cow, and the cow that permanently produces. Thereby become thou pregnant[14]."

The people believed that Indra could offer mental peace because of his invincible power to kill enemies and demons and to bring about the victory of worshipper in various spheres of activity. Along with Agni he is prayed for success in the assembly hall[15]. When pupils, companions or servants ran away they were to be rebuked with the mantra, "May the rebuke of Indra always rebuke you .....May Indra bind you with his bond and may he drive you back again." So Indra was thought to be a god who could work in the truant minds and bring them on the right path. Indra as a searcher of lost things as cows and waters from the hands of Paṇis and Vṛtra are well known events in the *Ṛg-veda* also. Again when a wife had a paramour then also

[14] *Hir.* 1—7 ; 25. 1.

[15] *Hir.*, 1.5.16.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

with necessary ceremony Indra was invoked to drive away the paramour and create love in the husband for the wife. At the ominious cry of a jackal, Indra was invoked along with Agni to avert the impending evil. Again, in the building of a house the householder could not do without the help of the paramount powers of the Indra to protect his house from rain, storm, the evil eyes of the demons and worldly enemies. He is called by the name of the Mahendra[16] and Śacīpati[17] and is prayed at the time of house building ceremony along with Vāstoṣpati, Soma, Yama, Varuṇa and others.

VARUṆA

Nirukta[18] derives Varuṇa as, "वरुणो वृणोतीति सतः". Varuṇa is so named as he covers all. Varuṇa, the all-perceiving deity of the vedic pantheon, from whose punishment no one could escape and to whom Vaśiṣṭha has addressed a memorable hymn, occupies a secondary position not only to Indra and Agni but also to other gods as Rudra, Sāvitrī and Prajāpati.

As in the Vedic pantheon, in the Gṛhya-sūtras also Varuṇa is very often associated with Mitra and their joint effort is sought for the attainment of certain ends. Thus, at the birth of a child both Varuṇa and Mitra are invoked for the production of intelligence. Again at the Pṛṣṭātaka ceremony which is sacred to Rudra and which is performed for the well being of the cows, the very first oblation is offered to Mitra and Varuṇa[19]. Varuṇa is the deity invoked at the Puṁsavana ceremony at the time when the Nyagrodha with fruits on both sides is bought[20]. It is so because Nyagrodha was believed to be sacred to Varuṇa as in the house building ceremony it is clearly laid down

[16] *Gobh.*, 4.7.41. [17] *Hir.*, 1.8.28. [18] *Nirukta*, 10. 4.
[19] *Gobh.*, 3.8.; *Khad.*, 3.3.; *Sāṅkh.*, 4.1.
[20] *Gobh.*, 2.6.

Ganganatha Jha Research Institute 1943 Allahabad

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

that Nyagrodha is the tree sacred to Varuṇa and a house built of it brings oppression to the owner through hostile arms[21]. Varuṇa's house as described in the *Ṛg-veda* has thousand doors and thousand columns; so he is the fittest god to be propitiated at the time of house building or entering a new house[22].

Varuṇa, the great moral governor of the universe, who directs all the beings on the standard of right conduct, is again remembered by the guru at the Upanayana ceremony when he seizes the right hand of the boy with the words "Varuṇa has seized thy hand," so as to lead him on the lines of right conduct.

The idea of the *Ṛg-veda* that Varuṇa keeps the sinners under his fetters has very often been repeated in the various Gṛhya ceremonials. Thus, at the time of leaving his guru the student takes the upper garment that he put on in his student life and prays to Varuṇa, "Loosen from us thy highest band, Varuṇa[23]." It is only by way of forgiveness for the sins that he might have inadvertently committed in his student life. So it is the proper time to invoke Varuṇa, the great forgiver, to the suppliants when the student has to enter the threshold of life. Again, at the time of putting off the girdle at this hour, he remembers Varuṇa with the words, "Loosen the highest fetter, O Varuṇa."

Varuṇa, then, is the god deemed to bring about prosperity to animals. So at the ceremony by which the thriving of horses is desired, Varuṇa is invoked and worshipped along with Agni, Pūṣan, and Indra.

As Varuṇa is all perceiving and keeps a note of the future evils, so he is particularly invoked when portents appear. Thus, if a dove sits down on the hearth, or the bees make honey in the house, or the cow suckles the calf of some other cow or a post puts forth shoots, or an ant-

[21] *Gobh.*, 2.6. & 4.7.23. [22] *Gobh.*, 4.7; *Hir.* 1.8.1.
[23] *Hir.*, 1.3.9.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

hill rises in the house, then Varuṇa is adored to avert the evil or misfortune that might lie in store due to these ominous presentations[24]. Again, in the marriage ceremony[25], Varuṇa is particularly invoked to remove all evils, so that the wife may not face the opportunity to weep over the distress caused by sons. "May king Varuṇa grant that this wife may not weep over distress through her sons." Varuṇa as the moral guardian of humanity must grant proper conduct to sons. Varuṇa is expatiated again, on the occasion of Sīmantonnayana ceremony so that the offspring may be moral, long-lived and lucky. So at the childbirth Varuṇa is prayed to free the child from his fetters, meaning thereby to please Varuṇa to set the boy free from the sufferings of previous sins so that the newcomer may live happily in the present birth leading a moral and virtuous life.

Aśvins

The writer of the *Nirukta* says the following regarding Aśvins :—

"अश्विनौ अश्विनौ यद्वश्नुवाते सर्वं रसेनान्यो ज्योतिषान्यः। अश्वैरश्विनावित्यौर्णवाभः। तत्कावाश्विनौ। द्यावापृथिव्यावित्येके। अहोरात्रावित्येके। सूर्याचन्द्रमसावित्येके। राजानौ पुण्यकृतावित्यैतिहासिकाः।"

"The Aśvins are so named because they two pervade all, one with moisture and the other with light. Aurṇanābha says that they are called Aśvins due to their having horses. According to some, they are the heaven and the earth. According to others they are the day and the night. Some think them to be the sun and the moon; while the historians call them to be two virtuous kings[26]."

The two Aśvins as they appear in the Gṛhya-sūtras seem to have lost their great importance that they once held in the early vedic age. Here they exist merely as gods helpful to humanity through their extraordinary power.

[24] *Hir.*, 1.5.17. [25] *Hir.*, 1.6.19.
[26] *Nir.*, 12.1.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

They represent the ideal of physical power and their capability to help and protect is often referred to in emphatic terms. Thus, on the occasion of Upanayana, the teacher seizing the right hand of the boy along with his thumb utters these words, "By the impulse of god Savitṛ, *with the arms of two Aśvins*, with Pūṣan's hand I seize thy hand"[27].

Aśvins have been often represented as being wreathed with lotus. During the course of Upanayana ceremony the Ācārya approaching the mouth of the boy murmurs a prayer to Aśvins to grant intelligence to him, perhaps because of the fact that the great Aśvins of the vedic pantheon had been once famous for their medical knowledge. As the two Aśvins are famous charioteers, so on the occasion of ascending the chariot they are invoked with, "May this your chariot, O Aśvins, not suffer damage either in pain or in joy. May it make its way without damage dispersing those who damage us[28]."

The indication of Aśvins being the gods who promoted health and happiness, is apparent from the fact that they are particularly invoked for the protection of cows for milk and women's breast. Thus, at the time of marriage Hiraṇyakesin prescribes an invocation to Aśvins for the protection of woman's breast and in the same Gṛhyasūtra the Aśvins are prayed for the protection of cows. It was generally held that embryo in females is produced by Aśvins with their golden stick because in garbhādhāna the mantra says, "The embryo which the two Aśvins produce with their golden kindling sticks; that embryo we call into your womb, that those may give birth to it after ten months[29]."

Thus, we note that the Aśvins represent powers who help and protect, who destroy evils, and who grant protection to cows and the female sex.

---

[27] *Gobh.*, 2.10.26.

[28] *Hir.*, 1. 4. 2.

[29] *Hir.*, 1, 7. 25. 1.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

RUDRA

"Rudra", the author of the *Nirukta* holds, "is so called as he roars (रौति) or because he runs (द्रवति) making a violent outcry." 'रुद्रः रौतीति सतः, रोरूयमाणो द्रवतीति वा रोदयतेर्वा'।[30]

Rudra, the malignant mighty deity of the *Ṛg-veda* gifted with healing powers is chiefly invoked for the well-being of the cattle in the Gṛhya-sūtras, though in daily offerings and certain other ceremonies he has a special place.

The Pṛśātaka and Śūlagava ceremmnies are particularly meant to propitiate Rudra. Pṛśātaka is performed for the well-being of cows where a mess of boiled rice and grains with milk sacred to Rudra is prepared on the full-moon day of the month of Aśvayuga. The Śūlagava is performed to adore Rudra to avert plague on cows. In this ceremony Rudra is invoked to come on his swift white horses that are as quick as thought. Here we have only the benevolent nature of Rudra. But in a later mantra we note his malignant and fierce nature as well; because then he is addressed with epithets as, Ugra, Bhīma, Rudra and later on, he is associated with wrath.[31] From this it is evident that the fierce qualities of Rudra are also well known to the people. Such an idea is all the more confirmed when we see that in the *Gobhila Gṛhya-sūtra*, Rudra is classed with Rākṣas and Asuras in connection with sacrifices procuring happiness. The physical features of Rudra are made clear when he is propitiated to crush down an adversary with the mantra, "Rudra with the dark hair lock, hero at every contest, strike down this my adversary as a tree by a thunderbolt[32]". Then Rudra is again addressed for success in trade, when some new business had to be commenced. On the occasion of Puṁsavana, Rudra is also invoked at the time of buying the nyagrodha in the *Gobhila Gṛhya-sūtra*.

[30] *Nir.*, 10. 5. [31] *Hir.*, 2.3 . 8. 5-7. [32] *Hir.*, 1. 5. 16.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

It must have been clear from the above that Rudra had a very important place in the popular faith of those days. Thus, if a fruit unexpectedly fell over a person, the *Hiraṇyakeśin-Gṛhya-Sūtra* has an elaborate adoration to Rudra as a great benefactor. In this context the vedic conception of Rudra being armed with an arrow also becomes clear. Here, Rudra is said to live on roads, among cattle, among serpents, in the air, in the waters, and all beautiful places including sacrificial sites and even a big tree. Here, we get a clue into the all-pervasive nature of Rudra.

The spit-ox ceremony of the *Āśvalāyana* clearly indicates that Rudra was believed to be a malignant deity and the animal sacrifice to Rudra is performed merely to satiate him. The worship of Rudra in this *Gṛhya-Sūtra* unfolds Rudra to be a god, armed with arrows and having his hosts in all the quarters. The mantras as, "What shall we do Rudra", "These prayers to Rudra, To thee, O Father, These songs to Rudra with the strong bow," are significant. The worship of all the quarters of the horizon at all sacrifices to Rudra means that Rudra and his hosts pervaded all the quarters. In this *Gṛhya-Sūtra* we get the following synonyms of Rudra's names—"To Hara, Mṛḍa, Śarva, Śiva, Mahādeva, Ugra, Bhīma, Paśupati, Rudra, Śaṅkara, Iśāna."[33] The *Khadira-Gṛhya-Sūtra*[34] also deems Rudra to be the lord of the cattle and thus prays Rudra, "Thou who art the lord of cattle, who walkest with the line of cattle, Rudra, the manly one, do no harm to our cattle; let this be offered to thee."

Thus, Rudra has been viewed both as a malignant and a benevolent deity in the Gṛhya-Sūtras. He is a god with a fierce out-look and keeps his hosts posted in all the quarters. He is the lord of cattle and possesses wonderful power to protect them.

[33] *Āśv.*, 4. 8. 19—24.
[34] 2. 1. 26.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

VIṢṆU

The *Nirukta* explains Viṣṇu as one who pervades (विषितः). Viṣṇu is derived from the root विश् to pervade or from व्यश् to interpenetrate[35].

In the *Gṛhya-sūtras* the place of Viṣṇu is not so important as Agni, Indra, Prajāpati or Soma. He is invoked comparatively in few ceremonies but is an important deity of family life. Thus, in marriage in the Saptapadī ceremony Viṣṇu is the chief god to be invoked because even from the days of the *Ṛg-veda* the three steps of Viṣṇu had been known to be for the good of humanity and for the creatures of the universe. Again, at the Garbhādhāna the husband touches the secret part of the wife and utters, "May Viṣṇu make thy womb ready." In the nuptials the husband has to utter, May Viṣṇu take care of thy womb.[36] "Thus the idea of Viṣṇu as a great protector from the evil beings still persists for in the *Ṛg-veda* Viṣṇu has been represented to kill the demons with his friend Indra".[37] That is why he has been called as the lord of beings. (Śrāvaṇā ceremony).[38]

Viṣṇu is the god deemed to bless the boy in the tonsure ceremony and lest the razor may injure him, Viṣṇu is invoked with his weapon with the words, "Viṣṇu's tusks art thou." In the daily sacrifices though Viṣṇu has a subordinate position yet he seems to be the guardian head of the sacrifice because if any thing is said or done unworthy of sacrifice, Viṣṇu was the god adored.

Thus, Viṣṇu was believed to be an important god of domestic welfare and perhaps the presiding deity of the sacrifice.

PRAJĀPATI

Prajāpati as the *Niruktakāra* holds is the supporter and protector of beings (प्रजापतिः प्रजानां पाता पालयिता वा।)[39]

---

[35] *Nir.*, 12. 18. [36] *Śāṅkh.* 1. 24. [37] *Macdonell, Hymns.* Page 34.
[38] *Hir.*, 2. 6. 16. 4. [39] *Nir.*, 10. 43.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The conception of Prajāpati comes in the later Vedic period when he is taken to be the creator of gods[40] from upward breathing of his mouth[41]. This along with the story in the *Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa*[42] that it was Prajāpati who awarded immortality to the gods, is at the root of the *Gṛhya-sūtra* conception of this deity. So long life, immortality, offspring and wealth in cattle were the principal objectives for which Prajāpati is invoked in the *Gṛhya-sūtras*. He is adored in Jātakarman ceremonies to confer long life on the son. As referred to in the house-building ceremony of *Gobhila*[43], udumbara is the wood sacred to Prajāpati. So at the Cūḍākaraṇa ceremony the handle of the razor is made of udumbara wood. One desirous of thriving in cattle was directed to make marks on the newly born calf with a sword of udumbara wood. Again, at the tonsure the cut-off hair is buried near an udumbara tree. All these details in ceremonials evidently show that Prajāpati was deemed to be a great preserver and multiplier of progeny both in cattle and in human beings. As a matter of fact this was also the real significance of his name in the religious history of the past. This is also the motive with which a student is put in charge of Prajāpati in the Upanayana ceremony[44].

The Aṣṭakā, a festival sacred to the night for bringing prosperity, is also consecrated to Prājapati along with the manes. It shows the importance of Prajāpati as the divine father who if duly adored is sure to award prosperity as the manes are wont to do[45]. The Śrāvaṇā ceremony is meant to avert fear from the serpents, and Prajāpati is invoked[46] along with Śrāvaṇā, Viṣṇu, Agni, and Viśvedevas. It is merely

---

[40] *Mait.*, 4. 14. 1. devānām pita
[41] Śatapatha., 11. 1. 6. 7.
[42] 10. 4. 3. 3-4, 6-8.
[43] 4. 7. 24.
[44] *Gobh.*, 2. 10. 31., *Hir.*, 1. 1.3. 7
[45] *Gobh.*, 3. 10. 3.
[46] *Gobh.*, 3. 7. 19.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

to show that Prajāpati as the creator of both the gods and demons[47] is sure to avert fear from serpents.

Prajāpati as the most benign father of the beings is also invoked when the Snātaka puts on his umbrella[48]. It clearly shows that Prajāpati of both the human beings and the cattle was always remembered for protection against their enemies. There is to be traced a fatherly devotion to Prajāpati in the *Gṛhya-sūtras*.

Pūṣan

Pūṣan is believed to be the lord of the path. In the *Āśvalāyana-Gṛhya-sūtra*[49], the newly married bride mounts the chariots with the words, "May Pūṣan lead thee from here holding thy hand." If one goes for a business, Pūṣan was to be remembered for a safe journey. If the lost thing is to be found or if one has strayed, Pūṣan is prayed "Bring us together, Pūṣan with a knowing one." If a long and dangerous road was to be traversed a prayer to Pūṣan was made "Journey over the ways Pūṣan[50]".

Pūṣan, as depicted in the *Gṛhya-sūtras*, is both a pastoral and domestic god. Along with Agni, Vāyu, Aryaman, and Soma etc., Pūṣan is also invoked in the marriage ceremony either at the oblation of the fried grain (*Gobh*) or after the bridegroom has made the bride turn from left to right so that she faces west and recites over her, "Thus, Pūṣan, lead her to us, the highly blessed one etc[51]." The *Sāṅkhāyana-Gṛhya-sūtra* has invocation for Pūṣan both in marriage and the fourth day ceremony after marriage. It clearly shows the power of Pūṣan as a god ensuring conjugal happiness and marital success. The belief that Pūṣan is the great preserver of life even of gods is apparent from the tonsure ceremony when the left side of the child's head is shaved with the mantra, "The razor with which

[47] *Śatapatha*, 1. 2. 4. 8. [48] *Hir.*, 1. 3. 10. 11.
[49] 1. 8. 1. [50] *Āśv.*, 3. 8-10. [51] *Hir.*, 1. 6. 20. 2.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Pūṣan has shaven the head of Bṛhaspati, of Agni, of Indra, for the sake of long life with that I shave thy head[52]." In the same context when the cut-off hair is buried in a cow-house, or near an udumbara tree, or in a clump of Darbha grass, Pūṣan is invoked with other gods to keep the hair safe in heaven and earth.

Pūṣan, as the principal domestic god, is naturally prayed for the growth of kindred. Thus, in the daily oblation Pūṣan gets offerings with the following mantra, "Pūṣan is rich in kindred, let him make me rich in kindred by the father, the mother, the brothers of....[53]".

We also get a glimpse of the bountiful strong hands of Pūṣan in the Upanayana ceremony when the teacher with his right hand touches the right hand of the boy along with his thumb and says, "....with Pūṣan's hand touch thy hand[54]."

Pūṣan is the favourite pastoral god of the Vedas. As in the *Ṛg-veda* (6-54-5) in the *Gṛhya-sūtras* also Pūṣan is believed to be a god responsible for the prosperity of the cattle and their safe return if they go astray. Thus, at the cow sacrifice through which a thriving condition among the cows is gained and also at the horse sacrifice[55] boiled rice grain with milk is offered to Pūsan. And when the cows go out to the pasture ground the following invocation is made to Pūṣan along with Agni, Aśvins, and Prajāpati, "May Pūṣan drive you back again. May Pūṣan go after our cows."

Bṛhaspati

According to the author of the *Nirukta*, Bṛhaspati is the protector and supporter of the universe. Bṛhaspati,[56] "the sage of the sages", "supreme lord", the "controller"

---

[52] *Hir.*, 2. 1. 5. 11.
[53] Sā kh., 1. 9. 9.
[54] *Gobh.*, 2. 10. 26.
[55] *Gobh.*, 2. 7. 10. 13.
[56] *Nir.*, 10. 11.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and also sometimes called the generator of the hymns of the *Ṛg-veda*, occupies no lesser position in the realm of the *Gṛhya-sūtras*. As a matter of fact he is the chief god of instruction in the Gṛhya-sūtras. He is a deity who directs the child to moral and intellectual ends. The warlike qualities of Bṛhaspati which are so characteristic of him in the *Ṛgveda*[57] do not appear in the *Gṛhya-sūtras* merely because wars in this age had become the events of the past and did not come in the forefront of the people's mind. In fact the chivalrous qualities of even the most heroic gods seem to be fading away in the *Gṛhya-sūtras*.

Naturally enough, Bṛhaspati comes in the Upanayana ceremony just when the boy has taken off his old garments and the preceptor has made him put on a new one that has not yet been washed, the following mantra is uttered, "Dress him with this garment, let him attain the age of hundred years; extend his life. Bṛahaspati has given the garment to king Soma that he may put it on[58]." Again, while leading the boy to spiritual ends of life by seizing his right hand together with the thumb, the teacher addresses all important gods including Bṛhaspati who is requested to seize the right hand of the boy so that he may ever tread on the path of right conduct in life[59].

The conception about Bṛhaspati as the guru of gods is evident when the teacher instructs the boy with the important duties of student life[60]. And while laying his hands with fingers upwards on the student's heart, he utters, "Under my will I take thy heart; my mind shall thy mind follow; in my word thou shalt rejoice with all thy heart; may Bṛhaspati join thee to me[61]." It is significant to be noted here that the teacher announces here his duty to instruct

[57] 2. 24. 3. 14.

[58] *Hir*,., 1. 1. 4. 2.; *Pār*. 1. 4. 13. 12.

[59] *Hir*., 1. 2. 5. 10., *Sāṅkh*., 2. 3. 1.

[60] *Hir*., 1. 2. 5. 10.

[61] *Sāṅkh*., 2. 4. 1.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

only after understanding the mind of the child and make him happy by his lessons full of affection and amusement so that the matter taught may go home to the pupil's heart. Peculiarly enough such a view in education is the pivot on which the entire structure of present-day education built by the great educational theorists as Rousseau, Pestalozzi, Herbart, Dewey and others, rests. So Bṛhaspati was the distinguished intellectual inspirer to all those people of that age who had devoted themselves in the service of education. Such a belief about Bṛhaspati as a sublime moral elevator hints at the following mantra of the *Ṛgveda* which shows that the worshipers of Bṛhaspati attained great moral superiority over their fellows :—"The godly shall subdue the godless, the worshipper shall share the meal of one who worships not[62]."

Bṛhaspati, as viewed in the *Ṛgveda* is a 'leader of riches' possesser of wealth, increaser of store[63], a good protector and a kind prosperer[64]. Keeping this in view the following mantra of the *Atharvaveda* is generally quoted for success and prosperity in trade. The mantra has an invocation to Bṛhaspati as well : "If we trade, Oh gods, may Soma, Agni, Indra, Bṛhaspati and Īśāna bestow splendour[65]."

Bṛhāspati has also been represented as the lord of cattle and the preparer of paths[66]. He was the famous rescuer of cows from the hands of Vāla[67]. The idea is carried forward in the *Gṛhya-sūtras* when the cows leave for the meadows, "May Indra and Agni make you go. May the two Aśvins protect you, Bṛhaspati is your herdsman[68]. As the god is helpful in removing difficulties and capable of prolonging

---

[62] 2. 26. 1. [63] 1. 18. 2. [64] 2. 23. 5.
[65] *Gobh.*, 4. 8. 19.; *Hir.*, 1. 4. 15. 1.; *Atharvaveda.*, 3. 15. 5.
[66] *Ṛg.-veda.*, 10. 67-8.; 2. 23. 6.
[67] *Ṛg.*, 2. 24. 3. 14.
[68] *Hir.*, 1. 5. 18. 1.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

life and granting other rewards[69] so in the marriage ceremony he is invoked to bless the wife with the protection of her sons[70]. And the cut-off hair in the tonsure is kept under the custody of Bṛhaspati.

Soma

Soma, "the lord of the strengthening food" who is pictured in the Vedas as swimming in water and roaring in the woods, dear to devas and father of the earth and heaven[71] is an important god of the *Gṛhya-sūtras* also, because no daily offering could be made without an oblation of a mess of cooked rice to him. The *Ṛg-veda* also designates him as the soul of the sacrifice—ātmā yajñasya[72].

As in the *Ṛgveda*, here also Soma is called the king of beings and is prayed wherever splendour, stability and glory is wished for. Thus at the opening ceremony of the annual term of Vedic study along with the chorus of Sāvitrī and its sāman melodies "King Soma" is invoked[73]. In the Puṁsavana on the occasion of purchasing the Nyagrodha shoot Soma is addressed, "If thou belongest to Soma I buy thee for Soma[74]." At the Śrāvaṇā ceremony, to the north of fire a bunch of darbha grass with roots is placed and Soma is addressed, "Soma the king and the agreement which you have made."[75]

The snātaka besprinkles the pair of new garments brought to him and puts on the under-garment saying, "Thou art Soma's body, protect my body." Similarly[76], Soma is never left out when success in trade is wished for[77]. Soma, on occasions, is represented to have many wives. In daily sacrifice the worshipper prays him to grant many

---

[69] Ṛg. 7. 97. 2. 4.
[70] *Sāṅkh.*, 1. 11. 5.; *Hir.*, 1. 6. 19. 7.
[71] Ṛg., 9. 90. 1.
[72] 9. 2. 10; 6. 8.
[73] *Gobh.*, 3. 3. 4.
[74] *Gobh.*, 2. 6. 7.
[75] *Gobh.*, 3. 7. 21.
[76] *Hir.*, 1. 3. 10. 5.
[77] *Hir.*, 1. 4. 15. 1.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

wives. "Soma is rich in wives, may he make me rich in wives[78]." As Soma had many wives, an invocation to him was necessary in the marriage ceremony, in order to have conjugal felicity. It was a belief that he was the first to have the wife, as is clear from the following mantra, "Soma acquired thee first, after that Gandharva has acquired."[79] Keeping in accord with this conclusion is the charm set by the wife to bring the husband into subjection when the wife in the *Āpastamba Gṛhya-sūtra*[80] while sowing barley grains around the plant, clypea hemerdifolia, utters the following mantra, "If you belong to Soma, I redeem you from him." But Soma is never to be forgotten when the Fathers are to be satiated. He is a friend to the Manes. After the rites up to the Vyāhṛti oblations are completed, the worshipper with sacrificial chord over the left shoulder, transfers it over the right and sacrifices, "To Soma, with fathers, Svadhā[81]."

In the house building ceremony Soma is addressed as Indu and is prayed for wealth in cows and horses and a residence free from decay. "O Indu, Make our wealth increase in cows and horses. Free from decay may we live in thy friendship, give us thy favour as a father to his son[82]."

Thus, Soma is one of the major gods of the *Gṛhya-sūtras* and represents the source of splendour, strength, stability and conjugal well-being.

Savitṛ

The author of the *Nirukta* calls this god as ""सविता सर्वस्य प्रसविता।"" Savitṛ is the stimulator of all[83]. Savitṛ, the golden god of the Vedas, has an important part to play in the *Gṛhyasūtras*. As the very name suggests he is to be called

[78] *Sāṅkh.*, 1. 9. 9. [79] *Hir.*, 1. 6. 20. 2. [80] 3. 9. 5.
[81] *Hir.*, 2. 4. 10. 7.; *Sāṅkh*, 3, 13. 5.
[82] *Hir.*, 1.8. 28. 1. [83] *Nir.*, 10. 31.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

"stimulator" and is believed to be the most impulsive of all the gods. Just like Agni he is deemed to be full of splendour and a prayer to him means the gift of divine effulgence and stimulation for the attainment of both heavenly and material ends.

Thus, in the daily sacrifice, after wood is placed on the sacred fire, and the ground around is swept, the worshipper bends down his right knee and pours out to the south of the fire his handful of water with the words, "Aditi, give thy consent." Then he sprinkles water around the fire once or twice so as to keep his right side turned towards it, with the words, "God Savitṛ, give thy impluse[84]." Again, in the Upanayana the teacher seizes the right hand of the boy with the mantra, "by the impulse of god Savitṛ, I seize thy hand." And then having touched from behind his left hand the left shoulder of the boy, "I give thee in charge of god Savitṛ"; because it is Savitṛ alone who could train the boy on the ways of right conduct and bestow him adequate energy and stimulation to gain moral and intellectual ends[85].

As Savitṛ is capable of granting stimulus to studies, at the three nights after Upanayana, a mess of boiled rice grains is offered to Savitṛ; so that the god may inspire and the pupil may apply all his mind to his vedic studies, that are soon to follow.

The day sacred to Savitṛ is under the Hasta constellation. On this day the annual term of vedic study is commenced with appropriate rites. Again, while being engaged in vedic study if the mind of the boy is distracted by some disturbing dream, Savitṛ is invoked so that the diversion from the sacred study may be removed and usual attention may be restored[86]. In the *Hiraṇyakesin Gṛhya-sūtra* the teacher causes the boy to say, "I have come here

[84] *Gobh.*, 1. 3. 4. [85] *Gobh.*, 2. 10. 32.
[86] *Gobh.*, 3. 3. 32.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

to be a student, initiate me. I will be a student impelled by god Savitṛ." Again, the teacher while accepting the name of the pupil says," Happily god Savitṛ, may I obtain the goal with this Matṛdatta". Thus Savitṛ is a stimulator and giver of energy both to the teacher and the taught to reach their respective ends[87]. Then the teacher seizing the right hand of the boy says, " Savitṛ has seized thy hand, may Savitṛ protect thee."

Thus, the attainment of educational end is the important feature of Savitṛ worship but some *Gṛhya-sūtras* prescribe invocation for him at the time of marriage also in order to bless the sons with protection.

Then, Savitṛ is one of the important gods to be invoked at the time of tonsure ceremony. Here the razor cannot stop until Savitṛ has not blessed for glory and vigour so that the future may be brightened by divine splendour as a result of tonsure. The hind portion of the head is shaved with the mantra, "The razor with which the wise Savitṛ has shaven the king Soma and Varuṇa with that ye brāhmaṇas shave his head[88]."

The prayer for stimulation at the aṣṭakā ceremony is also noteworthy. On the day before the Aṣṭakas under the Anurādhās in the afternoon the wood is put on fire and darbha grass pointing to the south and east are strewn round it. Then rice is turned out of for shallow cups each having a purifier. On that occasion the following mantra is uttered forth "Impelled by god Savitṛ I turn out this cake prepared, out of four cups which may drive away all suffering from the fathers, in the other world. On the impulse of god Savitṛ I turn thee out agreeable to the fathers, to the grand-fathers, to the great-grand-fathers[89]." The invocation of Savitṛ particularly on the

[87] *Hir.*, 1. 2. 5. 6.

[88] *Hir.*, 2. 1. 6. 11.

[89] *Hir.*, 2. 5. 3.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

occasion of offering to the manes is well in accord with the vedic belief about him that he "conveyed the dead to the the abode of righteousness[90]."

SŪRYA

Sūrya according to the *Nirukta*[91], is derived from सृ, to move, or from सू to stimulate, or from स्वीर to promote well.

Sūrya, the physical sun, has been said to reveal the the glory of the gods and specially that of Agni[92]. So in the Gṛhya-sūtras he is the important god deemed fit to be invoked whenever splendour and glory are the objectives. In the *Ṛg-veda* Sūrya has been called the eye of the gods[93]. so in the Gṛhya-sūtras he has been represented as a witness to the human acts as Agni does.

The worshipper in the *Gobhila Gṛhya-sūtra* adores Sūrya at the Samāvartana ceremony for the sake of glory and splendour with the words, "The eye art thou etc[94]."

As Sūrya was the emblem of splendour, it was deemed to be sin to keep sleeping after it had risen or when it was on the point of setting. So the *Āśvālayana Gṛhya-sūtra* lays down that if the sun sets while a student was sleeping without being ill, he should spend the whole of the night without speaking to any one and should adore the Sun when it rises next morning with the verse, "O light, O Sūrya, by which thou destroyest darkness." Again if the sun rises if he is sleeping without being sick or being fatigued, due to laziness or having done some improper work, he should keep silence and perform his worship to the sun with Ṛgvedic verse[95].

Before beginning the instruction of the Vedas, it was but necessary for the preceptor to gain necessary splen-

[90] Ṛg., 4. 53. 4.; 2. 38. 2. [91] 12. 14. [92] Ṛg., 1. 115. 1.
[93] 7. 77. 3. [94] 3. 4. 21.
[95] *Ṛg-veda*, 10. 37. 9.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

dour and energy. So on such an occasion the teacher performed the worship of the Sun saying, "On me Sūrya bestow insight, on me offspring, on me radiance[86]."

While laying down the sacrifices for the attainment of special desires, *Gobhila*[97] declares that one who is desirous of enjoyment of riches, should worship Sūrya within the sight of that person from whom he wants to have wealth. If he desires to get his horses multiplied, he should sacrifice fried grains while the Sun has a halo. If he wants a safe return home, the fifth verse[98] should be repeated. The fourth verse of this series was believed to be specially pleasing to the Sun God for the procurement of wealth. In the same context *Gobhila* also holds that for the sake of gold and riches the Sun is the premier god to be invoked[99]. The worshipper of Sūrya was granted happiness and general weal. Gobhila clearly states that one who is desirous of glory specially worships the Sun in the forenoon, at noon, and in the afternoon. Worshipping the Sun at the time of morning twilight and evening twilight as believed by Gobhila was a source of happiness.

The Aśwattha was the tree deemed sacred to Sūrya and it is mentioned during the house-building ceremony that a house built of it brings danger of fire[100].

Like Agni, the Sun has often been called the lord of vows and in such rituals where the preservation of vows was the objective, Sun has often been invoked with Agni and Vāyu. The student while offering the optional gift to his guru, prays, to Sūrya, "Āditya, lord of the vow, I shall keep my vow[101]". The teacher makes him rise with the words, "Sūrya, this is thy son. I put him in your charge." Then the guru worships the Sun with the following mantra, "That bright eye created by the gods which

[96] *Āśv.* 1. 21. 4. [97] 4. 5. [98] *M. B.*, 2. 4. 9. 13.
[99] *Gobh.*, 4. 5. 30. [100] 4. 7. 23.
[101] *Hir.*, 1. 2. 7. 10.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

rises in the east, may we see it a hundred autumns..... May we long see the Sun[102]."

Sūrya, as the dispeller of all evils, is again remembered at the Śrāvaṇā ceremony along with Agni, Viṣṇu, Vāyu, and other important gods with the words, "Adoration to the Sūrya and the red one, the lord of celestial beings[103]".

The remarkable thing to be noted about this god is that in the *Gṛhya-sūtras* his portraiture has not been so concrete as that of Agni or Indra or even Rudra, because his physical qualities are not so much stressed.

VĀYU

"Vāyu", says the *Nirukta*, "is the foremost deity of the middle region. Vāyu is derived from वा, to blow, or वी to move, Sthaulaṣṭhīvi derives from इ to go, the letter व being meaningless[104]".

Vāyu, the famous protector of Soma[105], who took an active part in the drinking of its juice[106], is the presiding deity of the air according to the Gṛhyasūtras and as he had once distinguished himself in the protection of the Soma, he is believed to be a befitting escort to the food offered to the Manes. So the following mantra in the śraddha ceremony, "The air is steady, Vāyu is its surveyor, in order that what has been given may not be lost[107]."

Just like Agni he has been deemed to be a witness to human action along with the Moon and the Sun. Thus on the fourth day ceremony in connection with marriage, Vāyu is invoked along with Candra and Sūrya. Also in the Upanayana ceremony while giving optional gift to the teacher the student, after praying to Agni to be a witness to his vows, invokes Vāyu also in the following words, "Vāyu, lord of the vow, I shall keep my vow[108]".

---

[102] *Par.*, 1. 8. 7.; 1. 6. 3.; *Hir.*, 1. 2. 7. 13. [103] *Hir.*, 2. 6. 16. 4.
[104] *Nir.*, 10. 1. [105] *Ṛg.*, 10. 85. 5. [106] *Ṛg.*, 4. 48.
[107] *Hir.*, 2. 4. 11. 4. [108] *Hir.*, 1. 2. 7. 9.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

In the *Ṛg-veda* Vāyu has been said to be a deity who disperses foes[109], who protects the weak[110], who possesses healing powers, and is capable of prolonging life. So the fittest occasions to invoke him in the Gṛhya-sūtras are the saṁskāras. On the tonsure ceremony when the warm water meant for shaving is made ready in a brazen vessel, Vāyu is meditated upon and the following mantra is uttered, "O Vāyu, come hither.[111]" In the marriage ceremony when the bride puts on the new garment, Vāyu is invoked to protect her thighs. This is not only because Vāyu is a protector of the weak but it is also a prayer to grant the woman adequate physical strength to accomplish the most strenuous duties of the house-hold. Such a capacity could only be bestowed by a god as Vāyu who ever wanders and never takes rest[112].

As Vāyu in the *Ṛg-veda*[113] has been praised as a disperser of foes, so in the Śrāvaṇā ceremony he is invoked for the sake of removing the serpents and other evil beings. Here he has been designated as, 'all pervading' and 'lord of the aerial beings'[114].

Pṛthvī

The conception of mother earth and father sky is very ancient in the religious history of many nations. In the *Ṛg-veda* both of them have been regarded as one of the most powerful means of protection from fear and danger[115]. The same idea seems to be in view when in Upanayana the teacher places the boy in charge of the heaven and the earth[116].

Earth has particularly been deemed to protect sons. She has been called the source of immortality and the giver

---

[109] 4. 48. 2. [110] 1. 134. 5.
[111] *Āśv.* 1. 17. 6.; *Pār.*, 2. 1. 6.; *Gobh.*, 2. 9. 11.
[112] *Ṛg.*, 10. 168. 1-3. [113] 4. 48. 2. [114] *Hir.*, 2. 6. 16. 4.
[115] 1. 185. [116] *Hir.*, 1. 2. 6. 5.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of all good. At the childbirth, the child is fumigated with small grains mixed with mustard seed. On such an occasion various gods are invoked to bless the newborn. In this context almost all the *Gṛhya-sūtras* prescribe an adoration to earth by the father who having washed his hands, touches the ground and prays to the earth, "O thou, whose hair is well parted! Thy heart that dwells in the heaven—in the moon, thus I, being the lord of immortality, may not weep over the disress through my sons." After this when the child is bathed with lukewarm water, both the heaven and the earth are prayed together to be kind to the boy along with all the herbs because the earth abounds in valuable medicinal herbs that may bring health to the babe[117].

Earth has been thought to be the mother of entire living creatures including even those lying inside it. So at the Śrāvaṇā ceremony and its concluding part the Agrahāyaṇī ceremony, the west of the fire is touched pointing to the earth with the Mantra, "Adoration to the Earth." "Be soft to us, O Earth, free from thorns, grant us rest afford us wide shelter."

Maruts

According to the *Nirukta* Marutaḥ are of measured sound मितराविणो, or of measured splendour (मितरोचनो) or they run very much[118]. The heroic Maruts of the *Ṛgveda* are rarely remembered in the *Gṛhya-sūtras*. The *Gobhila Gṛhya-sūtra* while quoting invocation to the Sun in the Samāvartana ceremony after the close of the vedic study, refers to Maruts as having shining spears and appearing in the firmament along with the Sun. In the same *Gṛhya-sūtra* when the nyagrodha is bought at the Puṁsavana ceremony, the Maruts are also remembered along with other gods. Gobhila has also an invocation for the Maruts when

[117] *Pār.*, 1. 6. 17.; *Hir.*, 2. 1. 3. 8-10. [118] *Nir.*, 11. 14.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the plough is set into motion. In the *Hiraṇyakesin Gṛhya-sūtra* there is an invocation for the Maruts when the student sets out to beg alms. So the physical qualities of the Maruts and their capacity to lend a helping hand in need are the essentials of *Gṛhya-sūtra* conception of the Maruts.

The Maruts, in the *Gṛhya-sūtra*, are remembered at the time of setting the plough into motion because in the *Ṛgveda* they are represented as the associates of Indra and holding lightning along with rain in their hands. It is one of their important duties to shed rains[119].

Their invocation in the Puṁsavana and the Upanayana ceremonies hints at their Ṛgvedic conception as gods granting long life for over a hundred winters[120]. The same lies at the root of their being invoked at the Samāvartana ceremony as well.

Mitra

Mitra, in the *Ṛgveda* has few personal traits and is often invoked with Varuṇa; but in the *Gṛhya-sūtras* we trace individual invocations for him as a god granting splendour, chastity and power. In the Upanayana ceremony the teacher arranges the antelope skin as an outer garment with the mantra "The firm strong eye of Mitra, glorious splendour powerful and flaming, a chaste mobile vesture, this skin put on a valiant man." The mantra also indicates that Mitra is a form of Sun-god[121]. Mitra often shares the attributes of Varuṇa though he is often invoked apart from him. In the Upanayana when the teacher seizes the right hand of the boy, he says, "Mitra has seized thy hand," and after that, "Varuṇa has seized thy hand." It shows that all

---

[119] *Ṛg.*, 5. 54. 2. 3. 11; 1. 64. 5. and 8. 7. 25.; 5. 34. 11.; 1.64 6. and 5. 53. 6. 10; 59. 8.

[120] *Ṛg.* 5. 54. 75.

[121] *Hir.*, 1. 1. 4. 6.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

perceiving qualities and the great physical strength of Varuṇa are attributed to Mitra also.

Sāṅkhāyana has an invocation to Varuṇa just after Mitra in the marriage ceremony when the bride puts on the newly dyed garment and sits behind the fire. It means that though the gods are not invoked together, yet they are thought together and Mitra is a close associate of Varuṇa sharing his important attributes. But at the same time a tendency to treat these two gods apart was also coming forth.

Bhaga

Bhaga is very sparingly addressed in the *Gṛhya-sūtra*. Gobhila has prescribed oblations to him while setting the plough into motion[122]. And in the marriage ceremony the *Hiraṇyakesin Gṛhya-sūtra* prescribes invocation to Bhaga along with Aryamana, Purandhī and Savitṛ; while Sāṅkhāyana has an adoration to him when the bride puts on the newly dyed garment.

So Bhaga, the Sun god of the *Ṛgveda* and *Nirukta*[123] is only a minor deity of the Gṛhya-sūtras, prayed for agricultural well-being for the good of the offspring and the family circle. His time is previous to Sun-rise before Savitā[124].

Mahārāga

Mahārāga is very rarely invoked and the Vedas seem to make no reference to him. Gobhila has prescribed an invocation to him at the time of house-building. As a bali is offered to him in the northern direction, he seems to be a form of Śiva for whom Sāṅkhāyana and Āśvalāyana give good many number of synonyms in the animal sacrifice.[125]

---

[122] 2. 4. 28.
[123] 12. 13.
[124] *Nir.*, 12. 6.
[125] *Āśv.* 4. 8. 19.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Kāma

Kāma has been addressed in the *Gobhila-Gṛhya-sūtra*[126] while the bride is besprinkled with surā, "Kāma, I know thy name. Intoxication art thou by name". So kāma is nothing but the god of love prayed at the time of marriage in order to generate love and attraction towards the husband unknown to the bride.

Āryaman

Āryaman, according to the *Nirukta*, is the Sun, having many chariots, and with his path unimpeded, chastises the enemy. His seven rays suck juices for him or the seven sages draw divine effulgence from him[127].

Āryaman is one of the twelve Ādityas mentioned in the *Ṛgveda*. As his name is found in the Avesta so there is every possibility of this name being Indo-Iranian. As his very name suggests the idea of comradeship, he is adored mostly in connection with the marriage ceremony. Gobhila adores this deity on the occasion of the sacrifice of fried grain in the marriage ceremony. Hiraṇyakesin has prescribed an invocation to Aryaman when the bridegroom seizes the hand of the bride. Sāṅkhāyana has a prayer for him at the fourth day ceremony after marriage.

So Āryaman is the source of conjugal grace and everlasting friendship and love.

Aditi

According to the *Ṛgveda*[128] Aditi is the guardian of noble wealth, giver of perfect innocence, and blessed strength, food and offspring.

Aditi, the mother of the Sun god is the first deity whose permission is sought while commencing the daily oblations in the *Gobhila-Gṛhya-sūtra*[129]. She is the maker of spiritual

---

[126] 2. 1. 10.

[127] *Ṛg.*, X. 64. 5.; *Nir.*, 11. 23.

[128] 1. 34. 5.

[129] *Nir.*, 11. 24.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

garment for her great son so she is prayed by Hiraṇyakesin on the occasion of putting on the new garment by the boy in the Upanayana ceremony with the following mantra, "May Aditi tuck up the garment so that you may study Veda for the sake of insight and belief and forgetting what thou hast learnt, for the sake of holiness and holy lustre.

Hiraṇyakesin has an adoration for Aditi in the Annaprāśana ceremony where Aditi is prayed to proptect the boy like a mother. So Aditi is the source of protection, holy lustre and greatness as depicted in the Gṛhya-sūtras.

Anumati

The *Nirukta* explains this deity as "अनुमतिस्तु मननात्" on account of approving.

Hiraṇyakeśin prays this deity for consent in the daily offering and also adores it at the time of marriage and Upanayana. Anumati seems to be an invention of the Sūtra-Age as *Ṛgveda* makes no mention of it. It is prayed for auspicious means as Gaṇeśa in the later days.

Indrāṇī

She is the spouse of Indra as represented in the *Ṛgveda*. In 10-86-11-12. of the *Ṛgveda*, she has been shown as conversing with Indra, her husband. Gobhila pays adoration to her for the sake of agricultural welfare as her husband is the lord of rains[130]. Sāṅkhāyana has a prayer for Indrāṇī along with Indra in the marriage ceremony when the bride puts on the newly dyed garment.

Rākā

Rākā is the goddess of the full moon night and is adorded to dispel the demons and other evil beings of the night. Hiraṇyakesin has prescribed an adoration for her in the Sīmantonnayana ceremony where she is called to be full of grace and the *Gobhila-gṛhya-sūtra* lays down a worship

[130] 1. 3. 1.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

for her in the Āgrahāyaṇī ceremony at the meeting of roads where an offering of fried grain is made to her.

She has the power to protect the embryo as Viṣṇu has because Sāṅkhāyana prescribes a prayer to her in the Sīmantonnayana where she is adored with Viṣṇu to take care of the womb. The etymologists have called Rākā and Anumati as the wives of gods, "अनुमति : राका इति देवपत्न्यौ"[131]

Sarasvatī

In the *Ṛgveda*[132] as explained in the *Nirukta*,[133] Sarasvatī presides over all sacrifices and with her great wisdom she makes the great ocean (of knowledge) manifest.

Sarasvatī, primarily the deified river, becomes the goddess of intelligence and learning perhaps because she had been the source of much inspiration to the Āryans who composed their beautiful hymns residing by her bank. Hiraṇyakesin prescribes her consent on the occasion of daily sacrifice and when the teacher seizes the right hand of the boy in the Upanayana ceremony, "Sarasvatī has seized thy hand", is uttered. Hiraṇyakesin[134] again, prays to her for intelligence to the boy along with Indra and Aśvins, when the teacher approaches the mouth of the boy in the Upanayana ceremony. Again, before beginning the actual study of the Vedas, the teacher blesses the pupil with the words, "May Indra give insight. May Sarasvatī give insight."

In the marriage ceremony when the bridegroom seizes the thumb of bride, Sarasvatī is invoked. "Sarasvatī, promote this (our undertaking), O gracious one, rich in studs, thou whom we sing first of all that is."[135] This is merely to give proper mental power and intelligence to both the bride and bridegroom.

---

[131] *Gobh.*, 4. 4. 32.
[132] *Nir.*, 11. 29. 2.
[133] 1. 1. 6.4.
[134] 11. 26.
[135] 1.2.6.4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

But Sarasvatī is prayed even at the very start of life at the Garbhādhāna to give conception[136] and Sāṅkhāyana prescribes adoration to her in the Nāmakaraṇa, where she is addressesed as the goddess of speech and the father speaks in the right ear of the boy, "Speech, the goddess, united with mind, together with breath ....may she rejoice in the goddess, the great one, the sweet sounding, the music, the full of music, the flowing self produced, for the sake of joy."[137] From this follows the later picture of Sarasvatī as playing on vīṇā and full of sweet speech.

GAṄGĀ

The name of Gaṅgā comes only at the end of the Ṛgvedic period in 10.75 of the *Ṛgveda* because the Āryans reached as far as the Gaṅgā late after residing for a very long time in the Punjab. Among the Gṛhya-sūtras only the *Hiraṇyakesin-Gṛhya-sūtra* refers to this river at the time of Sīmantonnayana when the husband holding the porcupine quill etc. parts the hair of the wife with the words, "Soma alone is our king, thus says the Brāhmaṇa tribe, sitting near thy banks, O Gaṅgā, whose flow does not roll back, may we find our way with thee through all hostile powers, as through streams of water".[138] It only shows that Gaṅgā in this context has been invoked to grant strength to the embryo to face the attack of all evil beings most successfully because the state of pregnancy in a woman was believed to be beset with the danger of demons and other evil beings. The mantra also is the inspiration that the Āryans used to draw from the powerful current of the Gaṅga.

Waters in general are very often invoked because they had a deep impression on the minds of the Āryans who had a long and close acquaintance with them. Thus the *Hiraṇyakesin Gṛhya-sutra* has an invocation for the

[136] *Hir.*, 1. 7. 25. 1.
[137] *Sāṅkh.*. 1. 24. 10.
[138] *Hir.*, 2. 1. 1. 3.

Ganganatha Jha Research Institute Allahabad 1943

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

waters along with Agni at the Jātakarman ceremony when the newly born babe is bathed with lukewarm water. The father after washing the left breast of the mother places a covered water pot at her head and prays to the waters, "O Waters watch in this house. As you watch with the gods, so watch this wife, the mother of the good son." As the waters served as physical barriers against the enemies to the Āryans, so they were believed to have the power to protect.

Parjanya

According to the *Nirukta* Parjanya is one who gives satisfaction and is favourable to men.[139]

Parjanya, as represented in the *Ṛgveda*, is the personification of the rain cloud and he is the god who is responsible for the actual rainfall[140]. In the age of the *Gṛhya-sūtras* he was seen in the same light and was deemed to be an important agricultural god. The *Gobhila-Gṛhya-sūtra* has an invocation for him on the occasion of setting the plough into motion.

Vāstoṣpati

"Vāstoṣpati" says the *Nirukta* is the protector and supporter of the dwelling.

The conception of Vāstoṣpati in the *Gṛhya-sūtras* is in due accord with the Ṛgvedic view about the guardians watching over the welfare of the house and of the field. Thus Vāstoṣpati is the lord of the dwelling. The chief occasion of his worship is the House-building ceremony or the ceremony concerning the entering of a newly built abode. The household prosperity is the chief aim in worshipping him.

Pāraskara-Gṛhya-sūtra has an elaborate worship of Vāstoṣpati at the said occasion. Having established fire

[139] *Nir.*, 10. 10.

[140] 5. 83.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

inside the house, having made the Brāhamaṇa sit at the south of the *vēdi* and having placed the water pot at the north, and having cooked a mess of sacrificial food, the house-holder stands at the door of the newly built house and asks the permission of the Brāhmaṇa to enter the house. Having done so, he prepares the *ājya* oblation and addressing Vāstoṣpati as 'joy' he offers oblations with the following mantra of the *Ṛgveda*[141] "Vāstoṣpati, receive us in thy protection. Give us good residence and drive away the evils. We ask thee for that favour. Be a saviour to us, to men and animals." "Vāstoṣpati, be our father, make our wealth increase in cows and horses." "Vāstoṣpati be in fellowship with us, which may be valliant, joyful and all proceeding. Protect our wishes when we rest and when we do our work. Protect us always". "Driving away calamity, Vāstoṣpati, assuming all shapes, be a kind friend to us".[142]

As Vāstoṣpati is the dispeller of all calamities of the household, he cannot be forgotten at the time of the Agrahāyaṇī ceremony which is performed at the conclusion of the serpent worship. On such an occasion Gobhila prescribes a water barrel to be placed on a solid stone and then the worship of Vāstoṣpati[143] is performed.

Kṣetrapati

According to the *Nirukta*[144] क्षेत्रपति is the protector and supporter of the house क्षेत्रस्य पतिः क्षेत्रं निवासकर्मणस्तस्य पाता पालयिता वा"।

Kṣetrapati is the lord of the field and is believed to grant well being to the cattle and the crop. For the prosperity of the cows a mess of sacrificial food with milk sacred to Kṣetrapati is cooked and the sacrifice is performed at a place where the cows move. The ceremony is gone through without fire, on four or seven leaves. It was a

---

[141] 7-54 & 55.
[142] *Pār.*, 3. 4. 7.; *Hir.*, 1. 8. 28. 1.
[143] 3. 9. 6.
[144] 10. 14.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

belief that the god had a sharp appetite and as such, it is ordained that the sacrifice must be executed with all haste. The remainder of the food is shared by the blood relations.[145]

Sītā

Sītā is the deity of the furrow. Pāraskara has prescribed a special sacrifice for her in the field on a clean spot that has been ploughed, so that the crop may not be damaged. The person who had once performed this sacrifice had the option to perform it even in his village. The intention of the sacrifice is to gain protection of the animals and to make the land fertile so that a bumper crop may enrich the fields. Sītā has been said to be the wife of Indra and so is deemed to bring rain, eminence and luck like her husband. In the sacrifice to Sītā a mess of cooked food of rice and barley and *ājya* oblations are offered to her with the following Mantra that gives a vivid idea of this deity. The first oblation naturally goes to Indra, her husband and then follows offerings to her with the mantra, "In whose substance dwells the prosperity of all Vedic and worldly works, Indra's wife, Sītā, I invoke. May she not abandon me in whatever work I do. Svāhā. Her who rich in horses, rich in cows, rich in delight, who inexhaustibly supports the beings, Urvarā, who is wreathed with threshing floors, I invoke at this sacrifice, the firm one. May she not abandon me."[146]

Yama

According to the *Nirukta* Yama is so designated because he dominates उपरमयति-यच्छति.[147]

Yama, the ruler of the dead[148] living in the highest heaven[149], is very rarely mentioned in the *Gṛhya-sūtras*. Hiraṇyakesin has an adoration for him on the occasion of

---

[145] *Āps.*, 7. 20. 13.; *Hir.*, 2. 3. 9. [146] *Pār.*, 2. 17. 9.
[147] *Nir.*, 10. 19. [148] *Ṛg.*, 10. 14. 9. [149] *Ṛg.*, 10. 14. 8.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

entering a newly built house. After prayers to Vāstoṣpati and Soma, for the sake of cattle and wealth, the worshipper proceeds to invoke Yama to avert the danger of death to the inmates, of the household. "May death go away; May immortality come to us. May Vivaśwat's son (Yama) protect us from danger."[150] Again, in order that premature death may not occur, Yama is made the guardian of the student in the Upanayana ceremony of the *Hiraṇyakesin-Gṛhya-sūtra* with the words, "I give thee in charge of Yama."[151]

These are the gods of the *Gṛhya-sūtras* that are often invoked with emphasis in the various gṛhya ceremonies. In addition to these there are certain minor gods that are sometimes addressed in different rituals. *Sinīvālī*:—She is prayed in the *Hiraṇyakesin-Gṛhya-sūtra* at the time of Garbhādhāna to grant conception along with Viṣṇu and Sarasvatī.[152] *Ṛgveda*[153] represents her as a graceful goddess with fine hair. The author calls Sinīvālī to be moon-less night.[154]

Vasus

The eight Vasus as declared by the *Śatapatha-Brāhmaṇa*[155] indicate merely an order of gods form whom other gods came forth. They have been the objects of special invocations on certain occasions in certain Gṛhyasūtras. Their power in the *Gṛhya-sūtras* is akin to that of Varuṇa or Rudra. They are deemed to be gods capable of bestowing protection from the evil beings, and granting the birth of a male child as gods like Soma, Indra, Varuṇa or Agni do. So the *Gobhila-Gṛhyasūtra* invokes him at the hour of buying the Nyagrodha shoot in the Puṁsavana ceremony with the words, "If thou belongest to Vasus, I buy thee for Vasus.[156]" Their invocation along with the Sun before

---

[150] *Nir.*, 1. 8. 28. 1. [151] *Hir.*. 1. 2. 6. 5.
[152] *Hir.*, 1. 7. 25. 1. [153] 1. 173. 6.
[154] *Nir.*, 11. 31. [155] 7. 5. 7. 2. [156] *Gobh.*, 2. 6. 7.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the student sets out for begging alms[157] for the sake of long life, indicates that the Vasus were ranked with Agni or Indra in their capability of granting longevity. The *Hiraṇyakeśin Gṛhya-sūtra* again prescribes invocation to them at the time when the student wipes the ground from left to right before actually commencing his daily sacrifice. The invocation indicates their great power to liberate from difficulties and the student in this prayer for them means to request them to help him in his difficulties, if he has any.[158]

Vāsukī

Vāsukī, perhaps the lord of the serpents, is adored by the *Gobhila Gṛhya-sutra* on the occasion of house building. On this occasion a *bali* is offered to him along with other gods upwards in the sky. The significance of his adoration at this ceremony is to keep the house secure from danger from the serpents[159].

Viśvedevāḥ

The Viśvedevāḥ have been invoked both by Gobhila and Sāṅkhāyana on the occasion of marriage keeping in view their invocation in the Ṛgvedic marriage hymn, for the sake of uniting the hearts of the couple. In the *Gobhila Gṛhya-sūtra* the water carrier stands behind the bridegroom and sprinkles water over him who utters the following mantra, "May the Viśvedevās unite."[160] Sāṅkhāyana uses the same mantra when the bride is anointed.[161]

Viśvedevās, like all other gods, have been prayed for protection, help and material prosperity. Gobhila again, remembers them in the Puṁsavana ceremony when the nyagrodha shoot is bought and Hiraṅyakeśin has an adoration for him at the Upanayana when the teacher gives the pupil in charge of the gods. Gobhila also holds that

[157] *Hir.* 1. 2. 7. 14.
[158] *Hir.*, 1. 2. 8. 3.
[159] *Gobh.*, 4. 7. 41.
[160] 2. 2. 15.
[161] 1. 12. 5.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Aṣṭakā, a festival held for the sake of prosperity, was sacred to the Viśvedevās also.[162]

Tvaṣṭṛ

Tvaṣṭṛ is so named as it pervades quickly. It may be derived from त्विष् to shine or त्वक्ष् to do.[163]

Tvaṣṭṛ, the famous maker of Indra's thunderbolt, has been invoked by the *Hiraṇyakesin Gṛhya-sūtra* at the Upanayana ceremony when the teacher seizes the right hand of the boy with the words, "Tvaṣṭṛ has seized thy hand." Sāṅkhāyana has laid down an invocation for him in the marriage ceremony when the bride takes hold of the bridgroom who offers *Ājya* oblations to him along with other gods.

In the *Ṛgveda*[164] there is a colloquy between Indra and Varuṇa in which Varuṇa while praising himself says that it was he who fashinoned the two halves of the regions and knew all the beings as Tvaṣṭṛ did. The reference shows that Tvaṣṭṛ has been deemed in the *Ṛgveda* as a deity gifted with wonderful power to build and keep in mind all that it built or made. In short it was possessed with the great omnicient qualities of Varuṇa, Sūrya or Vāyu. Such a view lies at the Gṛhya-sūtra conception of this god in propitiating him in the Upanayana and marriage ceremonies.

Other Gods

In addition to the above is a host of divine beings addressed by the Gṛhya-sūtras. As their reference is very rare and no definite idea has been laid down for them, they are being summarily dealt with.

Dhātṛī :—Dhātrī has been prayed for the support of the lives of kinsmen in the funeral hymn of the *Ṛgveda*[165] The same idea is carried forth when in the *Hiraṇyakesin*

[162] 3. 10. 3.
[163] *Nir.*, 8. 13.
[164] 4. 42.
[165] 10. 18. 5.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Gṛhya-sūtra the deity is invoked in the Upanayana and the Jātakarman ceremonies. In the Upanayana ceremony the teacher remembers Dhātrī when he seizes the right hand of the boy with the following words, "Dhātrī has seized thy hand."[166] In the Jātakarman, after the Aupāsanā fire is brought and after rites upto the Vyāhṛti oblations are performed, twelve oblations are sacrificed with the verses, "May Dhātrī give us wealth etc.[167]

Viśvakarman :—Viśvakarman has been deemed in the *Ṛgveda* to be the creator of all that exists[168]. 'विश्वकर्मा सर्वस्य कर्ता" says the *Nirukta*. Viśvakarman is the maker of all. He is of penetrating mind pervading, maker, disposer and the greatest god to reveal the senses. He perceives the object of senses i. e. objects desired, thought about or aimed at.[169] So if anything was brought in the household or the articles of trade arrive, it was thought to be a special occasion for Gobhila and paying tribute to the creator of things. So the Gṛhya-sūtra lays down—"Of the articles which he has bought, he should after fasting three days and nights make an oblation with the formula, "Here this Viśvakarman."[170] The *Khadira Gṛhya-sūtra* has also prescribed the following, "Of articles of trade let him make an oblation with the formula, 'Here this Viśvakarman."[171]

The seven Ṛṣis :—Hiraṇyakesin has prescribed a worship for the seven Ṛṣis at the time when the bridegroom reaches his house with his newly married wife. The couple sits on a red bull's skin with hair outside till the stars appear. When the stars appear the bridegroom worships the stars with the words 'May we not be deprived of our offspring." After the worship of the moon the worship of the stars follows. The worship begins with the verse "The

---

[166] *Hir.*, 1. 2. 5. 9. [167] *Hir.*, 2. 1. 4. 91 [168] *Ṛg.*, 10. 81. 2.
[169] *Nir* 10. 26. [170] 4. 8. 19.
[171] 4. 3. 7.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

seven Ṛṣis who have led to firmness etc."[172] The special feature of this worship is the adoration to the polar stars for firmness and protection from adversaries.

Conception of the gods in the Gṛhya-sūtras

These are the gods of the Gṛhya-sūtras that are often invoked with emphasis, in the various Gṛhya ceremonies. The Gṛhya-sūtras have nothing to say about the origin of the gods because they take the various gods of the Vedic pantheon and invoke them in various rituals ordinarily keeping their vedic conception in view. Thus, Viṣṇu, the protector of the embryo in the *Ṛg-veda* is invoked by the Gṛhya-sūtras on the occasion of Garbhādhāna ceremony.

The general characteristics of gods, as traced in the Gṛhya literature is that they pervade the different quarters, wearing armour, weilding strong bows and arrows, not winking the eyes and vigilant about the affairs of men[173]. The demons are separately satiated to keep and preserve the smooth current of life. The gods possess the wonderful power to kill diseases and even the worms of diseases.[174]

The entire Gṛhya literature cannot be held to be magic-ridden. It is ceremonial through and through. There are certain observances for the attainment of special desires that savour of magic but such magical portions of the Gṛhyasūtras merely occupy a minor position as most of them are not concerned with the gṛhya rites proper and most of them have nothing to do with the domestic fire. The most that can be said about these magical portions of the Gṛhya-sūtras is that they indicate the deep influence of the *Atharva-veda* on the life of the people. It is proved by the fact that on such occasions the mantras from the *Atharvaveda* are quoted in the Gṛhya-sūtras. Thus,

[172] *Hir.*, 1. 7. 22. 14.
[173] *Gobh.*, *H.* 9. 19.
[174] *Pār.*, 2. 17. 13. 15.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

in the *Hiraṇyakesin*[175] Gṛhyasūtras, the *Atharvaveda*[176] has been quoted for success in trade. That the Gṛhya-sūtras deemed only the three Vedas as respectable is clear from the following mantra, 'Draw in your breath with the Ṛk, breath within with the Yajus, breath forth with the Sāman.'[177] The mantra is uttered at the time of Jātakarman when the administering of the sacred lore is performed by the father, so that the child may gain the mental strength to carry on and grasp the vedic learning. Here *Atharvaveda* is excluded and it merely indicates that the author of the Gṛhya-sūtras did not believe the knowledge of the *Atharvaveda* very essential for the moral and intellectual well-being of the child. Such magical rites and practices exist in the cultural history of all the nations and even the present age cannot be considered to be completely immune from them. So the idea of exercising coercion to gods as certain scholars hold and which is a natural conclusion to the above view, also stands refuted.

Certain scholars are of opinion that in the Gṛhya-sūtras the attitude towards gods has changed. They are not seen as miraculous beings but merely as agents to human needs and aspirations. Such an opinion about the religious view of the Gṛhya sūtras is altogether contradictory to the spirit of their contents. The Gods in the Gṛhya-sūtras, as the above lines fully indicate, are treated with full devotion and are deemed as supplementing the human powers. Human feeling of helplessness on certain occasions of spiritual gain and also for the attainment of certain material ends relating family, nation or society is the goal of spiritual faith which makes the society ideal. Really speaking, it is the only way in which an ideal society can happily live. Coercion to gods or calling the authors of the Gṛhya-sūtras to be superstitious are the outcries of materialistic

[175] 1. 4. 15. 1.
[176] 3. 15. 3.
[177] Sāṅkh., 1. 22. 2.
[178] *Gobhila*, 4. 9. 15.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

people who view the spritual life of the great ancient sages of India with modern materialistic angle of vision. Thus, while in Upanayana the Guru touching the arm of the boy says, 'I touch thee with the hands of Aśvin,' he means to infuse the great physical and mental dexterity of the great Aśvins in the boy having borrowed their powers from them.

He declares to the world that his education will make the boy spiritually, morally and physically fit to serve both the "Kindred points of Heaven and Home." Again, while touching his heart and the naval, the guru invokes Agni meaning to say that the बिन्दु that resides at the heart and naval must reach the ब्रह्माण्ड through the aid of Agni who alone is capable of that function being possessed with upward tendency to move as it must be remembered that according to the science of Yoga such a movement of रेतस् is essential for real spiritual life and the true knowledge of Vedic learning. The authors of the Gṛhya-sūtra were great Yogins who could realise it fully well that being ऊर्ध्वरेतस् was very necessary for the attainment of Brahma-vidyā and no god but Agni was capable of bringing such a condition in the boy. Such a spirit lies at the root of deification of in-animate objects as a chariot, staff, turban, girdle and mirror, etc., or the abstract qualities as hunger and thirst[179] and we must recognise the presence of the same spirit everywhere in the Gṛhya-sūtras while determining the relation of human society with the gods.

Thus the attitude towards the gods, in the Gṛhya-sūtras, is purely devotional and spiritual. They are invoked for the encouragement and supplementation of human efforts. Even in the days of the Gṛhya-sūtras they were viewed as being possessed with miraculous and supernatural powers as they were done by the authors of the great Vedas.

---

[179] *Gobhila* 4. 9. 15.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

KAUṬALYA AND HIS ARTHAŚĀSTRA

By Śrī Dev Raj Channa

Ever since the discovery of the manuscripts of the *Arthaśāstra* there has been a great deal of controversy regarding the authenticity of its author. There is hardly any aspect of the problem which has not been dealt with at great length. But in going through some of these writings we find however that certain aspects of the question still need a word or two to be said. Our aim is to take them up one by one.

We would, first of all, like to discuss certain remarks of those scholars who do not accept Kauṭalya as the author of this work or who do not think that the present text is an authentic one : They have compared certain passages or expressions of the book with those of the other texts, such as the Dharma-śāstras. They have certain ideas about the technical knowledge of that period, (for example in the domain of metallurgy), and they compare it with what they find in the Kauṭalīya. They have noted the complete absence of the contemporary data, such as the name of the Emperor, his capital, etc. They feel that there is some incompatibility between the geographical information furnished by the author and that by the contemporary foreign travellers such as Megasthenes. They are also surprised by the strangeness of the name, "Kauṭilya", as they feel that no one could have had this word as one's name. All this has made them believe that either there was no such person at that epoch or that the present text is not authentic.

We should observe in the first place that the comparison between the passages and phrases of the *Arthaśāstra* and those of other texts cannot be decisive, because the date of almost all of them remains yet to be finally settled within definite narrow limits. Moreover, if according to one

CC-0. In Public Domain. Guṛukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

scholar, a certain passage or a certain word goes to prove a later date for Kauṭalya, according to another, it proves the contrary. In many such cases, the scholars seem to have based their opinion on their personal suppositions. Jolly, for example, thinks, "..The Dharmaśāstra or the science of duty and religion has far better claims to a high antiquity than the *Arthaśāstra* or the science of gain, which in its turn is older than the Kāmaśāstra or the science of love, the three sciences based on trivargas having followed each other in point of time as well as in rank and value."[1] He thus, formulates a principle and utilises it to give a judgment, without giving any proof for the principle itself, further, uses this principle to show that the *Arthaśāstra* is later than the smṛti of Yajñavalkya. But how does Jolly come to the conclusion that the principle formulated by him, is universally acceptable. Actually it is an arbitrary opinion.

According to some scholars, Kauṭalya cannot be taken to have lived in the Third century B.C. as the technical knowledge displayed in his work, cannot but be true of a later period. They are convinced that India of that epoch had not made such an advance. But without taking into account the ruins of Mohen-jo-daro and of Harappa, we can note references to metals even in the *Ṛg-veda*. Now *atleast* one thousand years had elapsed since that time and therefore, it is not very surprising that in the Fourth and Third centuries B.C., Indian scholars had already acquired sufficiently detailed knowledge of the techniques.

Here is another objection : The social standard of the Kauṭalīya is much higher than that furnished by Megasthenes, an eye-witness of events and life at Palibothra. Leaving alone this Greek traveller, may we point out that the standard of life described in the *Arthaśāstra* can be

[1] *Arthaśāstra*, Lahore, 1920, v.i, p. 20.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

explained as the logical development of the social level that we find in the early texts of the Tipiṭaka. Kauṭalya is also blamed for having said nothing regarding his Emperor, his capital, etc. But we would like to know why the mention of such names was necessary in his work? If it was really necessary, it is time someone told us why? Moreover, we are not absolutely sure that in all the books written by various authors, one can always find similar data.[2] It is true that Megasthenes has said nothing regarding such a remarkable personality which was Kauṭalya and who occupied the post of the Chief Minister in the court of the first Maurya. But Megasthenes has not mentioned the name of any one except the Emperor. Should we then suppose that the Emperor had no Chief Minister, no minister, no commander of his armies, etc.? On the other hand, can we not suppose that the authors who have preserved only certain extracts of Megasthenes, have kept only one name, that of the Emperor, and that they have omitted the names of every other member of the Royal Court.

Those who believe that a Chief Minister could not have such a bad word for his name, have never told us why they have preferred "Kauṭilya" to "Kauṭalya" and this despite the fact that the majority of manuscripts give us the second and not the first version. It is strange that while refusing to accept the Indian tradition regarding the *Arthaśāstra* in full, they pick up only the part relating to the name and use it to advance arguments against the authenticity of the very tradition of which the name of the author is a small part. Moreover, the word, *Kauṭalya*

[2] Let us examine the writings of A. B. Keith, who has written also on Political Science. One wonders if there are *always* references to the British King or to his capital in these works. Even in his "History of Sanskrit Literature", if only the text, without its Preface, were left to us, it will be difficult to believe that it is a work written so many thousands of miles away from India!

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

can be explained as being derived from the word, *Kuṭala*, referred to in the *gotra-pāṭha*. Even if it is ultimately proved that "Kauṭilya" is the original form, that may not matter much, as it is not the only pejorative name in ancient Indian history. We have also such names as Śunaḥ-śepa and Kaunapadanta. In the Ṭipiṭaka we come across a seṭṭhi, Meṇḍaka by name. These strange names can be and could be explained. (This is, by no means, a phenomenon reserved to Ancient India. Even today we can find such names in other countries, including those of Europe. Have there not been and are there not names like Death, Few, Bullock, Boïteux, Pfenning, Shlecht or Mauvais? One can even find names like Cocu and Torcheboeuf.). Moreover, if the name has been changed by some writer at a later date, he must have found it acceptable.

Some other scholars do not believe in the authenticity of the work as the author quotes himself in the 3rd person, singular. This continues to remain a major argument inspite of the fact that it is a common practice of the Indian authors and here no one seems surprised by such references. We may refer here, for example, to Govindasvāmī: "Prāyeṇa granthakārāḥ svamatam para-mata-apadeśena bruvate."[3] Examples of this custom can be found even in Pāli literature where similar expressions are attributed to the Buddha.[4] We also find the same tendency in the literature of certain European countries. To give but one example: Caesar had left us his commentaries, in which he sometimes refers to himself in the 3rd person, singular. And here is Victor Hugo, writing under a drawing of himself: "Mr. Victor Hugo in the sun".[5] Here

[3] Referred to by P. V. Kane in the "*History of the Dharmaśāstra*", v.i, p. 21.

[4] "Atha kho Bhagavā....Ānandam āmantesi....icchati Tathāgato virecanam pātum ti", *Vinaya-Piṭaka* ed. by Oldenberg, v.i, p. 278.

[5] *Letters Françaises*, Paris, 24 mars, 1955.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

it is a case of irony, but it is once again, in the 3rd person, singular.

There are, however, still others who cannot believe that a big work of encyclopaedic nature could have been composed by one man alone. This is the work of a genius whose very existence is unbelievable. Hence, they refuse to accept it as the work of one man. In arguing thus they mix up two questions, which should be studied separately. It is not our intention to defend here the genius of Kauṭalya. We would simply like to remark that a work of encyclopaedic nature could be composed by a man single-handed and that several such instances are not wanting. We know that Pliny, the Elder, composed a work "which deals with all the natural sciences as also with all the human arts."[6] Pliny himself, left nothing in doubt when he detailed the number of texts consulted by him. Similarly, men of genius, who excelled in a number of fields at the same time, have existed. One need only quote the name of Aristotle in this connection. To us, this does not appeal as the best means of refuting the authenticity of this work. These arguments carry as little conviction as those of scholars like Shri V.R. Dikshitar, who while admitting that generally it is "impossible that a man should have been a specialist in all the branches of knowledge", does not admit the validity of this "principle" for the sages and seers of Ancient India, because

[6] Farrington, "*Greek Science*", H'worth, 1944, v. ii, p. 133. We give below the exact quotation of Buffon, utilised by Farrington :—

"Son *Histoire Naturelle* comprend indèpendamment de l'histoire des animaux, des plantes at des minéraux, l'histoire du ciel, et de la terre, la médecine, la commerce, la navigation, l'histoire des arts libéraux et mécaniques, l'origine des usages, enfin toutes les sciences naturelles et tous les arts humains...c'est, si l'on veut une compilation de tout ce qui avoit été écrit avant lui, une copie de tout ce qui avoit été fait d'excellent at d'utile á savoir; mais cette copie a de si grands traits.... qu'élle est préférable á la plupart des ouvrages originaux qui traitent des mêmes matières.", *Oeuvres Complètes*, Paris, 1837, v. i, p. 25.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

"this is not impossible in India, and especially in ancient India, where we know of the versatile knowledge possessed by many a Pandit. They became sages and seers, because of their knowledge in all branches of sciences and arts .."[7]

Recently, Mr. Kalyanov has connected the *Arthaśāstra* with the period of the fall of the system of slavery in India :"..we can draw the conclusion that the differenciation of science noticed in the *Arthaśāstra* probably belongs to the period of the downfall of the slavery-system and the birth of feudalism, that is, the I-IIIrd centuries A.D[8]." But there he does not advance any arguments in favour of thus dating the decline of the slave-system in India.[9]

If the scholars who have doubts regarding the authenticity of the *Arthaśāstra*, thus put forward arguments, which cannot escape criticism, it is also true, that some of the arguments advanced by the supporters of the authenticity of the Kauṭalīya, leave the reader unconvinced. These scholars take their stand on the remarkable convergence of the two branches of the Indian tradition, namely, the Sanskrit and the Ardha-māgadhī and thus meet the arguments of the adversaries. But they have not been always able to prove that the work has been passed on to us without any change. Moreover, having repeated the same arguments many times, they have convinced themselves and declare :"..The *Arthaśāstra* has stood the test of very rigourous criticism for so long a time that its genuineness must not be recognised to have been placed beyond any doubt.."[10] This is the final opinion of Shri

[7] *Mauryan Polity*, Madras, 1932, p. 325.

[8] Communication at the International Congress of Orientalists, Cambridge, 1954.

[9] For our views on the question of slavery, see "*L'Esclavage dans l'Inde ancienne..*", Pondichery, 1957, pp. 114—23.

[10] K. N. Shastri, "*History of the Nandas and the Mauryas*", Patna, 1952, p. 201.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

K. N. Shastri, who has examined the problem at length. We would like to be permitted to take up one of the issues raised by the learned author. Some years ago, Sylvain Lévi had noted the presence of the expression, "pravālam alakanandakam" in the text and had concluded that the mention of the name of Alexandria could not but have been later than the foundation of that town by Alexander, the Great. This meant that *atleast* the expression in question was a later interpolation. Shri Shastri takes up this point and maintains that "pravāla" was known to Indians for a long time before Alexander. This in his opinion, is sufficient proof for showing the weakness of the argument advanced by Sylvain Lévi. But clearly this is only half the argument because it is equally essential to say something regarding the word, "alakanandakam" in the text.[11]

For our part, we feel that the Indian tradition regarding Kauṭalya cannot be lightly brushed aside and that a man of that name lived in the Nanda-Maurya period. It is equally clear that he could have composed a work of this type, for which purpose he could have consulted various works available at the time, as is said in the beginning of the work. There is, however, nothing to prove that there has been absolutely no change in the text, specially when we know that such practices have prevailed among the later day Pandits, anxious to show themselves off in

---

[11] However as regards the objection concerning the presence of the word, "*cīna*", signifying the country of China, we owe the following remarks to the courtesy of M. Léon Hambis :—

It is true that the name of *T'sin* is applied to the entire country of China only from the commencement of the 2nd century B.C. This was the period when the ruling dynasty of the kingdom of *T'sin* succeeded in conquering other kingdoms and in bringing them under its control. *But* the kingdom of *T'sin* existed before this period and it is perfectly possible that an Indian author had known and referred to the country of *T'sin*, from the period when it had still not extended its authority and its name over the entire country.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the dress of another. In fact, there are very few texts, such as the *Ṛg-veda* and the *Mahā-bhāṣya* which have escaped later-day changes. We feel, therefore, that the *Arthaśāstra* contains materials of a period, anterior to the beginning of the Christian Era, although it is difficult to believe that the text, in its present form, has reached us without any changes.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ANCIENT SCHOOLS OF VEDIC INTERPRETATION*

By Dr. S. K. Gupta

In my paper '*Nature of Vedic Śākhās*' read before the 15th Session of the Oriental Conference I tried to show that the Śikhā-texts of a Saṁhitā formed the earliest step towards its interpretation. These texts differed from each other in some cases minutely and in some cases vitally as well as widely. These differences must have been due to the individual taste, theological beliefs and practices and level of learning of the originators and of the teachers-in-charge of those schools. Apart from textual differences, the differences in explanation of these texts and their theological application must have been very prominent. What these differences were it is impossible to suggest under the present state of our knowledge.

In the Brāhmaṇas and the Upaniṣads the verses from the Vedas have been explained mostly with reference to the sacrifice and metaphysics respectively. Other types of explanation, also, are found. The Brāhmaṇas do not lack legends and historical stories in connection with Vedic Mantras. Numerous physical explanations are met with. Etymologies are very common. In spite of such a variety of interpretation of Vedic words and Vedic verses no attempt has ever been made to reduce them to different schools. The modern scholars summarily accept that the sole purpose of the Brāhmaṇas is ritual and they treat all explanations given in the Brāhmaṇas as sacrificial. But the Brāhmaṇas do contain much material that is not sacrificial. They have preserved for us some reminiscences of the various types of explanations that must have been current in the days of Śākhās. To cite an exmple the

* This paper was read in the Vedic Section of A.I.O.C. 1951.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Śatapatha-Brhmaṇa gives us some glimpses of etymological, sacerdotal, historical or legendary and metaphysical as well as physical explanations. This Brāhmaṇa does not hesitate to include in its body such diverse views. It indicates that the differences in such explanations were neither of principles nor of a vital nature. There was an essential unity behind them. This is further supported by the unity underlying behind the various schools of Vedic interpretation mentioned in the *Nirukta* as we shall presently see.

The Pada texts were named after the names of their authors. The differences in the various Pada texts of the same Saṁhitā could only be in the nature of differences in the analysis of certain words and consequent differences in their meanings. There could not have been vital differences calculated to allot them to particular schools of Vedic interpretation. The differences in these texts must have been completely individual and in matters of details only and not in principles.

It is only the *Nirukta* where several schools of Vedic interpretation have been clearly mentioned and quoted for their views. These schools are: (i) the Adhidaivata, (ii) the Adhyātma, (iii) the Ákhyāna Samaya or the Aithihāsika, (iv) the Naidāna, (v) the Nairukta, (vi) the Parivrājaka, (vii) the Pūrve Yājñika and (viii) the Yājñika. Camūpati makes this number ten by including the Vaiyākaraṇa school and taking the Ákhyāna Samaya and the Aitihāsika as two separate schools. He has also changed the names of the Adhidaivata and the Adhyātma schools to Àtma Pravāda and Àrṣa[1]. The Vaiyākaraṇas do not appear to have maintained a separate school of Vedic interpretation. Yāska's remarks that the science of etymology is a completion of grammar[2]

[1] Yāska Yuga, p. 11.

[2] *Nirukta* I,15. Cp. 'tadidam vidyāsthānam vyākaraṇasya kārtsnyam.'

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and that etymologies should not be explained to one who is not a Vaiyākaraṇa[3] clearly show that Yāska does not consider the grammarians as different from the etymologists. Similarly, Yāska by using the word Ākhyāna in the sense of Itihāsa in the *N.* xi, 34 and other places impresses that he considers these two words as synonyms[4].

Yāska deals with the Aitihāsika or the Ākhyāna school at length along with the Nairukta schools to which he himself belongs. His treatment of other schools is very scanty.

The Vaiyākaraṇas have been referred to in the *N.* I, 12 and in IX, 5. In I, 12 the point at discussion is the origin of nouns. The etymologists believe that all nouns are derived from roots. Some of the grammarians do not contribute to this view. Yāska's words 'Vaiyākaraṇānām caike' suggest that there were two sections among the grammarians on this point. One of them, perhaps the major one agreed with the etymologists. The word 'eke' can lead to this conclusion only. In IX, 5 the formation of 'maṇḍūka' is discussed. The grammarians derive it from-*maṇḍ* whereas the etymologists derive it from-*masj*, *mad* or *mand*. The grammarians attach more importance to form than to matter or sense. The etymologists attach due importance to both with particular emphasis on the sense of the word in question. In XIII, 9 the view of the grammarians about the explanation of the words 'catvāri vāk'[5] is given. It is the same as given by Patañjali.

It is, therefore, evident that the differences between these two schools were the relative importance of sense or form in the derivation of a word and that a section of the grammarians did not accept the view of the etymologists that all nouns are derived from roots. One of the Nairuktas

[3] N.II, 3, cp. 'naikapadāni nirbrūyāt. nāvaiyākaraṇāya.'
[4] Priya Ratna Ārṣa, Veda meṁ itihāsa nahiṁ hai, pp. ca-jha.
[5] *Ṛv.* I, 164.45.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

also appears to have differed on this point[6]. It is not clear from the text of Yāska whether these dissenters denied this proposition only in the case of proper nouns or only in the case of nouns used in the classical Sanskrit alone or in the case of certain nouns used in the Vedic language also. Whatever the case may have been the grammarians were agreed to the etymologists on the vital points in the matter of Vedic interpretation.

The Naidānas have been quoted in the *N.* VI, 9 and VII,12. In VI, 9 they hold that a 'syāla' is so called because he becomes near on account of his relationship.[7]' The Nairuktas derive it as syāt lājān āvapati', 'he sows parched grain from a winnowing basket[8].' In VII, 12 the Naidānas derive the word 'sāma' as 'ṛcām samam mene' 'he thought it equal to the stanza[9].' The Nairuktas, on the other hand, derive it as 'sammitam ṛcā, 'measured out by the stanza'[10] or from as to throw. This school, thus, agrees in two main principles with the Nairuktas. It believes in deriving nouns from certain roots laying special emphasis on their sense. Of course, they appear to have believed in some original sense of words which in some cases undergoes changes on account of long use, change in customs and environments. They appear to have been the Semantists[11] of ancient India. In spite of such a difference in their approach to the problem the results do not appear to have

---

[6] He is Gārgya.

[7] Cp. 'syāla āsannaḥ saṁyogena.'

[8] Dr. L. Sarup's translation.

[9] Dr. L. Sarup's translation.

[10] Dr. L. Sarup's translation.

[11] Dr. Sarup has translated the word Naidānāḥ as "they who are well-versed in primary causes" in N. VI, 9 and by 'they who are well-versed in Vedic metres' in N. VII, 12. He has not been able to give a consistent translation in these two places. How could the same name denote two sets of scholars who were not necessarily identical? The correct translation in both these places should be 'those who explain words with reference to their original sense.'

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

been substantially different from those of the etymologists.

The Parivrājakas are mentioned in the *N.* II, 8 on the interpretation of 'bahuprajāḥ nirṛtim āviveśa[12].' Their name indicates that they must have been wandering ascetics. They had a metaphysical outlook. It was natural. Their stand about the principles of interpretation does not appear to have been different from that of the etymologists. The results arrived at by them in interpreting a Mantra do not appear to have been very different from those arrived at by other schools especially the etymologists. In most cases they must have been identical with those arrived at by the etymologists. Their metaphysical outlook must have had some influence on their etymologies, some of which must have differed from those of the etymologists. Yāska has noted only one case. In his opinion no other differences were noteworthy.

The Pūrve Yājñikas have been quoted in the *N.* VII, 23. They regard Vaiśvānara as Āditya. Their arguments are ritualistic in nature. They appear to have explained Vedic verses with reference to their application in sacrifice and the ceremonies connected with it. They, thus, had a leaning towards ritualistic explanation of Vedic verses. They might have belonged to the orthodox school of the Yājñikas who probably did not attach too much importance to the outward form of the sacrifice. They do not appear to have explained many verses in terms of sacrificial technic. Yāska has supplied such a scanty information that nothing can be said with certainty.

The Yājñikas have been mentioned in the *N.* V, II; VII, 4; XI, 29; 31; 42; and 43. In V, 11 their explanation of 'sarāṁsi triṁśatam' and other words[13] is quoted. The Yājñikas hold that the words Anumati and Rākā both mean the last day of the bright fortnight[14] and that the words Sinī-

[12] *Ṛv.* I, 164.32. [13] *Ṛv.* VIII, 77.4. [14] *N.* XI, 29.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

vālī and Kuhū both mean the last day of the dark fortnight[15]. They translate 'gauḥ' in the Ṛv. I, 164. 41 as 'gharmadhug' (giver of warm milk)[16], i.e., a sacrificial cow[17]. Their explanations are thus sacrificial.

They also hold that the deity of a Mantra which has not been used in sacrifice and for which no deity has been specified has Prajāpati as its deity[18].

The Yāñikas, thus, represent a school with elaborate sacrificial details and ceremonies. They are thoroughly sacerdotal in their outlook and can see nothing else than sacrificial details in Vedic verses. They appear to be the predecessors of the later Mīmāṁsakas. They have been distinguished from the earlier Yājñikas which fact forcibly leads to the conclusion that the elaborate details of sacrificial ceremonies and sacrificial explanation of verses of the Vedas is of later origin and hence was not acceptable to the earlier school. Yāska's treatment of this school shows that these ritualists differed from the etymologists in restricting the Vedic verses to sacrifice only. There appears to have been a complete agreement between the two schools in regard to other general principles of Vedic interpretation.

In the Supplement (*N.* XIII, 9) the views of the schools of Ārṣa and Ātmapravāda have been quoted. The former appear to have been metaphysical in their explanations. The latter appear to have an influence of natural sciences on their outlook and interpretations. They have explained the Ṛv. I, 164.45 with reference to men and beasts. The views of another school of Ācāryas under the words 'eke' have also been quoted at the same place. They appear to belong to the Ātmapravāda school for they have explained the Ṛv. I, 164. 45 with reference to birds, reptiles and men. The Ātmapravāda, thus, must have been identical with the Adhidaivata school.

---

[15] *N.* XI, 31.
[16] Sarup's translation.
[17] *N.* XI, 42;43.
[18] *N.* VII, 4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The Aitihāsikas have been quoted in the *N.* II, 16; XII, 1 and XII, 10. They hold that Vṛtra is Tvāṣṭra Asura (II, 16); the two Aśvins are Rājānau Puṇyakṛtau (XII,1); the word 'mithunā' in the *Ṛv.* X, 17.2 refers to Yama and Yamī. The legend quoted in the *N.* XII, 10 gives the impression that Vivasvān, Saraṇyū, and Aśvinau are historical personalities.

The Ākhyāna Samayaḥ has been quoted in the *N.* VII, 7. This school believes that the description of Vedic deities found in the Mantras is figurative only. They are not real historical beings or persons having hands and feet and performing certain actions. In their opinion the anthropomorphic traits of Vedic deities are nothing but personifications of various phenomena going on in Nature[19]. This school, thus, must have explained Vedic descriptions in the form of the allegories and legends. There appears to be no other difference between the Ākhyāna Samayaḥ or the Aitihāsika school and the Nairukta school.

Besides these references several itihāsas and Ākhyānas have been narrated by Yāska in connection with his interpretation of Vedic verses. The purpose of these Ākhyānas is that Yāska wishes to impress upon the students of etymology that these Ākhyānas or itihāsas should not be treated in their literal sense but should be taken as figurative descriptions. They are not real history but are mere allegories. As such there remains practically no difference in the interpretation of the Nairukta and the Aitihāsika schools. But in due course of time the real significance of what Yāska intended to convey was forgotten and the legends connected with the Mantras to bring home the points discussed in those texts were taken as real facts. The mistake committed by the medieval commentators was repeated and vehemently defended by the originators as well as the followers

[19] Cp. 'api vā puruṣavidhānāmeva satām karmātmāna ete syuḥ. yathā yajño yajamānasya. eṣa cākhyānasamayaḥ,'

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of the modern school of Vedic studies. It was only Dayānanda who after several centuries pointed out where the mistake lay and what was the real sense behind these allegories.

The school of etymologists is represented by Yāska himself. The followers of this school hold that all nouns can and should be derived from roots according to certain principles. These derivations were not to be made for the purpose of intellectual exercises but had a definite purpose behind them. This purpose was that all nouns should be explained with reference to their derivative sense as far as the Vedic Mantras are concerned[20]. This fundamental position of the etymologists was put into the background by the medieval commentators. Even Dr. L. Sarup could not leave the track of the medieval scholars and translated the explanations of Vedic Mantras given by Yāska in the *Nirukta* much against the intentions and principle of the etymologists. Dayānanda alone had the courage to point out this fundamental mistake committed by the medieval scholars.

The several schools of Vedic interpretation cited by Yāska are, thus agreed on the main principles of interpretation of the Vedas. Their differences are not vital. They depend on the outlook of the followers of a particular school. Such differences in details or explanations were bound to arise. The typical example 'the sun is set' given by the Rhetoricians would make the point clear. Just as the various interpretors of this sentence will not differ in the literal translation of this sentence but would differ vitally in their explanation of the significance of this simple sentence, similarly the various schools were agreed with the Nairuktas on the general principles and consequently in the literal interpretation of the sacred texts but they

[20] Vide Yāska's remark 'athāpīdamantareṇa....' (*N.* I, 15) at the close of the discussion on the derivative nature of nouns.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

differed in their explanations which were influenced by their individual outlook.

With the passage of time Vedic studies declined. With this decline the unity of these schools and the underlying significance of their explanation were misunderstood. A blending of all the schools was effected by those scholars who wanted to show that there was no difference in all those schools. All was safe so far as the motive was concerned. But the lack of proper understanding on the part of these scholars resulted in disaster. All the schools irrespective of the shades of differences in their explanations were merged into one school which I have termed the medieval school represented by Skanda and Mādhava Bhaṭṭa. The new school was a complete metamorphosis of the ancient schools and was beyond all recognition to an ordinary man. The climax of this mis-blending is found in the commentary of Sāyaṇa. It is this Sāyaṇa who is regarded as a traditional commentator and is followed for all practical purposes by the modern school. Mr. T. V. Kapali Sastry has rightly observed :—

"Here again is a misconception or an ambiguity concerning what is called the traditional interpretation of Sāyaṇa. What is the tradition that was handed down to Sāyaṇa which he maintains in his interpretation of the Ṛgvedic hymns? Or, is it meant by the term the tradition that he himself started and that has been handed down to us through his commentary on the Ṛks? Such a question arises because when we go through his Ṛg-bhāṣya we find him maintaining a variety of traditions coming down from different schools of learning. He maintains mostly the ritualistic tradition that the Mantras are meant for sacrificial purpose, with great zeal, very often at the cost of a straight rendering of the text. But the Brāhmaṇas, the original ritualistic scriptures themselves, do not claim to be treated as the Vedas in the main of which the Mantras are a part

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

having their place in the rituals. In scores of places Sāyaṇa in his commentary maintains the Vedantic tradition, the Paurāṇik tradition and other Śāstric traditions without making any serious attempt to take notice of the discrepancies in his writings, much less to reconcile them at all. An instance may be cited to show that Sāyaṇa while endeavouring to expound the Ṛks in consonance with the tenets of the ritualist clean forgets that according to the latter there can be no mention of any actual historic occurrence in any portion of the Vedas, since thay are eternal—every sentence, every word, every syllable. Again, when Sāyaṇa finds certain hymns clearly symbolic or containing allegorical allusions, he explains them in a quite simple way making references to minutiae of certain rites that are meant and ought to be so understood and avoids to mention any other possible significance of the Ṛks in question. He was quite aware of the fact that the ritualists were just one of the three main interpreters of the Vedas and this is clear when he occasionally quotes Yāska making reference to a threefold interpretation of the hymns of the Ṛgveda. When he gives us alternative meanings of words or verses, which he often does, it is obvious he does so as a scholar, with a certain indifference to the acceptance of the alternative meaning if it does not fit with a sacrificial context. What then is the tradition he himself received or he has left behind? It is a jumble of traditions that we find registered in his commentary, as has been stated already, although of course he started his work with the avowed object of demonstrating that the Ṛks are ancillary and indispensable to the ceremonial rites of Vedic sacrifices.... ....But he made his choice and sided with the ritualist supporting not fully, but to some extent, the Mīmāṁsakas and wrote the commentary. The ritualistic tradition of Vedic religion was there long before him and he imbibed its spirit. That is not the same as to say—and it will be a

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

travesty of truth—that that was also the tradition in regard to the interpretation of the Ṛks. If there was any tradition, it was the threefold interpretation of the Ṛks to which Yāska draws our attention. But Sāyaṇa's work has left us a new tradition that the Ṛks are to be interpreted only in one way and that is the way of the ritualist. The ancient tradition of a threefold interpretation has been thoroughly eclipsed, if not wiped out of the memory of Indian Vedist for the last time and for good[21]."

In spite of such a decline of Vedic studies the correct method of interpretation and the threefold way of explaining the Ṛks were not altogether forgotten. Some rays of light were continuously flowing. Virajānanda received them from his Gurus headed by Pūrṇāśrama Svāmin. Dayānanda received them from Virajānanda and revived the ancient school.

[21] Arvindu Mandir Annual, 5.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Plate 1.—Umāsahitā akṣa-krīḍāmūrti at Elephanta

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

A PLEA FOR 'UMĀSAHITĀ AKṢA-KRĪḌĀMŪRTI'

By Śrī R. Sen Gupta

The Paurāṇic accounts of the incidents from Śiva's life have always been an inspiration to the Hindu artists and they were neither tired of reproducing the same themes again and again nor the charm of the themes was ever lost. Of them most interesting is the panel where Śiva and Pārvatī are shown engaged in playing at dice (*akṣa*). This theme caught fancy of the artists of Ellora where it has been carved as many as seven times. The artists of Elephanta and Jogeśwarī too have shown their fascination for this theme by carving one panel each in their respective excavations.

Scholars have been describing this theme from time to time by different names, such as *Umā-maheśvaramūrti*[1], Pārvatī in the attitude of *Māna*[2], *Mānavatī* Pārvatī[3] etc., which do not appear to be appropriate nor do they convey the proper attitude. Considering the theme, a nomenclature like *Umāsahitā akṣa-krīḍāmūrti* should be most befitting to such a panel which fully explains the mode and attitude.

In the main cave of Elephanta, the panel, to the left of the eastern entrance and opposite to the *Rāvaṇānugrahamūrti* represents *Umāsahitā akṣa-krīḍāmūrti* (Pl. 1). This panel though much mutilated, still retains some of the original forms and suggests the works of a master artist. The sporting *gaṇas* of Śiva with Nandī among them occupy the lower portion of the panel. Above them are Śiva and

[1] T. A. G. Rao—*Elements of Hindu Iconography*—Vol. II, Part I, PP. 138-41, Pls. XXVII-XXIX.

[2] H. Shastri—*Guide to Elephanta*, P. 45, Pl. XIV.

[3] S. A. Joglekar—*Gharāpurī* (in Marathi) PP. 23-4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Pārvatī with attendants and Bhṛṅgī is sitting to the right of Śiva. At the top, blocks of stone with arched openings suggest the Mt. Kailāśa with caves and at the sides, gods hover in the sky. Pārvatī's affectation arising out of some disagreement over the game, has been beautifully portrayed by her movement in turning away from Śiva. The reaction of the spectacle on the child on the lap of the female attendant, standing between Śiva and Pārvatī, is also vivid, and shown as if it is trying to come down with the right hand (which otherwise should go round the body of the attendant in embrace) bringing forward and applying its force to be freed. Śiva's hands are all broken, but one of the broken left hands is still seen on the ground holding the end of Pārvatī's garment as if to prevent her from running away. The way the situation has been exploited by the artist and translated with his chisel and hammer, evokes nothing but effulgent appreciation.

There is an almost identical panel in the Rāmeśvara (Cave XXI) temple at Ellora. The Rāmeśvara panel (Pl. 2) also has in the lower half the *gaṇas* playing all sorts of pranks with the placid Nandī and above Śiva and Pārvatī surrounded by attendants are engaged in the game (*akṣa-krīḍā*). Bhṛṅgī is seen there sitting between Śiva and Pārvatī. Śiva sitting majestically has his front left hand on the left thigh and his back left hand is holding the end of Pārvatī's garment where as in his front right hand are the dice-coins and the back right hand shows the *tarjanī*. The inhibited Pārvatī, on the other hand, shows *vismaya* with her right hand and her left hand rests on the ground. In between them on the ground is seen a dice-board. The treatment of the figures in this panel speaks volumee of the artist. The entreating Śiva's efforts to pacify Pārvatī, the expectant on-lookers and the maids-on-duty together with the *gaṇas* in action in the lower section, all give an idea as if a scene of a drama while being enacted

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

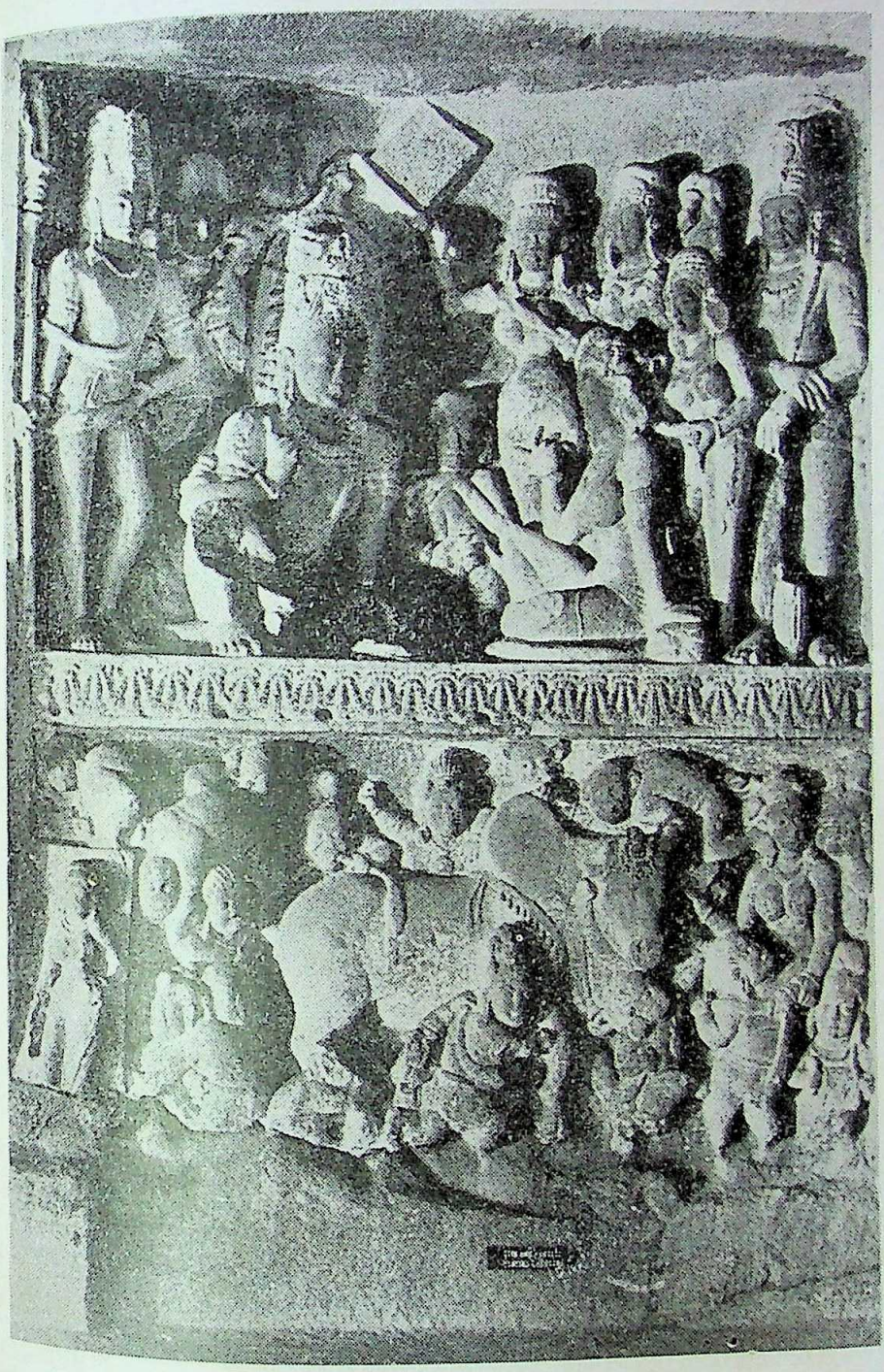


Plate 2.—Umāsahitā akṣa-krīḍāmūrti in Rāmeśvara cave

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

has been petrified. Rao described this panel as, "Śiva is herein holding in one of his left hands the upper part of the garment of his consort and keeps one of his right hands in the Suchi pose and the other appears to be carrying a book. He is evidently giving out to Umā one of the *purāṇas* which are supposed to have been addressed by Śiva to Pārvatī. Evidently he mistook the dice-coins for a book.

Interestingly enough, at the other end of the wall in which this panel is carved, is the *Rāvaṇānugrahamūrti* panel which at Elephanta faces the panel of this theme and is noteworthy. The other panels at Ellora are with almost the same sort of arrangements of figures. In some instances, instead of holding the end of Pārvatī's garment, Śiva holds the right hand of Pārvatī.

The Jogeśwarī panel, in a much smaller scale, closely followed the Elephanta panel. Carved on the lintel of the eastern entrance to the hall, it has Śiva and Pārvatī in the foreground with attendants behind them. One misses the sporting *gaṇas* here but the full can be seen standing behind Śiva. In imitation of the Elephanta panel here also Śiva holds the end of Pārvatī's garment who has turned away and in his front right hand are the dice-coins. The dice-board is lying in front of them.

Dice playing or *akṣa-krīḍā* has a remote antiquity. In ancient days it has been a popular pastime as also been used for gambling. In the *Mahābhārata*, how Yudhiṣṭhira was made to play and gamble away everything including the wife is well known. Vātsyāyana in his famous *Kāma-sūtra* describing about a fashionable man of the town called *Nāgaraka* says his outer house is fitted with a pair of couches provided with soft pillows and white sheets .....On the floor not far from his couche is spread a carpet with pillows as well as boards for chess and dice-playing[4]. The

[4] R. C. Majumdar, Ed—*The Classical Age*, P. 575.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

game found its way into the Buddhist *Jātaka* stories also. An account in the *Vidurapaṇḍita Jātaka* (No. 545) is related where Punnaka, the *Yakṣa* general won Vīdurapaṇḍita (Bodhisattva), the wise minister of the king of Indraprastha, after defeating the latter in a game of dice. The *Jātaka* story can be seen in the beautiful paintings of c. 7th cent. A.D. at Ajanta which is contemporaneous with the sculptured panels of Elephanta and Ellora.

The three panels described above belong to the 7th-8th cent. A.D. a time which synchronised with the activities of the renascent Brāhmanism, out to eclipse the others in both the spheres of art and religion. The panels, as a matter of fact, reflect the life and social condition of the time and though the theme is from Śiva's life it also gives an idea how the royal personages (surrounded by the attendants) enjoyed the pastime.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

SIMILES IN ŚAṄKARA'S BHĀṢYA ON THE KAṬHOPANIṢAD

By Dr. M. D. Paradkar

It is well-known that Śaṅkarācārya with his critical acumen coupled with an inimitable style, has eclipsed all other Ācāryas in the field. His *Bhāṣyas* on the major Upaniṣads also teem with apt illustrations as well as Upamās for which he is deservedly famous. Among the Upaniṣads, *Kaṭhopaniṣad* with the story of Nacıketas as its basis is evidently narrative in character and metrical in form. This has helped Śaṅkarācārya in making his *Bhāṣya* on it all the more interesting with the use of several Upamānas expressed with a considerable amount of freedom. Hence, a study of the similes in this *Bhāṣya* of his is bound to be interesting as well as instructive.

Fire is chosen as the Upamāna thrice. (1) Thus on one occasion, *Fire* (*agni*) known to be distinct from *Lauha* or *iron* through its quality of burning it, is offered as the Upamāna for Ātman of the nature of consciousness, which is also distinct from the body etc., and is recognised through its quality of making their characteristics such as form etc. perceptible[1]. (2) *Fire* which is the real cause of *dāhakatva* in substances like *water* (*udaka*) etc. which are not of the nature of fire, becomes the standard of comparison for Ātman or Brahman which, likewise, is the real cause of sentiency in other sentient substances, which are not of the nature of Brahman[2]. (3) Substances like *water* (*jala*), *fire-brand* (*ulmukamalātam* vide the Ṭīkā of Gopālayatīndra) which do not burn by themselves, but only follow *fire* which really

[1] II-1—3, P. 80 L. 6 & 7. References are to the Ānandāśrama Press edition of the *Kaṭhopaniṣad* with the *Bhāṣya* of Śaṅkarācārya brought out by Mahadeo Chimnaji Apte in 1889.

[2] II-2-13 p. 100 L. 7 & 8 to p. 17 L. 4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

burns, are rightly offered as the Upamāna for such luminaries as the Sun etc. which also do not shine by themselves, but only emulate the Highest Lord who really shines[3]. (4) The *Point* (*agra*) (of a needle) becomes the Upamāna for mature and sharp intellect in respect of piercing the desired object[4]. (5) *Spokes* (*arāḥ*) put in the *axle* of the wheel of the *Chariot* (*ratha-nābhi*) become the standard of comparison for such gods as Āditya and the like caused to enter the Adhidaiva sphere and speech etc. caused to enter the Adhyātma sphere by Ātman at the time of the maintenance of the world[5]. (6) *Horses* (*aśvāḥ*) and the reins (*raśmayaḥ*) occur as Upamānas for senses like ear etc. and the mind as in both the former function only on being controlled and impelled by the latter[6]. (7) The *Aśvattha tree* becomes the standard of comparison for the tree of Mundane Existence in respect of being moved by the wind; the wind in case of the latter being desires as well as acts[7].

(8) The *sky* happens to be the favourite Upamāna of Śaṅkarācārya as is evident from his *Bhāṣya* on the *Brahmasūtras*. The same is true of the present *Bhāṣya* of his on the *Kaṭhopaniṣad*. Thus the *sky* (*ākāśa*) becomes the Upamāna for Ātman in point of being free from injury by weapons due to Asaṅgatva[8]. (9) It is offered as the Upamāna for Ātman again, as both, not being subject to change, cannot be struck by any means whatsoever[9]. (10) Ā man and the trio consisting of names, forms as well as actions are compared firstly with the *sky* (*gagana*) and *duskiness* (*mala*), secondly with *mirage* (*marīci*) and the *water in it* and thirdly with the *rope* (*rajju*) and the snake-rope (*rajju-sarpa*)

[3] II-2-15 p. 102. L. 10 & 11.
[4] 1-3-12 p. 70. L. 4.
[5] II-1-9 p. 83. L. 17...20.
[6] I-3-3 p. 59. L. 7 & 8.
[7] II-3-1 p. 105. L. 7.
[8] I-2-18 p. 49. L. 5.
[9] I-2-19 p. 49. L. 8 & 9.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

as in all these the latter are falsely seen in place of the former and are to be ultimately dissolved and funded back into them on the rise of right knowledge[10]. (11) The *sky* is rightly chosen as the Upamāna for Ātman once in point of being complete in themselves[11] and (12) secondly in respect of being non-corporeal in character[12]. (13) On one occasion, the *sky* (*ākāśa*) is chosen as the Upamāna for Ātman in point of being subtle and able to assume various forms without incurring any change in themselves[13]. (14) Once the *sky* (*ambara*) becomes the standard of comparison for Ātman as both are said to be of the limited size (i. e. the size of the thumb) only due to limiting adjuncts, thus making the attribution figurative[14]. (15) Consciousncss consisting of action, instrument and result wrongly-superimposed upon Ātman who is singularly free from it, is shown to be on par with the *serpent* (*sarpa*), *silver* (*rajata*), *water* (*udaka*) and *duskiness* (*mala*) wrongly superimposed upon the *rope* (*rajju*), the mother of *pearl* (*śuktikā*), the *saline soil* (*ukhara*) and the *sky* (*gagana*) which themselves are not really contaminated by them[15].

(16) *Mirror* (*ādarśa*) which cannot be considered as the support or *ādhāra* of the *face* (*mukham*) although the latter is reflected in it, becomes the standard of comparison for the body which also cannot be styled as the substratum of Ātman, although the latter is encased in it.[16] (17) Intellect on being cleansed of all defects is compared with the *mirror* which is polished.[17] (18) One's *own body* (*ātman*) clearly visible on being reflected in the *mirror* is

[10] I-3-14 p. 71. L. 5—7.
[11] II-1-10 p. 85. L. 8.
[12] II-2-12 p. 99. L. 9.
[13] II-2-9 p. 97. L. 9. . . 11.
[14] II-1-12 p. 86. L. 9. . . 11.
[15] II-2-11 p. 98. L. 9. . . . 11.
[16] II-2-12 p. 99. L. 9 & 10.
[17] II-2-12 p. 108. L. 10.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

chosen as the Upamāna for Ātman which also can be seen in one's intellect which is cleansed of all the defects.[18] (19) On one occasion, luminaries such as the *Sun* (*āditya*) etc. become the standard of comparison for Brahman as both being endowed with light themselves, are found able to illumine others[19]. (20) The *Sun's light* (*āditya-prakāśa*) becomes the suitable Upamāna for Cetas i.e. knowledge (of Brahman) in point of being permanent and uniform in nature.[20]

(21) The *word āyuḥ* which can be figuratively used for *ghee* (*ghṛta*) in view of the latter contributing to the longevity of the former, is brought in comparison with the word Upaniṣad which also can be figuratively applied to the work (i.e. *grantha*-such as Kaṭha or Kāṭhaka) as the latter contributes to the destruction of the seed of mundane existence, which is the real meaning of the former i.e. the word Upaniṣad.[21] (22) The *plantain tree* (*kadalī*) is offered as the dissimilar Upamāna for Brahman as the former, unlike the latter, is perceived to be impermanent as it perishes after giving rise to the fruit, its effect[22]. (23) The *pillar made up of plantain tree* (*kadalī-stambha*) is brought in as the Upamāna for the tree of mundane existence in respect of being unessential[23]. (24) Enquiry (*into the number etc. of*) the *teeth of a crow* (*kāka-danta-parīkṣā*) is chosen as the suitable Upamāna for the question regarding the existence after death asked by Naciketas (to Yama) in point of being purposeless[24]. (25) A *pitcher* (*kumbha*) occurs as the dissimilar Upamāna for Ātman as the former unlike the latter is brought into by an increase in its parts

[18] II-3-4 p. 108. L. 8. . . . 10.
[19] II-2-15 p. 102. L. 14 & 15.
[20] II-2-1 p. 89. L. 8.
[21] II-1-1- Introduction p. 5. L. 3 & 4.
[22] I-3-15 p. 73 L. 13. to p. 74-L. 5.
[23] II-3-1 p. 103. L. 8 to p. 104. L. 3.
[24] I-1-25 p. 25. L. 12 & 13.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and hence is *nava* and not ancient[25]. (26) The *edge of a razor* (*kṣura-dhārā*) becomes the Upamāna for the path of right knowledge as both cannot be easily traversed.[26]

(27) *Magic* (*māyā*) occurs as an Upamāna twice. Thus the tree of mundane existence is compared firstly with *magic* (*māyā*) secondly with the *water in the mirage* (*marīcyudaka*) and thirdly with the *city* of *Gandharvas* (*gandharva-nagara*) in point of being impermanent due to being associated with the qualities of appearance and disappearance.[27] (28) The worlds seen in Brahman, the highest reality are rightly compared with the *city* of *Gandharvas*, the *water in* the *mirage* as well as *magic* (*māyā*) in respect of being modifications alike and hence impermanent.[28] (29) *Houses* (*gṛha*) and the like become the standard of comparison for Prāṇa and the like in point of the inability to exist independently i.e. without being put together by some one.[29] (30) *Knots* (*granthi*) are offered as the dissimilar Upamāna for the cognitions produced by Nescience in respect of being indissoluble.[30] (31) The *Cintāmaṇi* and *Viśvarūpa-maṇi* are offered as Upamānas for Ātman in point of being really uniform in nature in spite of assuming various forms due to limiting adjuncts[31].

(32) The *jar* (*ghaṭa*) occurs as an Upamāna four times. Once *it* becomes the Upamāna for the group of the body and the senses in respect of being falsely identified with the soul in spite of being non-Ātmans.[32] (33) On one occasion, the *jar* is offered as the dissimilar Upamāna for Brahman as the former, unlike the latter, is not self-luminous

[25] I-2-18 p. 48. L. 10, 11 to p. 49 L. 4.
[26] I-3-14 p. 72. L. 9 & 10.
[27] II-3-1 p. 103. L. 6 to 8.
[28] II-3-1 p. 106. L. 5 & 6.
[29] II-2-5 p. 94. L. 4 & 5.
[30] II-3-15 p. 117. L. 10 & 11.
[31] I-2-21 p. 52. L. 2. . . 4.
[32] I-3-12 p. 69. L. 3 & 4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and hence stands in need of some illuminator.[33] (34) Effects such as the *jar* etc. (*ghaṭādi*) unable to go beyond and exist apart from their causes viz. the *clay* and the like (*mṛdādi*) form the standard of comparison for all the worlds which also are unable to go beyond and exist apart from their cause namely Brahman.[34] (35) The *jar* ever associated with their cause viz. *clay* becomes the standard of comparison for the existing world which also must be associated with some cause (i.e. the Ātman) endowed with existential character[35].

(36) *Many persons without umbrellas* being styled as possessing umbrellas due to *one with* an *umbrella* (*eka chatrin*) once occurs as an Upamāna for the Highest Soul to whom drinking or experiencing is attributed on account of his association with the Individual soul to whom it really belongs; the attribution being secondary alike in both.[36] (37) *Darkness* (*timira*) once occurs as an Upamāna for Avidyā in respect of screening the truth.[37] (38) On one other occasion, *darkness* (*tamas*) and *light* (*prakāśa*) are offered as the standard of comparison for the paths of Preyas and Śreyas in point of being diametrically opposed to each other.[38] (39) *Fire* (*agni*) permeating *wood* (*dāru*) and the like, is chosen as the Upamāna for Ātman permeating every being.[39] (40) *Starting against the current of a river* (*nadyaḥ pratisrotaḥ pravartanam*) is rightly offered as the Upamāna for realisation of the self as both speak of boldness as well as discrimination. (41) *Naciketas*[40] becomes the standard of comparision for any other person knowing Ātman in point of

[33] II-2-15 p. 102. L. 14 & 15.
[34] II-3-1 p. 106. L. 7 & 8.
[35] II-3-12 p. 115. L. 3...5.
[36] I-3-1 p. 56. L. 8 & 9.
[37] II-1-11. p. 86. L. 6.
[38] I-2-4 p. 33. L. 5 & 6.
[39] II-2-9 p. 97. L. 9....11.
[40] II-1--1 p. 76. L. 7 & 8.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

reaching the Highest alike.[41] (42) *Sleep* (*nidrā*) occurs as the Upamāna for ignorance in respect of being dreadful due to their being the source of all calamities.[42]

(43) The *earth* (*pṛthivī*) becomes the dissimilar Upamāna for Brahman as the former unlike the latter has a beginning and hence non-eternal due to being a modification all the same.[43] (44) The *extinction of a lamp* (*pradīpa-nirvāṇa*) becomes the standard of comparison for the disappearance of all bonds of ignorance in respect of perpetual non-existence.[44] The *servant* (*bhṛtya*) and the *master* (*swāmin*) become the Upamāna twice. (45) Once *servants* regularly abiding by the orders of the *master who approaches them with a strong weapon in his hand* (*vajrodyatakara*) through fear are chosen as the Upamāna for the world consisting of such luminaris as the Moon, the Sun, the stars, the constellations etc. following the orders of the Lord, their master, through fear[45]. (46) On another occasion, the *master with a strong weapon in the hand* becomes the Upamāna for Parameśvara and the *servants* regularly obeying him through fear are brought in as the standard of comparison for the able Lokapālas obeying the Highest Lord through fear.[46] (47) *Deep* and *expansive lake* (*mahāhrada*) is befittingly chosen as the Upamāna for Naciketas in respect of remaining undisturbed in spite of provocation.[47] (48) *Mother* (*mātṛ*) is offered as the suitable Upamāna for the scripture in respect of being compassionate alike; the former to her sons and the latter to its readers.[48] (49) *Ascetics* (*yatayaḥ*) turning away from all desires

[41] II-3-18 p. 120. L. 9 & 10.
[42] I-3-14 p. 72. L. 4.
[43] I-3-15 p. 73. L. 10 & 11.
[44] II-3-14 p. 117. L. 7 & 8.
[45] II-3-2 p. 106. L. 13 to p. 107. L. 5...7.
[46] II-3-3 p. 107. L. 11 & 12.
[47] I-1-25-26 p. 25. L. 14.
[48] I-3-14 p. 72. L. 6 and 7.

Ganganatha Jha Research Institute Allahabad 1943

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

(*nivṛttaiṣaṇāḥ*) become the Upamāna for the seeker (referring to himself as Aham) in respect of obtaining the bliss of the knowledge of Ātman.[49] (50) The *rope* (*rajju*) is once offered as the Upamāna for Ātman in point of really being beyond the ken of superimpositions (*Adhyāsa*) made on it by the people through wrong notions.[50] The *rope* and the *serpent* twice occur as the Upamāna.[51]

The *king* (*rājan*) is chosen as the Upamāna four times. Thus *he* is offered as the Upamāna for Ātman, (51) once in point of being the owner of a place which is different from him[52] and (52) secondly in respect of rulership.[53] (53) *Subjects* (*viśaḥ*) attending upon the *king* (*rājan*) with *offerings* (*bali*) are brought in as the standard of comparison for the vital airs and the senses attending upon Ātman with the knowledge of form and the like.[54] (54) On one occasion yet, the *King* (*pura-svāmin*) and his *citizens* (*pura-vāsin*) become the suitable Upamāna for Ātman and the airs in the body as in both the latter become helpless on the running away of the former.[55] (55) *Uplifted thunderbolt* (*udyata-vajra*) becomes the Upamāna for Brahman in respect of inspiring great fear and awe.[56] (56) The power of (the *growth of*) the Vaṭa tree (*vaṭavṛkṣa-śakti*) and the *seed* of *vaṭa* (*vaṭa-kaṇikā*) are offered as the Upamāna for the Avyakta, the root-cause of the expansive world and the Highest soul as in the case of both the former are woven warp and woof in the latter.[57] (57) Ordinary *tree* (*vṛkṣa*) is once brought in as the standard of comparison the tree

[49] II-2-14 p. 101. L. 11 & 12.
[50] II-2-11 p. 99. L. 2 & 3.
[51] See Nos. 10. and 15 above.
[52] II-2-1 p. 89. L. 5. . . . 7.
[53] II-2-1 p. 89. L. 7 & L. 9.
[54] II-2-3 p. 92. L. 6. . . . 8.
[55] II-2-4 p. 93. L. 4 & 5.
[56] II-3-2 p. 106. L. 13.
[57] I-3-11 p. 66. L. 5. . . 7 to p. 67 L. 2.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of mundane existence in respect of being non-existential in character.[58] (58) Ordinary *bridge* (*setu*) helping persons to cross the river, is appropriately chosen as the Upamāna for the Alaukika Setu i.e. the knowledge of Brahman which helps the sacrifices to cross the valley of grief.[59]

Śaṅkarācārya has fully elaborated the famous Rūpaka of Saṁsāra-vṛkṣa identified with Aśvattha tree in the last Valli of the second Adhyāya of the *Kaṭhopaniṣad*. Thus the mundane existence is identified with a huge tree; Avidyā, Kāma-karma and Avyakta with its *seeds* (*bīja*), the Highest i.e. Brahman arrived at Vedāntas with its *root-essence* (*mūlasāra*), *Hiraṇyagarbha* with its *sprout* (*aṅkura*), minute bodies of all beings with its *trunk* (*skandha*), greed with the *sprinkling of water* (*jala* or *salila-seka*) contributing its height and intelligence along with the object of sense with its *tender shoots*. Further it is rightly added by the Ācārya that the instruction in lores consisting of Śrutis, Smṛtis and Nyāya form the *leaves* (*palāśa*) of this tree, various acts such as giving food, alms as well as austerities constitute its *good fruit* (*su-puṣpa*) and pleasure, pain as well as sensation go to form the *sap* (*rasa*) of the tree. Brahmadeva and others in the seven worlds are identified with *birds* (*pakṣin*) forming their nests on this tree. Finally this elaborate Sāṅga-Rūpaka is rightly rounded off by identifying non-attachment with the weapon or the axe (śastra) with which this tree is to be uprooted.[60]

As Śaṅkarācārya was not primarily interested in similes, he is regardless of their form. This gives rise to stylistic peculiarities. Among Upamāvācakas, *vat* and *iva* are most common. The former occurs in Numbers 7, 8, 9, 11, 12, 13, 14, 17, 20, 21, 23, 30, 32, 41, 44, 45, 46, 47 and 48;

[58] II-3-1 p. 103. L. 8.
[59] I-3-2 p. 57. L. 8.
[60] II-3-1 p. 104. L. 2...10.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

while the latter is used in Nos. 2, 4, 5, 6, 10, 31, 34, 38, 39, 40, 45, 46, 53, 54, 56 and 58. The usual correlatives *yathā-tathā* occur in Nos. 15, 18 and 45 where the Upamā is elaborately expressed with the help of two complete sentences constituting the Upamāna-vākya and the Upameya-vākya. *Tathā*, the corelative of *yathā* is replaced by *tadvat* in Nos. 1 and 3; but is dropped in view of the change of the order of the Upamāna-vākya and the Upameya-vākya as in Nos. 25 and 35.—Nos. 16 and 21 are Vākyopamās; in the former the Upamāvācaka *yathā* is dropped and merely *yadvat* is used while in the latter the Vākyopamā is expressed with *vat* in the Upamāna-vākya "*āyurvai ghṛtamityādivat*'. Majority of the Upamās contain double Upamānas. No. 53 is a case of a triple Upamāna where *rājan*, *viśaḥ* and *bali* became the Upamāna for Ātman, the vital airs with senses and *rūpādi vijñāna*.

At times the Upamā is expressed in the form of a technical Dṛṣṭānta with the help of either the word *darśanāt* as in No. 19 and 33 (based on Vaidharmya) or *dṛṣṭam* as in No. 29. The Upamāna is sometimes conditioned by a restrictive attribute. Thus in Nos. 45 and 46, the Upamāna *svāmin* is conditioned by the attribute *vajrodyatakara* in order to make it correspond to Īśvara in respect of inducing activity in their subordinates out of fear. In No. 49, the Upamāna *yatayaḥ* has to be restricted with the adjective *nivṛttaiṣaṇāḥ* for the purpose of adequately understanding the Sādhāraṇa Dharma viz. obtaining bliss of the knowledge of Ātman. Similarly in No. 55, the Upamāna *vajra* is conditioned by the attribute *udyata* in order to make it suitable for the Upameya Brahman in respect of creating fear.

Many a time, Śaṅkarācārya instead of expressing the Upamā, chooses to suggest it, leaving the readers to understand the Sādhāraṇa Dharma. Consequently Upamās become varieties of Dharmaluptā. Thus in No. 24 where

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

kāka-danta-parīkṣā is offered as the Upamāna for *maraṇa-saṁbaddha praśna* asked by Naciketas in point of being purposeless, the Upama is really implied in the word *rūpa* in *kāka-danta-parīkṣā-rūpa* standing for *tulya* making the Upamā Samāsagā Ārthī. In Nos. 51 and 52 where *rājan* is offered as the Upamāna for Ātman or Brahman, the Upamā is suggested by the word *sthānīya* in the expressions '*asaṁhatarāja-sthānīyasvōmyartham*' and *rājasthānīyasya brāhmaṇaḥ*' respectively. In No. 36, the word *nyāya* in the expression *chatrinyāyena* puts the readers on the right track of the simile. In No. 44, the Upamā is expressed in a very peculiar manner. Here, Upamā occurs in the words *pradīpanirvāṇavat sarvabandhanōpaśamāt* making *pradīpa* and *sarvabandhana* the real Upamāna and Upameya. There is correspondence between *nirvāṇa* and *upaśama*. The Sādhāraṇa Dharma viz. perpetual non-existence has, therefore, to be supplied in the Upamā.

Thus, the appropriate use of words and figures of speech in Śaṅkarācārya's *Bhāṣya* on the *Kaṭhopaniṣad* have not only softened the austerity of the philosphical discussions but have also added to the *Bhāṣya* the touch and polish of a good literary artist.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

"RELIGION" AND "SCIENCE"—IN VEDĀNTIC ENSEMBLE*

By BHABES CHANDRA CHAUDHURI

PASCAL said that—as an art of the *ne plus ultra—viz.*, the Highest acme—religion has more than, perhaps, 228 definitions! Still it has something to do with science and *divine healing* is a science admitted by thinkers from the very ancient time.[1]

Christ cured the sick by spiritual medicine which may be akin to a *Divino-Motive-Faith* almost on the counter-sense of what is known as *Electro-Motive-Force* in modern science of electricity!

One however may know how electricity, by touch alone can in some cases, rejuvinate an atrophied muscle

---

* In this paper an effort has only been made to suggest that as per ethics of VEDĀNTA PHILOSOPHY—which, teaches *inter alia* viz., that TRUTH IS UNIVERSAL—SCIENCE and RELIGION are not fundamentally contradictory—but complimentary and inter-congenitally rooted in blood-streams of WORLD-HUMANISM.

Reference—(Figures in parenthesis refer to works or books of standard authors pertinent to contexts and themes dealt with in the thesis).

[1] "*Alchemy as a way of Salvation*" by Dr. F. Spiegelberg.

[2] (a) "*Rāmkṛṣna Paramahaṁsa* by Romain Rolland.

(b) "*Memories of Swāmī Vivekānanda*" by Ida Ansell.

[3] "*Occult training of the Hindus*" *and*

(a) '*Secret Doctrines* etc.' translated from Sanskrit by Ernest Wood.

(b) "*Mind : its Mysteries*" by Swāmī Śivānanda.

[4] "*The soul of the universe*" by Dr. G. Stromberg.

[5] "*The Human Mind*" by Prof. Sully.

[6] "*Laws of Manu*" translated by Sir W. Jones.

[7] "*Upaniṣads*" translated by Prof. Mahadevan.

[8] "*Perennial Philosophy*" by Prof. Huxley.

[9] "*Practical yoga Dictionary*" by Dr. Ernest Wood.

[10] "*The Modern review,*" November, 1957.

[11] "*Brain and Personality*" by Dr. W. H. Thomson, M. D.

[12] "*Adventure of Ideas*" by Dr. A. N. Whitehead.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

or revive a sinking heart. It is known, too, that Ramakṛṣṇa[2]—the saint of Dakṣiṇeśvara at Calcutta, had just by a mere gentle *touch* once sought to completely transform a *Sceptic Naren* into a full-fledged "Vivekānanda" of ever blissful divine memory!

This obviously shows that divine power helps one to aquire *Siddhi*[3] or the power of doing supernatural actions—known as *miracles*. The ascetics can, thus by acquiring *Siddhi* contrive to change the molecules of an object and convert it into gold or any other compound; can draw their supply from the cosmic source, either and create any kind of thing—So observes the Indian adepts in Yoga.[3] For instance, it is said that Queen Chudâlâi performed "miracles" by moving freely above the ground and in the sky; Śaṅkara did many hair-raising miracles: he is said to have drunk molten lead and passed into the body of a king—an art in Yoga, called *Parakāya-Praveśa*, meaning "the art of entering into the body of another." Sadāśiva Brāhmaṇa—another great Yogin could show him off in different places in the same time; once he was buried underneath the bank of the Kāverī river in south India for some months! His hand was cut, and he brought again the full hand.

Indeed, there are countless people in the world today, who may bear witness to this truth: that there is a divine law—a Force of Universal Good[4]—which needs as much attention for reciprocal benefit as either the scientist or the theologian may earnestly be in quest of, just to achieve the individual end and purpose in life. There is an inexhaustible fund of energy or power for good within every thing—which Religion does seek to recognize as God within the person as person, as Science[4] tries to interpret as *Flux of Force*, that sustains the spontaneous radiation-cycle, in an endless chain-reaction of all *fissionable* matter. And, as in the case of former, so in the case of

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

latter—through proper recognition and direction one may use such potential Power to bring immense good into the individual existence of both, *viz*, that of Religion as well as Science.

There are thus, different ways of using this good agency[3].

The psychiatrist employs say, this power by using some medicines to heal conditions, which a patient may suffer from; but an equal remedy a spiritualist, too, might effect of this malady with what is just, called the charm of a *Faith-Cure*[5].

And, no wonder, Religion in India, as per her Law-giver Manu—becomes a synonym for rigid performance of a *decalogue* of virtues[6], that is : *dhṛti* (unfailing affinity); '*Kṣamā* (mercy); *dama* (control over breath); '*asteya*' (dispassion); '*Śauca*' (purity); *indriya-nigraha* (self-restraint); *dhī* (intellect); *Vidyā* (learning); *satya* (truth); *akrodha* (non-anger)—just as *per contra*, the Romans in European Renaissance days sought too, to stabilize it on Seven Pillars of Cardinal Virtues, e.g., Faith; Hope; Charity; Prudence; Justice; Temperance and Fortitude!

Scientific pursuits, too, are more or less based on a like chain of concepts summed up or strung together in their virtual contexts! That is, if one should say, *viz*, that : Faith, Hope and Charity constitute the three basic items of the above "cardinal virtues," which make for "Religion" then, can't it likewise be, also inferred therefrom in the key that—the precise objective-study of science in so far as it relates to the applied branches, say, like that of medicine, psychiatry or psycho-therapy—rests likewise on essential elements of scientific-approach broad-based on what may, as well be called in technical phrase, e.g. 'Diagnosis', 'Prognosis' and 'Treatment'?

For, what is *Diagnosis* after all—than what one may but incline rationally at best—to believe in? Is n't it truly

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

then, *Faith*, at bottom? Similarly, *Prognosis* is something that one may expect to look for—what he should reasonably anticipate beforehand! Is it not, then, akin to—*Hope*?

Thirdly, of course, comes up as logical consequence of these two—what one understands by *Treatment*—which is surely nothing, if not, a *Charity* in truest sense of letter and spirit? Is not then the ethics of human welfare that postulates the foundation of Religion—co-eval with that of *Science* as viewed *mutatis mutandis*? Indeed, there is seldom at bottom—any difference between the two: call Science your *Religion* and you become a votary of Einstein, Edison or Marconi: whose only *Faith* was in the universal good of mankind!

Call *Religion*, again, your *Science* and, what wonder you transform yourself as the follower of Luther, Emerson, Buddha, Rāmakṛṣṇa or Christ.... men who equally lived and died by pinning their undying 'Faith' in good-weal of mankind, likewise!

Viewed humanistically, thus, into their fundamentals: don't we notice, however, that they are but, essentially, differences in names—as judged by their avowed ends and purposes which can only be equally realized by practising Faith, Hope and Charity in their real sense in all objective pursuits of Life?

The conviction of ignorance is about the first key that, according to the *Upaniṣads*,[7] unlocks the portal of nescience (*avidyā*) towards the Way of Wisdom—leading to Self-Realization.

To quote the text from the "*Iśāvāsya Upaniṣad* as a case in point, *viz.*—

Yasmin sarvāṇi bhūtāni
Ātmā eva abhūdbijānataḥ
Tatra ko mohaḥ kaḥ śokaḥ
Ekatvam anupaśyataḥ

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

That is: *Where* to one who knows, all beings are verily identical with one's own self, *there* what delusion and what sorrow can be to him who has seen the identity ?

Judged from *ordinary* stand-point, of course, we find most of us—are almost far from such endowment of Self-Realization ! And what are we ? A Darwin or Huxley is of opinion, viz, at one time you and I were nothing—but a simple microscopic speck of life ! The high personality like Emerson or Gandhi was also in a similar stage ! And so many cells have been added to that microscopic speck of life which Science calls the fertilised ova—a fact which can only be observed in a microscope.

Besides—there is what the Science, again, calls—chromosomes. Between the former and the latter i.e., the microscopic speck of life—called the fertilised ova, the difference that exists seems to be as widely appalling as that between an elephant and the Himālayas; if the fertilised ova—so to say, is of a Himālayan size, the chromosome approximates to that of an elephant !

You might know, now—after what Science tells—that it is not from the microscopic speck of life that the Homo Sapiens have developed : but from those chromosomes[8] ! That way : the *Ātman* (Soul) which, as per Religion of the *Upaniṣads*[9] seems to be the only *subtle Ultimate Reality* whence all things emerge, viz, to quote from the texts of the Upaniṣad—"Ātmanaḥ Ākāśaḥ sambhūtaḥ, ākāśāt vāyuḥ, vāyoragniḥ, agnerāpaḥ, adbhyaḥ pṛthivī" —that is, out of the *Soul*, emerge space; from space air; from air fire; from fire water; from water earth issue forth ! In the *Kaṭhopaniṣad*[7] one may also, come across a like attribution of this Reality of *Ātman viz.*,—

Agniryathaiko bhuvanaṁ praviṣṭo
Rūpaṁ rūpaṁ pratirūpo babhūva

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Ekastathā sarvabhūtāntarātmā
Rūpaṁ rūpaṁ pratirūpo bahiśca."

That is, "As 'Agni' (Fire) takes different hues of flames by entering the object it burns, so does One Soul becomes, also, many and varied by entering the body of all objects of creation" !

What is the inner philosophy behind Religion ? The primeval man as he stood awe-struck before the sun, the moon and heavenly luminaries—like that in the Icelandic Edda—felt atonce rather intuitively transported to a world of divine power and, not only hastened to sing the enchanted *songs of odin's corpse* but, likewise too, felt infinitely exhilarated himself by reciting hymns in profound adoration of Celestial Power ! This was surely not nature—worship as commonly understood —a veneration of material body of the Sun or the like ! Rather, it was a spontaneous rapture of heart in thanks—not alone, for the life-giving warmth of energy, but in reverent homage to a Divinity believed to animate the physical orb, and to have a benignant influence on the soul of man.

The early Chistians, for instance, like the Sages of the VEDAS—well recognized the specific value of such solar hymns such as is testified to by the underlying hymn to the "CHRIST SUN"—in the West, *viz* :—

"O Thou, Real Sun, in fill us,
Shining with perpetual light
Splendour of the holy Spirit
Pervade our minds" !

A counter-part of this, we also find in the following verse, *viz*, *Gāyatrī*, of the Vedas :

Oṁ Bhūrbhuvaḥ swaḥ tat savitur Vareṇyaṁ Bhargo devasya dhīmahi dhiyo yo naḥ Pracodayāt, Oṁ !

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

That is :

"Earth ! Midworld !! Heaven !!!
That excellent splendour of
the Divine Sun, we meditate
upon,
May it illumine our heart,
Om !"

Thus, the primeval man's basic concept of philosophy lay around the infinite majesty and grace of the subtleties of natural phenomena ! Then came in the Scientist. He found out astronomical laws with predictable results and merely stated what philosophy has long ago—sought to declare in poetic languages of the Hymns, Prayers and Psalms ! The science has lately discovered the wonderful *actinic* properties of solar energy , in as much as—sunlight as a healing agent of countless diseases, namely, leprosy, tuberculosis, rheumatism, obesity, anaemia, neurasthenia, eczema, colds, coughs, rickets, caries in tooth etc.—has been definitely well established and there has been an increasing rage in recent times for "SUN-BATH" hunters—particularly, in the West. Hence, it appears : what Religion describes as *divine*, *viz*., *God Ra*, *Edda*, *Apollo* or *Missr* in varying languages of the globe—Science, too, characterises that in a technical sense only as. . . *actinic*, that is, both acknowledging their common *universal identity* in the art of *healing*—be it of MIND, Body or both![4] Next, Science, we know, has to deal with death and birth—particulary by its applied branch of medicine; but for all this can it definitely say that, *birth is the beginning and death is the end* ? And that *life is between the two* ? Surely not ! Well, one may say : my birthday is 4th July 1955—a day on which your parent calls you to have been born ! But, science tells that you must have been born certainly nine months and some odd days before ! Still, were you, to ask all seriously—born *then* ? Perhaps no ! And why ? Science

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

explains that like this : The sperm of your parent fertilised the ovum of your mother—and that day must you have been born! Is that really so? No—again, says the Science! That sperm must have been living! So, it comes to this : its birth was really a change of life from this sperm and the life came over to the ovum which ovum must have been living at the time the conception took place! So, *when* were you precisely born, pray? Your birth must have taken place in your parent's sperm and your mother's ovum. They were born in a very similar cycle! Therefore, are you not viewed remotely—and speaking figuratively, sprung like the fabled VENUS—from the *cosmic ocean* of ETERNITY?[1] Can Science then probe into this veil of mystery—to reveal the Truth? Similarly, on the debit side of Life—*viz*, Death. Can you say that *we are really dying*? Perhaps not—says the Science—because, it appears some part of life is transmitted everlastingly that keeps on renewing life! Look at an amoeba—a uni-cellular animal. That amoeba—as Science tells you—procreates itself; propagates itself, merely by the body of the amoeba itself being divided into two. One amoeba who is the parent amoeba splits itself into two daughter cells; the parent amoeba—it is said—does not die—but lives in the two daughter cells. So, where do you get 'death'? As per Science then, we find that there is no *physical death*! There is no 'corpse' of the amoeba? No, says the Science it has none of the sort—because amoeba is a uni-cellular animal that never dies![5]

Religion calls God as 'Omnipotent' and 'Eternal' as per *paripūrṇam* in Sanskrit and that HE is *always existing*! Is not then, amoeba, viewed from same logic—very near HIM in this particular respect? Coming to higher life—what happens is this. In the case of amoeba having one cell only—that has to take food for itself, for growth and exhibit the various manifestations of life. Some of us

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

traders; some—are doctors, some are lawyers and so on. Some are there to uplift us.

But, in one cell—that one cell only can uplift: one cell can only breathe in the whole cell, and one cell can only reproduce because there is no *second* cell! There is again no cell to die—if that cell reproduces! In our case—viz.—that of the Homo Sapiens, of course, that function of reproduction is taken up by one particular cell which we call the sperm in male and ovum in female.[1]

Other cells are not—as Science suggests—required for reproduction—so they can die. That is the death of the *cell* only but surely not the death of 'ĀTMAN' or Soul! For can Science confirm yet the mortality of the Soul?

Therefore, it comes to this that both Science and Religion equally hold that we had no beginning and that we are not again going surely—to have an end in the real sense of an end.[8]

This brings one on to the modern concept of what is known as astro-cosmic Science—which comprehends, *inter alia* that astro-cosmic bodies do not die: i.e, only the physical bodies die. That is, the astro-cosmic bodies remain—living in the sun. Some other cells which die, must have queer *subtle existence* and, perhaps be *reborn* somewhere else! Does this fact provide a plausible reason for 're-birth'? Some at present do not believe in rebirth. But, that is no proof in support of its non-existence, to be sure!

If it is a fact that "gravitation law" *was*, *is* and *shall be*, in the universe, quite independently of Newton or Einstein's discovery thereof—similarly, the doctrine of the "transmigration of soul" might as well be a scientific fact, notwithstanding an absence of positive discovery thereof—all these thousand years *viz.*, since such an idea took shape in human mind?[3]

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Religion—particularly the Upaniṣads, then, (of the Eastern School of Philosophy)—postulates rebirth, evolution and self-realisation.—a fact which almost agrees with modern researches of Science, specially in Genetics, Medicine and astro-cosmics. Therefore, on such an analogy—cannot Science and Religion, as well be expected to meet together?

Again, we know that iron is a metal : obviously, it has then *no life*; medicine has likewise nothing to do with it—because it has no life, birth or death as a living being possesses.[8] But still it has what is called a therapeutic use and *healing* effect on life. Its further reaction to magnet is, also important and self-revealing! Are not its attraction and repulsion towards a pole of the magnet—humanly judged—akin to our mood of love and care or mood of hatred and tedium? The very fact that minerals exert what is called "Bio-chemic effect" may, speaking in an analogous philosophic view—well suggest the view, also, that they too have *life*! Poets like Homer, Kālidāsa or Whitman; thinkers like Democritus or Paracelsus; dramatists like Sophocles or Shakespeare etc.—have almost significantly hinted, since the dawn of Intellect on this planet—that "plants have life"! But, did Science for all that admit that truth say, even before 1899—the year when Sir J. C. Bose proved it with his self invented instrument, "crescograph," before Lord Kelvin in London, to the evident delectation of a rather fully awakened *sceptic* world[10]!

Thus, it is *proved* that plants have life! So, is it not possible too, that what we call 'mineral' might be endowed with similar life—albeit an animation in quiescence line that of some sporophytes?

It is known, however, that Paracelsus—a German Philosopher—naturalist was the first to state in the sixteenth century that the four cardinal elements which sustain Life, namely, *Air*; *Water*; *Earth*; and *Fire* are dominated by four

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

elemental spirits, namely *Sylph*; *Nymph*; *Gnome*; *Salamander*—as per mythological deities, viz. Mercury; Neptune; Atlas; Vulcan or the like, in corresponding Eastern legends of gods and goddesses. But the philosophy of Eastern Religion comprehends in the Vedas, the Upaniṣads or in the *Gītā* that life—'divine-life' is there in *everything*, viz., to quote a relevant line from the Upaniṣad :

Eko Devaḥ sarva-bhūteṣu Gūḍhaḥ" i.e. "He (Lord God) is the one-indweller in all beings and things."

Science, as we know, clearly demonstrates that the life in lower grades is of a different nature from that in the higher grades—as measured by their susceptibility to stimulus : the lower grades of life in metals or minerals possibly requires greater stimulus on a comparative scale, so that they might respond—such as is evidenced during volcanic outburst of energy; while higher grades of life, requires a proportionately smaller stimulus for the same purpose.[11]

Again, among 'animates'—animals need greater stimulus than men; while it is interesting that among Homo Sapiens there are grades and grades of human species and, they all require different stimulus for being emotionally or intellectually roused up to a certain definite goal or activity. Jesus, Buddha, St. Francis, Plato, Ramakṛṣṇa, Emerson and lots of such *ultra-sensitive Souls* who have verily glorified Life and its progress on this planet since dawn of civilisation—manifestly establish the existence of a like super-grade *Order* of *Divine Life* to which the ordinary common people may appear to be equally as dead in susceptibility to response, as that displayed often by a freshly hewn inert log or dry wood to "*Electro-cardiograph*!

This then unmistakably justifies why there need be Religion : whose object should be to postulate and to demonstrate by various scientific approaches to its inner philosophies—that divinity is latent in everything—the *Great Mind* of God—the *Brahman* or Ātman—to which

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

everybody has access—just to have a deep dip into His Divine Nature—if one would only follow His prophecies uttered in various Holy Books like the Bible; the *Gītā*; the Korān, etc. etc. of the world.

Emerson mentions the core of such divine unity when he writes in *Self-Reliance* :—

> There is one mind common to all individual men what Plato has thought, he may think what a saint has felt, he may feel, what at any time has befallen any man he can understand.

"Who hath access to this universal mind is party to all that is or can be done, for this is the only and sovereign agent." Religion as expounded in the Upaniṣad or the *Bible* definitely establishes then, that there is a *divine agency* whence all things either emerge from or return to, viz., the *Ultimate Essence* i.e., *Tat Jalānīti*" in the invisible and subjective world and outward forms and conditions. That is, it is the witness to everything; it is every where i.e. "*Sākṣī Cetā; Sarvaṁ kiṁ Avyaktaṁ*"; ever ready and willing to respond to all creative impulses of a rational mind!

Viewed *mutatis mutandis* however, do we not come across similar prophetic lines in the *Bible* : ". . . . the Lord, is in the midst of thee : thou shall not see evil any more"*? or, as in the line : "Behold, I will do a new thing; now it shall spring forth. . .†"

Again, the *Bible* says : "As a man thinketh in his *heart*, so is he." What is this thing called : "*thinking* in one's *heart*", as distinguished from "*thinking* with ones *head*" ?

Does this not then, significantly connote and symbolise the fact that Religion—for *faith* in heart and Science—for *reason* in head complement each other in the unrestricted pursuit of the Highest Good in one case and God in the other ?

---

* "*Zephaniah* 3 : 15.

† '*Isiah*' 43 : 19.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Science and Religion are not then, antagonistic to each other—but it is their canker of fanaticism only, which often renders each to be too much in self-love to consider other's views! And, so a great thinker, like A. N. Whitehead comments, incidentally: "It is the *dogma* that destroys TRUTH"![12]

Thus, be he a Millikan with his "Cosmic Rays"; an *Einstein* with his "*unified field theory*" or "RELATIVITY". a *Dean Inge*; *spengler or schweitzer* with a radiant faith in a divine order—it is evident, therefore, that the world is in a cyclical epoch of Progress when a certain attitude of humanism—a trifle sublimer in the scale of evolution than Mind—is just about to take shape, by degrees, on such a round of experience! And the striking thing to bear in mind—is that man is, now, too ill-equipped to penetrate the veil of the Divine Mystery just to take a dip in its Fount of Bliss. That is where some of the modern psychologists have halted, because they have realised, eventually the fact, that they are confined by their own narrow limitations to handle all ills, handicaps and problems in life—for an effective solution thereof.

Somehow, perhaps they have to grasp a larger picture—that that *element* in man which is using the entire human vessel is something more than ultra-cosmic!

Is it not then, really evident that a balanced combination of the active principles of the 'Divine', 'Spiritual' and 'Human'—the triple constituent elements of both Science and Religion—when evenly titrated with 'Hope'; 'Faith and Charity' would only contrive Humanity to have an access to that *divine healing therapy of* all its ills which—neither a mortal Doctor nor a Theologian alone could effectively cure for good and ever?

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

SCIENCE OF GEOGRAPHY IN THE ṚGVEDA

By Śrī Māyā Prasad Trīpaṭhī

Apart from its religious importance, the *Ṛgveda* possesses extraordinary value as a mine of scientific data and cultural facts for the spade worker attempting to unravel the mysteries and flashlight the fascination of the hoary past. There has been a long, reputed and satisfactory world-wide tradition for the study and investigation of the *Ṛgveda* from the beginning of the modern era, even if we leave aside the indigenous scholars, commentators and annotators of the ancient and mediaval age. The aforesaid tradition has studied the *Ṛgveda* from various points of views—historical, literary, cultural, religious, philosophical, political and economic. But none of the scholars has attempted to study the state of science of geography in this eternal literary masterpiece. Even if somebody has attempted in this direction, his endeavour has been confined merely to the investigation of names of places, countries, rivers and mountains and identification of these. Those dissertations make no attempt at all to study the geographical knowledge or science of geography in the sacred tome. It is for the simple reason that geography is an infant science in the world and still more a tender new-born babe in India. Western scholars have made commendable strides in studying the past of the science of geography in various countries of occident and Levant—Greece, Egypt, Babylonia and others. But this very important branch of knowledge remains almost untouched in India. Hence, the present author begins at the beginning in this direction and intends to cover the vast vista up to the milestone of the present century in due course.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

For making the investigation and presentation scientific, methodical and systematic, the entire subject matter would be divided under following sub-heads.

(1) Cosmology, cosmogony and cosmography. (2) Astronomical Geography. (3) The earth—its motion, rotundity, interior, geology, solidification, earthquake, volcanoes and other terrestrial phenomena. (4) Physiography, geomorphology, mountains, rivers, deserts and other allied topics. (5) Climatology, meteorology, rainfall and other aspects. (6) Oceans, oceanography—waves, currents, tides, ocean resources and maritime activities. (7) Countries known, economic and commercial geography (Agriculture, canals, minerals, trade and industry). Urban geography. (8) Early concepts of ethnology and anthropology. (9) Survey work, card measurements and diagram making.

1

The mystery of the origin of the universe has ever been a riddle to human mind and it still continues to be so. To the Ṛgvedic Āryans also it was a great enigma. Towards this the *Ṛgveda* made beautiful poetic approaches of interrogation and paradoxes[1] and at several places has attempted to provide descriptive guesses on scientific lines.

The first explanation of the formation of the universe is given to be that it was created like a building—a miraculous feat of engineering[2] or, in other words, it is "the result of the mechanical production, the work of carpenter and joiner's skill." This concept very favourably compares with the nineteenth century speculation of science (led by Helmholtz. Lord Kelvin, Maxwell and others).[2a]

The other Ṛgvedic theory represents it to be the result of the natural generation.

[1] X. 129. 6-7; X. 72. 3-4; X. 81-2-4.

[2] II. 15.3 and others—vide Wallis *The cosmogony of the Ṛgveda.*

[2a] J. Jeans—*The mysterious Universe.*

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

In connection with the Ṛgvedic cosmogony the hymns 72, 82, 121, 129 and 190 of the tenth maṇḍala are most important. In two hymns the origin of the universe is postulated to be a kind of evolution of the existent (सत्) from the non-existent (असत्)[3]. The hymn 190 states that from heat was produced order (Ṛta) : then night, the ocean, the year; the creator (धाता) produced in succession the sun and the moon, heaven and earth, air and ether. In the former evolutionary speculation, the anticipation of Darwin's Theory of Evolution can very legitimately be sought and recognised. As regards the latter statement of heat and the like, it can be observed that modern physics also attempts to reduce the entire universal phenomena to electricity—a form of heat[4].

The two mantras X. 82.1 and X. 121.1 represent the creation to have started with the origin of water and the cosmic golden egg (embryo) (हिरण्यगर्भ) which very well fits in the geological and biological evolution of the earth with the water age, origin of Zoophytes, primeval fishes, reptiles, invertebrate, vertebrate and mammals.

H. W. Wallis[5] says—"The origin of the world was, therefore, held to have been due to a primeval sunrise or primeval thunderstorm". It very discernably smacks of the nebular storm of the modern theories of cosmogony[6].

The same author further observes "We find mention in one hymn of a primordial substance or unit out of which the universe was developed."[7]

The modern ideas of primordial gaseous, nebular storm and attraction and collision of immense stars and genesis of bodies in the universe can further be read in the following lines :—

[3] X. 72. 2—3; X. 129.4.
[4] J. Jeans, p. 69.
[5] p. 56.
[6] Wooldridge and Morgan.
[7] I. 164.6—46 ; X. 82.6.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

"When Yee, O gods, stood firmly embracing one another in the formless depth, thence there arose from your feet a thickening volume of dust as from dancers."[8]

"Apparently, the Aśvins stirred up the dust, which formed heaven and earth, and gods were so pleased with the production that they wished to have them in solid masses."[9] This also indicates that solidification of the earth and the like took at a later period.

Extolling the cosmogonic and cosmological ideas of the *Ṛgveda* Wallis says—

> It is a not infrequent occurrence that a whole complex of the modern ideas finds its most happy and appropriate expression in an old term, or a proper name or attribute or in the words of an ancient saying."[10]

In this domain, the later Vedas and Brāhmaṇas could not always improve upon the *Ṛgveda*, rather are at places inferior to it. Wallis observes, "The cosmological guesses string together in the other Vedic collections, and even in the Brāhmaṇas, occasionally bear a more primitive character than those in the *Ṛgveda*".

2

The *Ṛgveda* furnishes considerable information about the astronomical geography. Astronomical observations and their correlation with earthly phenomena had started earlier than the *Ṛgveda*. H. H. Wilson says[11]—"The Aṅgirasas, as we have before seen, appear to have been among the ancient astronomers, the inventors of the lunar asterisms (नक्षत्र)". The Ṛgvedic Āryans knew that the sun was the distributor of time and space.[12] They had also

8. X. 72.6.
9. Vide sense of X. 24. 4-5. Wallis—p. 43.
10. p. 90.
11. See Vol. vi, p. 354.
12. I. 95.3.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the clear cut idea of one and only one sun.[13] The verse III. 31.17 says that the cause of the night and the day is the sun. In I. 164. 3 the Ayana-solstice[14] season, month, fortnight, day, night and hour are indicated as the seven portions of the year.[15] Explaining I. 155. 6 Prof. Wilson observes (in notes) about the reference "ninetyfour" "Ninety and four periodical revolutions—Viṣṇu is here identified with Time comprising ninety four periods—the year, two solstices, five seasons, twelve months, twentyfour half months, thirty days, eight watches and twelve zodaic signs." Commenting on I. 164. 11 Sāyaṇa also says that twelve zodaic signs were known to the *Ṛgveda*.[16] M. Mollien confirms Sāyaṇa's statement. Sāyaṇa's comment on X. 56. 5 further details the Ṛgvedic astronomical knowledge "having subdivided the planets, lunar asterisms etc." The hymn I. 25. 8 shows the concurrent uses of lunar and solar years. This, II. 40. 3 and I. 164. 15 also point to the intercalary months. On the basis of VII. 103. 9 Jacobi says that in the Vedic times the year began in rainy season, while some recognise the beginning of year with Hemanta,[17] but it does not appear to be quite appropriate. From the hymn X. 85. 13 it can be inferred that the Ṛgvedic Āryans also paid attention to the motion of the moon and I. 84. 15 most unequivocally expresses that the moon is illuminated only by the sun's light.

In I. 24. 10 we find a mention of the Great Bear or Saptarṣi-maṇḍala. The *Ṛgveda* also recognises fourteen Bhuvanas[18], six lokas[19] and seven lokas.[20]

---

13. *Vālakhilya*, VIII. 10. 2.
14. VI. 32.5 refers to winter solstice.
15. Wilson notes, p. 268.
16. M. Mollien—*Memoirs de l' Academic des inscriptions, premiere serie*, Vol. 3.
17. VI. 10. 7.
18. X. 114. 7.
19. I. 164. 6.
20. VII. 18. 24.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The Ṛgvedic Āryans definitely knew about the occurrence of eclipses.[21] Ludwig goes to the length of saying that they even knew the theory of eclipse also, but Whitney has contradicted the statement.[22]

Mutual attraction of heavenly bodies and gravitation are referred to in X. 85. 1 and X. 149. 1. The sky is said to be rafterless[23] and so on and that it never falls is a source of great wonder.[24]

There are several other hymns which refer to some astronomical facts, but they are not quite clear to us—the full and real meaning of those references are not known to us, for example, X. 85. 16.

"We have also knowledge of. . . computation of the divisions of time to a minute extent. . . . ".[25]

3

The Ṛgvedic interrogator inquisitively and very aptly asks the relevant questions of Geography—[26]

"I ask thee, (Institutor of the rite), what is the utter-most end of the earth. I ask thee where is the navel of the world. I ask thee, what is the fecundating power of the rain-shedding steed...!"

But the institutor of rites fails to give right answer to such a question and takes him into the jungle of ritualistic facts.

However, a few scattered lines of hymns provide various geographic informations which are given below. In X 81. 1 the earth is visualised as a fiery ball in some distant past. I. 59. 2 states that Agni (fire) is the navel (core) of the earth. The *Ṛgveda*, VII. 4. 5 also says of "the earth containing Agni (fire)". The lines II. 12. 2 speak of "making the earth firm", "tranquillising mountains" and consolidating

---

[21] V. 40. 5 to 9.
[22] *Vedic Index*, Vol. II—p. 466.
[23] II. 15.2.
[24] V. 29. 4 and VI. 17.7.
[25] Vol. II, *Introduction*, p. XI-Wilson X. 189.3.
[26] I. 164.34.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the heaven." In X. 121. 4-5 we find a reference to the solidification of the earth having oceans. These three verses perhaps point to the idea that the earth initially was in a "molten state" or in such state which might have been gaseous or liquid, but not solid.

Spherical concept of the earth is expressed in III. 55. 20; and X. 89. 4; I. 33. 8 unambiguously asserts of the circularity of the earth and gradual arrival of the sun's rays on it as shown in IV. 53. 3 can only be true, if it is accepted that here the earth is presumed to be spherical. Of course, this latter meaning is derived, if we explain "निवेशयन् प्रसुवन्नक्तुभिर्जगत्" in the way in which Jyotiṣācārya Pt. Girijā Prasad Dvivedi, the Hindi commentator of the *Siddhānta-Śiromaṇi*, has done. It must be borne in mind that his explanation of निवेशयन् as gradual arrival is fully justified by Sanskrit Lexicons.*

In several verses the earth is said to have a past circular motion, for example, V. 30. 8. Mantras I. 37. 7-8 definitely refer to the phenomena of earthquake and Marut is said to be its cause. This is further confirmed by the continuation of the idea in the near about dates of the Christian era when Uśanas opined—

चत्वारीमानि भूतानि कम्पयन्ति वसुन्धराम् ।
आपः शचीपतिश्चैव हव्यवाह : प्रभञ्जन : ।।[27]

The verse VIII. 20. 5 corroborates the same fact. It cannot be said with certitude whether the *Ṛgveda* knew of the volcanoes, but there is an allusion about the association of Agni (fire) and mountains, so it has been said—"Agni, the upholder of mountains."[28] In the two verses[29] fire is said to be the devastator of cities. But it cannot be surmised with certainty that it points to volcanic erruption.

---

*Śankara Balakṛṣṇa Dīkṣita also derives the same meaning of these verses—Hindi Translation of his *Bhāratīya Jyotiṣa Śāstra* p. 31.

[27] Quoted in Vallālasena's *Adbhutasāgara*, p. 383.

[28] vii. 6.2. [29] vii. 6. 1-2.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

4

The "*Vedic Mythology*" by A. A. Macdonell outlines the Physiography poetically described in the *Ṛgveda* in the following lines :—

"According to the *Ṛgveda*, she (the earth) abounds in heights, bears the burden of the mountains, and supports the trees of the forest in the ground (क्ष्मा). She quickens the soil, for she scatters rain, and the showers of heaven are shed from the lightning of her clouds. She is great (महो), firm (दृढ़) and shining (अर्जुनी)."[30]

Besides a large number of rivers, lakes and waterfalls[31], deserts[32], snow-clad mountains[33], mountainous fringes or table lands[34] and shelving banks of the Gaṅgā[35] are the other topographic features mentioned in the *Ṛgveda*. Vigorous erosion by the river Saraswatī is alluded to in VI. 61. 2. The whole hymn VI. 61 gives the description of river banks. Perhaps the Ṛgvedic Āryans had the concept of knowing slopes also by rivers as indicated in IX. 88. 6.

It is not known why mountains were called 'the maintainer of balance of the earth' (भूधर) and said to be moving from place to place in a very great antiquity in the Indian mythologies, but then two assertions are found in the *Ṛgveda* initially. If we try to interpret them scientifically (remembering that several natural, geographical and meteorological phenomena in the *Ṛgveda* are represented figuratively and symbolically) as "Bergaigne interprets the frogs as meteorological phenomena"[36], we can see in the aforesaid statements a glimpse of the theory of Isostasy[37] and a conception

[30] p. 88.
[31] VIII. 7.10.
[32] V. 83. 10; VI. 62.2 and others.
[33] X. 121. 4-5.
[34] Wilson's version. VIII. 85.2.
[35] VI. 45.31.
[36] *Vedic mythology*, p. 151.
[37] VII. 99.3.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of continental drift, Zwischengebirge[38] and orogenetic processes.[39] Even without any mythological colouring, the plain words of the two statements signify the same thing.

5

The Ṛgvedic Āryans had keenly and carefully demarcated the various seasons and divided the whole year into six such divisions.[40] Three such bigger divisions—hot, wet and cold are also recognized in I. 164. 48. The sun was clearly known as the determinant of seasons.[41]

Radiation, convection current and rainfall as their effect are described in the *Ṛgveda*[42] also say that the rays of the sun are the cause of rains, the verse 12 shows that clouds are constituted of various elements. Insolation, evaporation, moisture, clouds and rainfall are referred to in I. 141. 2 as explained by Sāyaṇa. Instrumentality of winds in the causation of rainfall[43] and their relationship with clouds can be easily seen in I. 19.7-8. The Mantras I. 38. 7 reveal how the moisture-laden winds bring some scanty rainfall in desert regions also.

In two Mantras[44] there are references to sixty-three and forty-nine types of winds respectively, their climatological and meteorological implications are still unravelled and they are mostly treated as merely mythologies. No clear-cut mention of the Monsoon is to be found in the *Ṛgveda*, but Marut hymns give its quite good and satisfactory description, of course; monsoon is clearly referred to in the later period in the *Atharva Veda as* सलिलवात[45].

[38] II. 17.5.
[39] *Processes of mountain building*—Wooldridge and Morgan.
[40] I. 23. 15; II. 40.3.
[41] I. 95.3; I. 164.15.
[42] Vide I. 164. 47. Verses VII. 70.2 and I 161. 11-12.
[43] I. 19. 3-4; I. 165-1; V. 57; I. 38; V. 53; VIII. 7.
[44] VII. 85.8 and V. 52.17.
[45] *Cf. Vedic Index.*

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

It will, however, not be totally unreasonable, if the south-east and southwest monsoon are traced in the *Ṛgveda*[46] where there is also a better reference to rain-bearing winds. The Mantra VIII. 7.14 describes the winds ascending mountains.

Very scientific description of clouds is found in II. 24. 4 "stonelike, solid, downhanging and waterladen." In a verse[47] Macdonell explains the word "मिह" to mean mist, which cannot be differed easily if we see the context, though at other places मिह signifies rainfall. Violent gale in the *Ṛgveda* has been named धाजी.[48]

The verse I. 173. 6 states that the atmosphere encompasses the earth. The solar phenomena are associated with the vault of the sky or heaven, while lightning, rain and wind are referred to as occurring in the atmosphere, but it is doubtful whether the *Ṛgveda* knew exactly the limit or the vertical height of the atmosphere. Mantra V. 60.6 divides the atmosphere into three regions, in this connection a very pertinent question occurs to mind whether they denote troposphere, stratasphere and Ionosphere? On the basis of mantras[49], Wallis observes.

"According to a common idiom of the *Ṛgveda* the three—heaven, earth and air—may be denoted by any one of the three names; they are even all mentioned together as the three earths, the three heavens and the three airs."

For the three airs the aforesaid surmise (troposphere, stratosphere and ionosphere) has been advanced. Again, in the triple division of the earth, are we entitled to identify frigid, temperate and torrid zone, for different schools regarding Āryan home do recognise the Ṛgvedic Āryans' knowledge about frigid and temperate zone and just possible in course of their ocean voyages and advances for habitat

[46] X. 137.2. I. 19.7.

[47] *Vedic mythology*—VIII. 7.4.

[48] *Vedic Index* Vol. I. p. 405.

[49] I. 34; III. 56; I. 108.9-10 and V. 60.6, and others.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

they might have known torrid zone also. But it is not possible to say anything conclusively on this point in face of different and frequently discordant interpretation and real obscurity of the hymns.

The *Ṛgveda* clearly asserts that the atmosphere contains dust particles and moisture or humidity.[50]

6

It must be admitted beyond controversy that the *Ṛgveda* had definite knowledge of oceans and its several routes, ocean navigation and ocean trade as is evinced by I. 25. 7; I. 182. 5-6-7 and I. 56. 2 respectively, of 'hundred oared ships'[51] further establishes this assertion. The Ṛgvedic people were also acquainted with the wealth of oceans.[52] They had good trade with Babylonia about the time of the composition of the *Ṛgveda* (if it is accepted that it was composed near about 3000 B. C.) as has been shown by Dr. A. S. Altekar in his dissertation "*Ancient towns and cities in Gujarat and Kathiawar.*"

But it cannot be said with certainty how many oceans were known at that time. Mantra X. 136. 5 mentions two oceans, namely, the eastern and western, whereas IX. 33. 6 and X. 47. 2 speak of four oceans. In X. 90. 15 there are mentioned seven oceans as explained by Mahidhara and "adopted by Persians."[53] This mention of seven oceans does not appear to be wholly inconsistent when we look through the vista of later geographic conception of the Hindus.

Ocean waves are referred to in IX. 50. 1 and wind is recognised as one of the causes of ocean water movements.[54] Perhaps IX. 97. 40 very faintly alludes to tide and lunar attraction.

[50] Vide *Wallis*. p. 113.
[51] I. 116.5.
[52] IX. 33.6.
[53] As translated by Der Perron.
[54] I. 19. 7-8.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The phenomena of ocean-fire is repeatedly mentioned in the *Ṛgveda*[55] and also in later Sanskrit literature, but it cannot be said what geological or oceanographic phenomena it actually implies. At last in the *Ṛgveda* it does not conclusively indicate the existence of volcanoes under ocean waters, inasmuch as the book does not appear to have any knowledge of volcanoes except a faint reference.

7

Mantra I. 35. 8 gives a glimpse of the regional geography and states that there are eight mountains, three continents. . . . I. 121. 13 speaking of ninety rivers signifies some vast region. In VI. 47. 20 we read of a country which was devoid of cows, a geographic and economic criterion of the Ṛgvedic Āryans. The lines VIII. 4. 2 name रूम and रूशम countries. Do these indicate the Mediterranean region and Russia? The later *Brahmapurāṇa* also names a country of the Rusas (Russians?).[56] Besides, there are several countries named in the *Ṛgveda* which are still unidentified.

Of course, the Ṛgvedic hymns mostly refer to the region west of the Gaṅgā, the Punjab, North-West-Frontier-Province, Kashmir and Afganistan and the mouth-coast of the Indus and Gujarat, which clearly implies that they inhabited these lands. But from this it should not be inferred that their geographical knowledge was confined merely to these territories and they did not know any other land. Further, it is just possible that there might have been several sects and tribes of the Ṛgvedic Āryans which inhabited other regions which have been left out for some reason or other or their reference was not necessitated by the composition. This assertion is based on the same line of

[55] X. 32.6; VIII. 91. 4-5 and so on.

[56] *Studies in Indian Antiquities*—H. C. Raychaudhari, p. 75, note 3.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

reasoning that in the *Hamlet*, the *Śākuntalam*, the *Paradise Lost* or the stories from Tagore all places, rivers or mountains known to the great authors, the contemporary people and scholars are not mentioned and could not be mentioned.

Reference to palace in VIII. 6. 23, three storeyed building in VIII. 40. 12 and X. 66. 5—7, one-thousand-columned palace in II. 41. 5 and acquisition of hundred towns in IV. 30. 20, good roads in I. 116. 4 indicate a good sense of urban geography and town-planning. A solitary mantra X. 97. 1 exhibits a sense of distributional geography also. Mineralogy was also in a remarkable stage. Existence of irrigation canals (कुल्या) is corroborated by X. 43.7 and V. 83. 8.

8

The *Ṛgveda* had some conception of ethnology and anthropology also. There are described features of Indra and some other deities. Mantra I. 7. 9[57] and I. 100. 12 classify the inhabitants of earth in five classes. Sāyaṇa, again, finds in I. 164. 14 a reference to five classes of human beings. Mention and description of the Asuras and Dāsas are too well-known and it is unnecessary to indulge in their useless repetition.

The hymn X. 85 gives a very vivid and detailed account of the Āryan marriage customs, practices and the whole ceremony.

9

At least four quarters were well-known to the Pre-Ṛgvedic Āryans. The *Ṛgveda* positively knew of all the ten quarters (eight quarters+zenith+Nadir) of the space as is proved by various mantras.[58]

Determination of quarters was extremely essential in connection with the construction of Vedis (Gārhapatya

[57] Does the word क्षिति here not imply *continents*?

[58] I. 141.2 explicitly recognises ten quarters; VIII. 65.12 speaks of eight points of the sky plus zenith.

Gangānatha Jha Research Institute 1943 Allahabad.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and Āhavanīya in vogue at that time) which are according to Oldenberg earlier than the *Ṛgveda*, and it was carried on by the observation of the sun, and started with the finding of the east. The *Ṛgveda* I. 95.3 says of Agni, in his character of the sun, as the indicator of the points of the horizon.

The eastern quarter was the pivotal point of all rituals, religions and litergical works, practices and ceremonies.[59] This is the first and most profound beginning of the practice of eastern orientation in all construction, drawing, cartographical and engineering works in India which was strictly adhered to in all later Vedic literature, Śulvasūtras, Vāstuśāstras and continued uninterruptedly and unchangeably till the time of Maratha Cartography.[60]

This practice of eastern orientation dominated the elaborate Ṛgvedic survey work also as is proved by II. 15.3 which says, "Surveying like a chamber (or sacrificial chamber), Indra has made this world east-oriented." This mode of eastern orientation was the special characteristic of the Ṛgvedic Āryans and later Indians,[61] very ancient Babylonians recoursed to North-west orientation and Egyptians to the north. In the later Vedic literature and Śulvasūtras the east-westline was called the पृष्ठ्या like the north-south line of modern surveyors and Cartographers all over the world.

Selection of site and very technical measurement and survey regarding the construction of the Vedis are the earliest modes of survey and cartography in India as revealed by the Ṛgvedic hymns (of course, leaving out the Harappa

[59] VII. 99.2; III. 8.9, II. 15.3 and the like.

[60] *Vide* "solution of a riddle of maratha maps" by the author read in the 45th Research Conference, Bhārata Itihāsa saṁśodhaka maṇḍala, Poona.

[61] Prof. H. H. Wilson annotating I. on 31. 14 remarks "This is said to allude to a legend, in which gods, intending to offer a scrifice, were at a loss to determine the cardinal points, until the perplexity was removed by Agni's ascertaining the south." This problem would be taken up in some other essays.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and Mohenjodaro civilization for the present). The concept of surveying is as old in India as her supreme and most appealing cosmogony outlined in the opening section. The Ṛgvedic practical and theoretical survey and cartography (though no sample of the age has been recovered so far except mere descriptions), are in no way attempts or instances inferior to Gaisur or the oldest Babylonian cartography.

Wooden poles and pegs were used in survey, plan and costruction of Vedis apart from the measuring rod, यूप (sacrificial wooden posts) also perhaps might have served some survey purposes as is indicated by III. 8. 2-9. Measurement of the heaven and earth,[62] measuring the unmeasured ancient divisions;[63] measuring the heaven and earth with measuring rod[64] and "Varuṇa standing in the region of the air, measureth out the earth with the sun as with a measuring rod"[65] evidence very grand conception of surveying which was translated into practice in erecting great buildings and large sized Vedis where sacrifices (यज्ञ) were carried on for months and months together.[66]

Measuring or surveying of a field with a measuring rod is mentioned in the *Ṛgveda* I. 110. 5.

It has been proved beyond doubt that some sort of architecture, plan, painting and drawing existed in the Ṛgvedic times. The lines X. 34. 8 and others also clearly speak of a diceboard or इरिण which evidences the knowledge of sketch or diagram drawing also. Hence, there must have existed something in the shape of plan-drawings, place or region sketches as a piece of cartography. Nothing is known or has been unearthed so far about any world map or diagram.

62. I. 159. 4.
63. X. 56.5.
64. III. 38.3.
65. V. 85.5.
66. V. 45.11.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

In the conclusion, it must be observed that the *Ṛgveda* is not a treatise on geography or regular scientific disquisition on a particular branch of learning. As such geographical information is merely scattered in it and is to be and has been culled from it. The geographical facts culled in this manner were merely the fragment used for the composition of the *Ṛksaṁhitā*. The knowledge of science of geography of the contemporary Āryans must have been greater and wider than is indicated by these hymns.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. *Ṛgveda Saṁhitā*—D. S. Santabalekar.
2. *The cosmogony of the Ṛgveda*—H. W. Wallis.
3. *Vedic Index*—Macdonell and Kieth.
4. *Vedic Mythology*—Macdonell.
5. *Vedic India*—Louis Renou.
6. *Ṛgvedic Ārya* (Hindi)—Rāhul Sānkrityāyan.
7. *Bhāratīya Vāstuśāstra*—D. N. Shukla.
8. *Ancient Babylonian maps and plans*—Eckhard Unger-Antiquity 1935.
9. *Vedic Bhugola*—K. Chattopadhyaya (Bhugol-Year IX. 1932).
10. *The Way of the silpis*—G. K. Pillai.
11. *Geomorphology* Wooldridge and Morgan.
12. *The Mysterious Universe*—J. Jeans.
13. *Translation of the Ṛgveda* (i) H. H. Wilson; (ii) Griffith; (iii) Rama Govinda Trivedi (Hindi).
14. *Bhārtīya Jyotiṣa kā Itihāsa*—Gorakh Prasad.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

THE CRITICAL AND COMPARATIVE STUDY OF INDIAN AESTHETICS

By Śrī H. L. Sharma

Continued from Vol. XV pts 3-4 pages 189—232

III. Beauty As Gestalt

1. *Configuration Theory of Beauty* :—

In the preceding chapter we discussed the form of beauty which is an emotion. Here we open a discussion in which beauty is considered as a quality of perception. It may be regarded as an objective approach to the nature of beauty in contrast to the subjective one of the last. *Beauty is not a form of emotion, but an emotion of form.* This specific kind of emotion whose nature is aesthetic springs from perception of sensible elements in art-creation. It is the beauty of form, though not exactly formal beauty. For, whenever we have a form or configuration, we must have a full-grown consciousness of the sensible elements also. This emotion arising from a 'configured' perception with a specific aesthetic accent is called beautiful.

'Unity-in-diversity' is the hall-mark of all aesthetic perception. This results from a basic 'whole-making' tendency, underlying even the simplest kind of perception. Gestalt Psychology has given coup d' etat to all 'additive' and arithmetical processes by its discovery of laws of whole-formations. We study one of these for getting more light on the mental dynamics which has entirely changed from mechanical to spiritual.

This is Exner's law: "The total impression produced by a picture which flashes across the retina is compounded of the excitations of innumerable and functionally dissimilar fibres. That we, in spite of this, receive a unitary impress-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ion, in which the partial sensations are wont to go unrecognised, is due to what I would call *the principle of Central Confluence*."[1] This law gives us an idea of dynamic relation between 'parts' and 'whole'.

"The Gestalt—or structure process... is functionally, inwardly active in such a way that the parts are conceived to be defined in terms of it—on the basis of primary tendencies towards defined conspicuous gestalt."[2]

The participation becomes an aesthetic feast of moving joys if the perceptual consciousness inflects towards the primary laws of beauty-perception, that is, harmony and symmetry, both reducible to the condition of 'balance' (Samata). Bharata defines a balanced (Sama), and, therefore, 'beautiful' perception as complete concordance in which participating units and sub-units as dance, music (vocal and instrumental) and others become 'sweetened' by that concordance (Samayoga).[3] An aesthic configuration, therefore, is a form of perception in which the 'structure-befitting' parts are made concordant by subordination of the "Structive-violating" parts.

Many thinkers in India are configurationists in this sense. Vāmana is the chief. Beauty he defines as a configuration[4] (Rīti or Bandha) qualified by a specific quality of its constituents.[5] There are ten ways in which the parts combine to form aesthetically pleasing wholes. The first is *Śleṣa*[6] (श्लेष), which is that form of perception in which a multiplicity of elements is grasped as a completed unity. In music and dance, Śleṣa is important because the whole thing should appear as an unbroken current of notes and movements. Bharata rightly compares this induced form of unity to the feeling of a continuous circuit formed by a revolving piece of live coal[7] (अलातचक्रप्रतिमा). But in this unity, the elements must not be lost. Each note, movement or line must assert its value, though only as an element in a total stream of aesthetic experience. This quality is known

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

as sweetness.[8] Each element, further, should be charged with a dynamo of its own, so that, whether the art is mobile or immobile, the elements seem to be moving in a playful dance. This is *Udāratā*[9] quality of composition. *Samādhi*[10] is the measured rise and fall, and so on.

Rūpa Goswāmī also defines some formal qualities of art. Rūpam in Sanskrit is confusedly used both for any form and the beautiful form. All definitions of form, given to us by our author, accrue from his basic stand that the unadorned feminine frame is the prototype of beautiful design, is both mathematically and emotionally artistic, and that all arts, graphic and musical, draw their fundamental conceptions from this prototype. Rūpam, according to this stand, includes symmetry and proportion of parts in a beautiful female body.

Rūpam[11] is, further, an over-individual quality of the sub-unitary parts. The parts are overflowed with a new quality, when they make a whole. This quality is Rūpam. This author seems to regard this quality as static and mathematical. When, however, the form wakes up to pulsating life by energy of its own, a dynamic quiver is created, which is called *Lāvaṇya*. Both of Rūpa Goswāmi's commentators, Viśvanātha and Jīva Goswāmī, interpret *Lāvaṇya*[12] as *waving movement* of the form, which captures and sustains attention by its illumination (Kānti). Viśvanātha further tells us that Lāvaṇya is the beauty of form which, by virtue of transparency and exuberance, becomes the centre of uprising harmonies and charms. This vibrating quiver of the beautiful form is characteristic not only of the dynamic arts—music, dance and poetry—and of the living bodies, but also of painting and sculpture.

Indian painting being mostly linear, the line possesses a wonderful suggestive energy. By its sweep and undulation, it not only delineates but also depicts mass and movement. A painting by its suggestion of movement

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

becomes the vehicle of rhythmic energy. In India, painting and sculpture have been chiefly sacramental, and served to feed religious contemplation. Hence, the source of this energy has been the religious ardour coupled with formative will. An image is the translation of a mystic vision of super-reality. A. K. Coomaraswamy quotes the Aesthetic of the *Śukranītisāra* on image-making in the following words:

"One should make use of the visual formulae (dhyāna) proper to the angels (devatā) whose images are to be made. It is for the successful accomplishment of this practice (yoga) of visual formulation (dhyāna) that the lineaments (lakṣaṇa) of images are prescribed. The human imager should be expert in this visual contemplation, since thus, and in no other way, and verily not by direct observation (pratyakṣa) can the end be achieved."[13]

Another term is *Saundarya*.[14] It results from formal arrangement (सन्निवेश) of parts and sub-parts. Rūpa Goswāmī gives two more modifying phrases. The arrangement must be characterized by appropriateness: the volume, weight, shape etc., must be well-balanced, and must be what they ought to be under the principle of beauty. Also the parts should be well-jointed, so that we have an impression of unity. Rādhā, the paragon of the female beauty, is Sundara in the full sense of the term.

Rūpa Goswāmī thinks that *Abhirūpa*[15] is another quality of form. It is the quality of reflecting the beauteous form and colour of things in the neighbourhood. By virtue of this, the scenic effect is intensified, and the work of art comes in organic relation with its setting and environment. Specially in architecture and sculpture, the power of reflecting is essential. If the architectural form or the work of sculpture is too much circumscribed, and does not respond to the form-harmonies in its surroundings, it ceases to create an impression of artistic unity. Viśvanātha[16] in his *Ānandacandrikā* adds that the form which

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

is beautiful cannot be captured within the four walls of a formula, as the same is not intellectual, but is 'intuitive in origin.'

2. *The Mathematical Theory of Beauty*:

Melody (*Rāga*) and metre (*chandas*), and some forms of sculpture and architecture have been defined in mathematical terms in our vast canonical literature. We have developed Iconography, in which exact canons are laid down for each measurement. And yet a purely mathematical conception of beauty as an abstract contemplation of form seem to be foreign to India's art-genius. The creative artist in India is called upon to create, through his powers of 'intension' (Tapas) an aesthetically satisfying 'gestalt' with the help of 'trance-formula' (Dhyāna-mantra) from within, and then submit it to mathematical calculation so as to yield a definable form, fit for preservation. The intrinsic art-value of a form, its crescendo, climax and conclusion, are the original discoveries of the artist. This fact is based on a deep understanding of art-consciousness: The fact is:

"What is wholly rational cannot entirely satisfy the aesthetic sensibility. It has always been the function of art to stretch the mind some distance beyond the limits of the understanding. The 'distance beyond' may be spiritual or transcendental, or, perhaps, merely fantastical; somewhere it will overstep the limits of the rational."[17]

An art of designs and patterns, containing an axis of reference, a punctum balance and ideas of symmetry and repetition, is Persian in origin. The Moghul art, though a result of fusion, has a dominant note of Persian art. Its characteristic, therefore, is the deep touch of delicacy. The Persian art itself was shaped by the influence of Neo-Platonic movement there. Plato and other Greek Mathematician-philosophers sharply distinguished between the

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

absolute 'geometric forms' and the relative forms obtained from imitation. The geometric forms yield us an absolute and pure 'platonic' joy of contemplation. The question that merits consideration for Aesthetics is: Why the contemplation of geometric forms in art is so universally pleasing? We may consider in brief three answers. The first is the argument of economy in the expenditure of nervous energy involved in form-contemplation. The difficulty with this view is that mere ease of neural functioning cannot be mistaken for joy of aesthetic experience. The second view banks on the relation of climate and art of a country. Herbart Read expounds the view as follows :

"When the forces of nature are felt to be inimical, as in the frozen north and the tropical desert, art takes the form of escape not only from the flux of existence, but even from anything symbolical of it. The organic curve... is regarded unsympathetic; the artist therefore geometricizes everything. The vital art of primitive people... is sympathetic towards nature. It adopts the organic curve, enhances its liveliness; it is in the direction of the enhancement of a vitalistic urge."[18]

This second geographical view of artistic beauty seems plausible, for it fits in well with the general outlook on life in India. We never saw Nature red in 'teeth and claws'. Our art therefore is the art of life, and presents its inner and outer phases with a deep touch of vital joys. The third is the psychological approach to the above question. Jung regards the geometric shapes as the "archetypes, whose immanent nature is inaccessible to experience", and which "represent the deposit of psychic functioning of the whole ancestral line, i.e., the heaped-up or pooled experiences of organic existence in general." This view supplies a mental basis to the geometric conception of beauty. The difficulty of this explanation is that it puts the difficulty back in the primitive and infantile form of psychic functioning.

56

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul,Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

3. *Colour-Scheme in Indian Aesthetics* :

Colours define a 'form'. We must consider this definitive and formative power of colours. Before taking up the colour-scheme, we propose to work out a hint thrown by the Sāṅkhya Metaphysics. According to it, colours play an important part in the psycho-cosmic make-up. They inhere the very seed (Prakṛti)[20] of all creation—mental and material. The original Nature is a said to be red, white and black (Lohita, Śukla, Kṛṣṇa). It is made up of Sattva, Rajas and Tamas, mind, life and matter. The qualities like generosity, courage, inner poise of the mind etc. are the qualities of Sattva. Restlessness, rage, cupidity, etc. are Rajas qualities, while infatuation rigidity or immobility etc., are the qualities emanating from Tamas aspect of Reality. Now attributing colours to qualities of the mind cannot be accidental. The hieratic canons of all rleigions prove the universality of this connection between colours (of robes) and qualities. White is Sattva, and so it suggests Sattva qualities; red is Rajas and so it suggests all qualities and experiences having Rajas nature; and the same is true of Tamas. The Sāṅkhya Metaphysics thus establishes the spiritual suggestiveness of colours, mainly three, red, white and black. This colour-scheme, however, has to be worked out to be used in aesthetic interpretation.

The one we propose to construct differs from some already prevailing colur-charts in two points; first, it is an aprioristic construction, not based on the faltering experience of individuals, but on the sure testimony of intuitions of the seers; second, it is not drawn from physical or psychological standpoints, but purely from the aesthetic one, i.e., the basic consideration is not how the body or the mind is affected by a particular colour, but, on the other hand, how a particular form is realized in a colour-medium.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

According to Bharata, the following are the primary aesthetic emotions—erotic, aggressive, heroic and repulsive. Śṛṅgāra is said to be bright Śyāma (ujjwala Śyāma). It is burning bright. It is not one colour, but the father of all colours, having a tendency to develop in all directions. It is not a neutral tint or a dulled mixture of all colours. It is flame-like burning with an inner intense brightness, gauzed by blue and yellow fumes. Śyāma[22] is the colour of the Eros itself, underlying the infinite flame burning within us all, the central emotional energy moving the entire evolutionary stream towards fulfilment.

Śyāma in painting will have the nearest approach to the fully saturated cloudy mass of blue with an inner intense yellow flash of lightning. This colour best realises the deepest craving of life—the erotic urge. In an artistic painting, this colour, or this perfect unity of basic colours, cannot be harmoniously blended with any other colours except yellow and milk-white. Thus in a Śṛṅgāra form of painting, the harmonious effect is produced by Śyāma, yellow and milk-white. This is the happiest blend for conveying the erotic emotion in a colour-medium.

Erotic experience is opposed to all other emotions except Laughter and Wonder, which are realised through the colour-media of milk-white and yellow. This is why any other colour—black, red or blue—will produce a foreign and discordant effect on our sensibility. Bharata further maintains that Śṛṅgāra[23] is the primary emotion, of which the derivative is *Hāsya*. Regarding Hāsya as the complete release of emotional tension, we can maintain that complete un-saturation of *Śyāma* is milk-white (*Sita*). Saturation of a colour creates an inner intensity, which is released when saturation reaches the minimal edge. Laughter even according to the Freudian Psychology is the release of Eros. *Sita* and *Śyāma* are thus the primary and secondary respectively, emotionally representing Eros and Laughter.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

In a painting of Hāsya, therefore, the milk-white is the point of balance of the entire colour-harmony.

Hāsya[24] is opposed to *karuṇa* and *Bhayānaka* (Pathos and Terror) for which the colour-media are pigeon and black (*kapota* and *kṛṣṇa*). Thus in a Hāsya painting, the milk-white cannot be harmoniously blended with pigeon-colour and black without marring the aesthetic effect. The other colours,—red, yellow, blue, etc., can produce a colour-concordance with it.

Raudra (aggressive) is an emotion of great intensity and action. Its colour is blood red (Rakta). It is sparkling red, and where the masculine energy and the dynamic effect of activity are to be realised in a colour-medium, red is to be the punctum balance of the entire colour-harmony. *Raudra* is opposed to *Hāsya* and *Śṛṅgāra*, that is to milk-white and Śyāma. These are to be avoided, while other colours can be aesthetically combined with red.

The following tables indicate the colour-scheme in Indian Aesthetics :—

A.

Primary[25] *Colours*	*Secondary Colours*
1. Śyāma (Śṛṅgāra, Erotic)	1. Sita (Hāsya, Laughter)
2. Rakta (Raudra, Aggressive)	2. Kapota (Karuṇa, Pathetic)
3. Gaura (Vīra, Heroic)	3. Pīta (Adbhuta, Wonder)
4. Nīla (Vībhatsya, Repulsive)	4. Kṛṣṇa (Bhayānaka, Terror)

B. *Ally Colours*.

1.	Śyāma	... Milk-white, yellow.
2.	Sita	... Śyāma, red, gaura, blue, yellow.
3.	Rakta	... Pigeon, gaura, yellow, blue.
4.	Kapota	... Red, gaura, yellow, blue, black.
5.	Gaura	... Śyāma, milk-white, red, pigeon, yellow.
6.	Kṛṣṇa	... Blue, yellow.
7.	Nīla	... Milk-white, red, pigeon, gaura, yellow and black.
8.	Pīta	... Śyāma, milk-white, red, pigeon, gaura, yellow, blue and black.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

C. *Enemy-Colours*

1. ... Pigeon, blue, red, gaura, black.
2. ... Black and pigeon.
3. ... Milk-wite and Śyāma.
4. ... Śyāma, milk-white and black.
5. ... Black
6. ... Śyāma, gaura, red, milk-white, green and blue.
7. ... Śyāma.
8. ... None.

N. B. Bharata does not mention any aesthetic equivalent to *Śānta Rasa*, which he admits to be an important aesthetic emotion. The modern Psycho-Physiology reveals that green is the cool colour of calm and peace. We may hold, therefore, that sea-green represents the deep calm (Śānta) with a vision of Infinity; green with a yellow-dazzle may represent the creative peace of vegetation and growth; and green with blue-dazzle (Nīla-maṇi) indicates the aweful calm of equilibrium of superhuman forces.

In this colour-scheme, it may be remarked, we do not care to create merely a formal harmony of colours. It is an emotional harmony realised in a material medium. Each colour is, psycho-aesthetically, a material index of some emotional quality, and is, therefore, ally to some colours and enemy to others. Alliance or enmity is emotionally born. Enmity varies in degrees. In some cases, the enemy-colour may be subordinated, and in others totally suppressed. But the emotional meaning of a colour is not its direct meaning (Vācyārtha).[26] It is neither indirect (Lakṣaṇārtha) nor yet the implied one (Tātparyārtha). It is founded in the natural texture of our common artistic impulse. *Emotional*[26a] quality of a colour rises from it as an echo. In fact, the colour-language in painting is the system of articulation of our aesthetic sensibility.

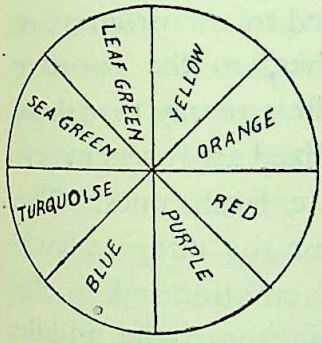
60

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Here, we compare this scheme with some that are already in fashion. There is a distinction of colours as 'warm' and 'cool' or 'light' and 'dark'. This distinction is also psychological. 'Warm' colours are red, yellow and their intermediaries; the 'cool' colours are green, blue and their intermediaries. Mathematically, these colours represent the four angular points of the common square base of two pyramids ending in light and dark points as their apexes. However perfect this scheme may be, it is not useful for Aesthetics of colours we are considering here.

The other is the Ostwald's colour-scheme. This circle of colours represents the directional relations amongst the colours. There is a change of quality at red, yellow, sea-green and blue, which are psychologically the rimary colours, while others are intermediaries. The opposition or alliance is suggested by the position of the Sectors in the circle. On this basis six forms of colour-harmony are indicated which are given below :—



1. Harmony of the opposites; 2. Harmony of the Neighbours; 3. Harmony of the Intermediaries; 4. Subdued Harmony; 5. Monochromic Harmony; and 6. Advanced Harmony.

These harmonies have an aesthetic basis. A harmony in itself is the pleasing combination of several colours or tints. But this scheme labours under two difficulties: first, here the analysis is purely intellectual, based on the psycho-genesis of colours; second, it is merely the formal harmony. There is no indication of a colour language, which is said to be the 'international language' because of its universal aesthetic appeal.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

4. *Dualism and the Kāma-Sūtra.*

At this stage, Aesthetics faces sharp dualism of 'form' and 'matter' as Epistemology and Ethics do. The impulse to beauty is 'the will to form.' Form-contemplation is said to be the essence of aesthetic experience. On the contrary, it has been maintained that all art is lyrical, and that artistic enjoyment is the feast of emotions. In India, both the aspects, form and feast (Rūpa and Bhoga), are equally emphasized and the extremes of Formalism and Emotionalism reconciled in a vital synthesis. But, historically, this synthesis could hold its own against separatism so long as the creative impulse continued to be fed from the inmost sources of life. But in the tenth century A. D. an all-round decay set in, which, on the one hand, led to the progressive attenuation of forms, and on the other, to the sportive glorification of emotions in art. Needless to say that there was growth of lifeless and conventionalized art-forms everywhere without any attempts to create fresh ones. The canons laid down by the masters became the ultimate laws. Also at the same time, apotheosis of emotion led to the production of nasty literature and painting of the middle ages that shames even the sense of decency. There was thus the general weakening of the creative impulse by a divorce of form and emotion in art.

Below we consider two attempts at synthesis, before 'form' became too much attenuated or 'emotion' too much vulgarised. The one is in the *Kāma-Sūtra*[27] which lays down six laws of painting. The first is *Rūpa-bheda*, which means 'the definition of form'. It means conformity to canonical prescriptions and[28] types. The Indian Silpa-kāra being a mystic and Yogin develops 'form' from within through a process of intension or self-incubation (Tapas). The trance-formula (dhyāna-mantra) contains this definition of form. The artist crystallises and articulates the aesthetic from the calm ocean of life and light within (Samādhi).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

This form, therefore, becomes the universal type. The later artists having no power of intuiting the original forms slavishly copy them from the canons. Creativity in art means the creation and crystallization of artistic forms.

Pramāṇa is the next stage. Here the stress is on proportion and balance of the formal relations, for each type has appropriate measurements (*Tāla and Māna*) of its parts. In this again the artist can be original and may not follow the canons and conventions. A. N. Tagore warns the artist against unthinking faith, for "art is not for the justification of the Śilpa-Śāstra, but Śāstra is for elucidation of of Art."[29] Again, an aesthetic pramāṇa is not the water-tight channel for the flow of creative activity in art. It is the artistically defined 'standard' in the morphology of emotions, as the Law of Thought is the rationally defined 'standard' in the morphology of thought. Creative emotion like creative thought follows the 'will to form', and, where there is 'form', there is the question of 'standard' (Pramāṇa).

"Aesthetic pramāṇa therefore expresses in plastic terms the norm of properly directed action (correction du Savoir-faire); speculative pramāṇa expresses metaphysically the norm of properly directed thought (correction du savoir pensee)"[30]

In the first two laws, the author lays down how the artist evolves a fit art-form. But the form requires filling in. Its content is Bhāva (emotion). This is the third law. The next is *Lāvaṇya-Yojanam*. We have defined Lāvaṇya as 'waving movement' in Rūpam. The artist is not satisfied with a static form depending merely on structural harmony of parts. He adds (Yojanam) to the form, a mobility which springs directly from artist's passion (Bhāva) for beauty. Lāvaṇya-yojanam is, as Coomaraswamy observes, 'the infusion of grace and charm.' Further the painting should have 'a recognisable likeness in portraiture'. It is *Sādṛśya*. *Sādṛśya*,[31] as we shall define later on, is not the literal transcription of a particular form. It involves both selection

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and discovery. The artist in a portraiture brings out in line and colour the real person by selection of certain aspects, which fact alone distinguishes a work of painting from a photograph. The last is *Vārṇika-Bhaṅga*, which means the artistic disposition of colours. The text on these laws is so meagre that we have to find meaning in a speculative way. So we can interpret Vārṇika-Bhaṅga as the way of achieving colour-harmony in a painting.

We find in Kālidāsa[32] a rare example of the happiest wedding of form and emotion (Vāk and Artha). He trusts to the form and its magic effect on the human soul. In both the *Kumārasambhava* and *Raghuvaṁśa*, where we read Rati-Vilāpa[33] and Aja-Vilāpa, he uses a metre, which by its flow, creates an elegiac atmosphere in music about us. In the *Meghadūta*, the lyric quality is not so much the effect of the situation as of the lines of the metre itself. The musical march of the lines in Mandākrāntā first slow then fast, produces a pathetic image of Yakṣa, who in love-trance looks up to the mass of first appearing clouds for solace, ravished by the charm of his surroundings.

Kālidāsa in his choice of metre and words betrays a rare sense of form and its aesthetic effect, yet his form is deeply instinct with an aesthetic meaning. So much is this confluence of word and meaning, so ready a consent of sound and sense in his art that a casual reader only looks to what he says and not how he says it. Though Kālidāsa is a conformist, yet in his conformity to Śāstraic injunctions he finds opportunities for creation which, in his case, consists in the infusion of form and emotion. The blend is very close and yet very clear like the blend of percept and concept. If one without the other is empty, the other is also blind without it. If in Epistemology sharp dualism of matter and form must be ultimately untenable, in Aesthetics also dualism of emotion and expression must be transcended in the act of intuition. Indeed the empirical analysis of

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

art-experience into form and matter will land us into complexities of Kantian Metaphysics. Aesthetic intuition is therefore a complete act whose organic unity cannot be broken without destroying it.

5. *The Meanings of Sāmavāda (Harmony) and Laya (Rhythm).*

To sustain and intensify beauty-experience, Art uses certain form devices. These are symmetry and harmony. In an aesthetic gestalt, each element possesses a relation of fitness with every other. In geometric forms, fitness is based on mathematical laws, but in other forms fitness is emotionally determined. Mathematical fitness based on economics of nervous energy is called symmetry. Emotional fitness of the elements in an artistic whole is harmony. But both these are equally soul-sustaining principles of beauty. Harmony is not an economic or measureable quality. This separates it from symmetry which admits qualification. In symmetry, repetition of elementary or complex patterns, arithmetically calculable from centre or axis, is essential. It thus seems to be an objective quality translatable into ease and economy of nervous energy. In harmony also the principle of economy works in the mental sphere. Disharmony is felt as an emotional interruption. This interruption is analoguous to the sense of contradiction in the development of a logical argument. Harmony is the mutual intensification of the several moments of beauty-experience, culminating into a blissful state of 'self-forgetfulness more restful sleep', when the limits of individuality are overthrown. This last is the state of rhythm.

Ānandavardhana discusses his theory of harmony in the *Dhvanyāloka*. The main law of harmony is the law of subordination, which aims to achieve fulness of emotion (Rasa-paripoṣa). A rasa emotion is known to touch its climax, when other emotions, whether hostile or friendly, agree to subserve the end of the master emotion. For

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Abhinava gupta[35] adds thrilling effect (camatkāra) of a rasa emotion is not confined to itself; it should contribute substantially to the development of another one. As the main plot in a drama develops from seed-state, and, throughout remains one and unsubordinated and unconfused,[36] so a Rasa emotion develops as one and unique. Ānandavardhana points out two[37] main obstacles to emotional organization in harmony: (i) There is variousness amongst Rasa emotions (ii) There is incompatibility (वाध्य-बाधक-भाव) in some of them. The first of these can be overcome by subordination to the central and nuclear emotion. For overcoming the second of the obstacles, he points three laws which we give below:

(1) If one Rasa[38] forms the principal emotion in a certain piece, no other rasa, whether hostile or not, should be allowed to rule, or, at least, to overshadow it.

(2) There should not be predominance of anicilary emotions leading to the development of hostile moods.

(3) Even when the hostile Rasa emotion tends to develop, there should be time after time the assertion of the Principle of Subordination.

Abhinava gupta tells us that in the same way other laws aiming to avoid the cutting short of the principal Rasa should be thought out. He even points out a deep meta-psychologic truth behind the unity of emotions: The question of the principal and subordinate arises to those who institute a fundamental divergence and incompatibility in emotional life. There is no question of any 'oppostion' to those who regard all emotions as springing from a common matrix, and hence unifiable under the stress of the law of harmony.[39]

Even harmony is not the final aim or achievement of Art. As harmony begins to be felt, loosening of individuality bonds begins and the oppressive sense of time and earthly existence gives way to cosmic vitality. This merger of the finite in the Infinite, of the temporal in the

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Eternal is described as Laya or rhythm. Rhythm is the undulation of harmony. It consists of two moments, inflow and outflow, tension and release. All movements, vital or mechanical, seem to be rhythmic, in so far as they are made up of alternating moments of 'concentration' and 'release' of stored up energy. Psychology of laya or self-merger takes us to yoga, according to which rhythm is broken by the irregular breathing, caused by psychic and organic disturbances and irregularities. With balanced diet, sleep, etc., the mind begins to flow rhythmically, and life is lived intensely in the very heart of eternal flow of vitality. We return to the very fountain of immortality, its serene joys and calm. It is the highest state of the human soul, the result of long and arduous self-discipline, aimed at even by Yoga, Bhakti and Mysticism. The finale[40] of Art and that of spiritual disciplines of all sorts is the same laya-state, or the dissolution of the individuality-bonds.

IV. Beauty As Embellishment

1. *Beauty as Embellishment (Alaṅkāra)*

Urge to embellish seems to be as strong as it is universal. It features almost all levels of culture. Ornament is one with tendencey for refinement in man. It is a part of the creative will, for wherever man has attempted to 'create', that is, to embody his deep urges and experiences in some intelligible medium, he has invariably decorated it. There is a good deal of psychology, and perhaps even metapsychology, behind satisfaction we derive from decoration. The consideration of this 'satisfaction' is to us a side issue here; our main question is: *under what conditions the decorative tendency is said to spring from the will to beauty*? We have before us India's history of Art, when it was reduced to bare decorative devices. Ornamentation created a florid style of art in sculpture, architecture and music and literature, till its excess killed the formative spirit from which it originated. It was an age of aesthetic efflorescence in India.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The question is important because it helps us to distinguish the 'artistic' from the 'artificial'. It is a hard fact that we cannot altogether avoid the artificial, though too much of it is naturally resented. Bharata[1] regards the artificial element in drama as an indispensable aid to emotionalization. Ornament[2] is an aid to nature, and as such it must not overshadow it. Ornament[3] must be subservient to nature, for it leads to artificiality only when we overshoot the mark. In decorating[4] our art-forms we must know the fitness of the ornaments to nature, age, status and other conditions. Fitness in Bharata's Aesthetics is emotional. An ornament or any decorative device is acceptable if it intensifies our Rasa experience. If the contemplation[5] of a young lady separated from her lover is pathetic, it becomes doubly so when she is presented to us in her soiled garbs and with a single braid of her hair. Even her soiled dress becomes her decoration, while any elegance on her part will violate our sense of beauty. Bharata then lays down as the Dictum[6] of Embellishment in Art: Any ornamentation, decorative or chromatic device is aesthetically pleasing if it is born of the Rasa-experience. Artificial is that, we are led to conclude, which is imposed upon Art ab extra, and, as such that as produces an effect foreign to Rasa-experience.

India's iconographical art has followed the dictum. Each god or goddess has his or her own ornaments and decorations. The deity is not the product of imaginative photo-making. It is born in the contemplative self-merger (dhyāna) of the impassioned devotee. Dhyāna is the complete act of art-creation. Therefore the deity emerges as a full-fledged figure, having glorious halo of spiritual experience about it. Indian pantheon and incarnations consist of figures such as Viṣṇu, Buddha, Vāmana, Śiva, Vārāha, Nṛsimha and so on, which provide all sorts of Rasa-experience. Viṣṇu is the figure of Eros. Buddha represents pathos, and Vāmana laughter. Śiva is a complex figure, yet

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

his main emotion is rage. Vārāha (boar incarnation) and Nṛsimha (Lion-man figure) are the figures of terror. The ornaments and decorations of each deity are completely in consonance with its encircling emotional atmosphere. In the decadent age, however, the figures became overlaid with them and lost touch with the spirit of the deity. Beauty was ultimately identified with decoration.

2. *Speech and Alaṅkāra.*

Man's desire to decorate is fully satisfied in Literature, for 'speech' is the most plastic of all art-materials. In studying the Alaṅkāra in Literature, therefore, we are to discover the most natural idiom of artistic expression. The use of figures in speech is no mere accident. It is founded on some basic operations and tendencies of aesthetic consciousness. In India the figures of speech have been studied as a part of Rasa Philosophy in all their minute details and variety. Sometimes the very springs of art-life are flashed in them. Our study therefore would differ from that of Poetics in this that we shall be ever looking for the mainspring of the artistic activity at the root of poetic figures rather than their definitions or subtle distinctions.

The study of the figures of speech becomes philosophical the moment we note that the Indian thinkers never conceived of speech as anything less than a metaphysical energy. In outlining the Philosophy of speech which underlies the poetic figures, we take authority of Ruyyaka and his commentator Jayaratha. Speech[8] (Vāk) is transcendent energy. Our spoken language is the verbal articulation of that energy. But it is not the only one. The metaphysical energy which is the infinite and vital essence of our self is also present in the form of 'meaning'. The 'illumination of meaning' in the mind is not a cerebral act; hence it is not differentiated in the form of verbal memories.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

It is in the form of an 'undifferentiated luminous[9] mass of meaning' constantly seeking an outlet for articulation. It is also the whole of our spiritual self. From this luminous mass of meaning starts a mental differentiation in the form of suppressed enunciation.[10] It is a kind of internal focussing and 'canalizing' the mind-energy towards cerebration. It is the second stage. At last the cerebral activity starts under the impetus of the 'internal canalization' of mind-energy. The vocal chords and the entire apparatus involved in audible speech move under its bidding and the clear pronunciation of words results.[11]

This centripetal conception of the process of speech-development is a challenge to all mechanical theories. It lends to us a fresh understanding of Bergson's thesis that perception develops out of memory, and, not *vice versa*, and that memory is not a 'cerebral deposit', but a "consciousness that illumines at each moment of time, that immediate part of the past which, impending over the future, seeks to realize and to associate with it[12]." It above all, proves that "all words are spiritual, and nothing is more spiritual than words" (Walt Whitman). Ruyyaka with others has regarded speech as something divine and wonderful. Jayarath tells us that it is not for nothing that we call Vāk as devī (goddess).[13] Deducing from Pāṇini's Sūtra, Jayarath concludes that speech is divine because it is superhumanly sportive, revealing, self-shining and blissful. Speech[14] has also been praised as the eternal cow which the poets have been milking for long without coming to an end. The Upaniṣads[15] also worship speech as cow. The idea behind these statements is that Speech, metaphysically, is the eternal fountain of all spiritual emanations. Art as a kind of spiritual emanation is a kind of speech.

Of late Jung has developed a conception of speech which is meta-psychologic by working out a few hints from the Upaniṣads. He has embodied that conception in his

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Philosophy of libido. He tells us that "the Hindoo Metapsychology conceives speech and fire as emanations of inner light from which we know it is libido, the creating psychic force."[16]

"There is also philological evidence, he says, for the common psychologic origin of fire and speech. The word 'Tejas' in Sanskrit which stands for semen and light indicates the relation of fire and sex. "As the old Hindoos recognized in fire an emanation of the inner libido fire, so they recognized in the intoxicating drink (fire-water= Soma Agni), an emanation of fire. The Vedic definition of Soma as seminal fluid confirms this interpretation."[17]

Thus whether we accept the Metaphysical or metapsychologic conception of language, we should regard it to be a super-conscious energy, as the common matrix of all beauty and art. One of the later Upaniṣads[18] conceives of it as Kāma-Kalā and Śṛṅgāra-Kalā from which flow out all the cosmic forces. It is the wave of infinite bliss. It is the eternal truth whose name is Beauty.

Some such theory of language must underlie Alaṅkāra. Speech is the result of stirring of the primal fire in man. Art also is a rhythmic outflow of libido when it is 'emotionalized' by aesthetic causes. Whenever a man speaks therefore from the depths of his soul, he speaks but art. "No person can ever be a poet who is not at the same time a seer[19]." 'Seeing' is but returning to the primal source of life. Speech therefore that is artistic and 'original', though deflected from the ordinary form is inflected towards the figurative one. This figurative inflection of language, far from being accidental, is based on an inveterate habit of creative mind. Though no thinker in India has dared to confuse Beauty with Figure, yet none has denied its role as an intensifier of art-experience. Mammaṭa[20] and his commentators hold that where there seems to be no figure in poetry, it may be non-distinct but never non-existent. Viśvanātha also tells us that at times the Rasa quality of art may overshadow its beauty of Alaṅkāra. In what follows

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

we shall consider the role of Alaṅkāra in artistic expression, its genesis and place in our beauty-consciousness.

3. *The Nature and Function of Metaphor.*

An Alaṅkāra is a beautifying device. Here we ask: *What is it* we beautify by a figure, and *how* we do it? The Indian thinkers believe that the nuclear element in aesthetic consciousness is either an emotional state (Rasa), or some aspect of nature (Vastu) or of mind. In short what we beautify is some living experience. In finding out what we beautify by means of figures, the Alaṅkāra philosophers have charted and mapped the very subtle nuances of human experience. Memory (Smṛti), Illusion (Bhrānti), Doubt (Sandeha), Exaggeration (Atyukti), Impossibility (Asambhava), Negation (Apahnuti) and so on, almost all the states of the mind can be made beautiful by the use of figures. In the *Kāvyādarśa*[21], we find an example how a consciousness of argument (hetu) can cause immense aesthetic thrill. Even our logical consciousness of cause-effect relation, which seems to have no beauty-emotion, can bring about charm when presented artistically: The cause is either the cause of being or knowing of the effect. When the cause[22] intensifies the blissful feeling of an effect it brings about, we have an aesthetic experience. In the same way if the contemplation of the state of non-existence (Abhāva)[23] intensifies and sustains the experience, it becomes 'beautiful'. Even the presentation of facts (Svabhāvokti)[24] becomes an Alaṅkāra. The condition when such a factual presentation becomes artistic is when the individual intensely expresses the universal character or class-essence. Dīpaka[25] or mental illumination is an important form of Alaṅkāra, it being one of the four figures to emerge at the first stage of evolution of Alaṅkāra Philosophy in Bharata. When the momentary suspense is suddenly cleared by a burst of illuminating thought, we have the Dīpaka form of beauty experience.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Daṇḍin tells us that this sort of mental dazzling can take place in a variety of ways. In brief there is no form of human experience which may not be converted into a beauty-feast by means of the figures. This view of Alaṅkāra incidentally may be compared with the recent development of Dewey's[26] theory of Art. He also regards aesthetic experience as intensification of our ordinary experience. An Alaṅkāra is also a mental attempt to transform the common place into something artistic.

Now we can face the question: How the ordinary experience becomes accented with quality of beauty. Behind this question lies the important conception of Indian Psycho-aesthetics, namely the conception of Sādṛśya which A. Coomarswamy[27] translates as Sym-visibility or consimilarity. In so far as a figure is the product of original genius, its aesthetic charm lies in its capacity to reveal Sādṛśya. Appaya[28] shows a deep insight into the nature of figures by telling us that "Sādṛśya alone enters into all artistic expressions and creates charm like the dance-girl who thrills the spectators by her change of dress." All the figures are variants of Sādṛśya. He defines it as 'consonantia'[29] of two meanings which possess the quality of mutual fitness. This 'sym-visibility' should be at the same time an aspect of the two meanings, which has a quality of Kānti (beauty-illumination) in it. Thus, Sādṛśya is the sudden and tremendous revealment of the most thrilling aspect of consemblance between two mutually fit objects.

Revealment of Sādṛśya is called technically Upamā (Simile). Jagannātha[30] has given us clues to the nature of creative image involved in Upamā. Upamā is to him an Alaṅkāra which reveals beautiful consimilarity. The beautiful is that which creates an ineffable bliss, without which there is no raison d'etre for an Alaṅkāra. The thrilling Sādṛśya[31] need not be factually true. The true creativity of aesthetic imagination is tested in the evolution

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of Sadṛśya which can start artistic thrill in our mind. Sādṛśya thus is a super-real quality. It is neither illusion nor hallucination. It does not belong to the order of emperically real things. Its truth[32] is its power to charm.

This indeed is the functional approach to the understanding of imagery in Art. A Sādṛśya though a creature[33] of poetic fancy, is to be accepted as true just because it is true to its function. Here we can compare Jagannātha with Middleton Murray[34] who also lays down that "the highest function of imagery is to define indefinable spiritual qualities." Sādṛśya becomes intensely agreeable (हृद्य) to us because it reveals deeper aspects of things and subtlest shades of experiences which the matter-of-fact use of language can never do. Thus "all metaphor and simile can be described as the analogy by which the human mind explores the universe of quality and charts the non-measureable world[35]." The discovery of upamā therefore is an act of creation. Kālidāsa is great because of his upamā and its condensed form metaphor (Rūpaka). Aristotle also teaches that "the greatest thing of all by far is to be master of metaphor."

Jagannātha further gives us another test of creative imagery involved in the figurative expression, and it is that Sādṛśya must intensify the nuclear element in aesthetic experience. The nuclear[37] element is the total meaning. Nāgeśa his commentator lays stress on 'totality' of the meaning. The idea that is impressed is that a creative imagery suggested by a poetic figure must not remain detached from the context in which it occurs. The organic unity of imaginative act is essential in artistic creation, for the 'passion' causing it is one such completed unity. Middleton Murray here also tells us that "the greatest mastery of imagery does not lie in the use, however beautiful and revealing, of isolated images, but in the harmonious total impression produced by a succession of

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

subtly related images." Jagannātha[38] by numerous examples has shown us how this unity of impression can be achieved.

The above treatment leads us to the conclusion that metaphoric activity is a basic fact of human consciousness.

"Metaphor is," as Murray says, "the instinctive and necessary act of the mind exploring reality and ordering experience. It is the means by which the less familiar is assimilated to the more familiar, the unknown to the known."

But like all primary facts of consciousness, metaphoric activity cannot be explained. It is natural and essential mode of articulation of our aesthetic sensibility, without which we shall ever remain dumb. The greater is the faithfulness in the communication of our impressions, the greater is the inflection of our expression towards the metaphoric. Even scientific language could not free itself from metaphor. This is also the reason why the Upaniṣadic philosophy becomes indistinguishable from poetry. In Pañcāgnividyā, the seer conveys to us the dynamic nature of the universe, cloud, man and woman. There seems to be no way left to him but to conceive of a metaphor in which these are all compared to fire, its fuel, and burning sparks. Thus alone it appears to be the case that "metaphor is as ultimate as speech itself, and speech as ultimate as thought."

4. *Metaphor and Concept.*

Reason works with concepts in order to evolve 'order' within the cosmos of experience. The conceptual activity taking its ease in the desire for 'order' crystallizes and 'solidifies' our ever flowing consciousness into a few 'ideas' or 'generic images'. With them we create a static order in our knowledge. We call it 'static' because every fresh discovery of concepts causes a need for revision and rebuilding of the entire edifice of human science. In fact science has grown by the continual process of pulling down the old and raising a new superstructure upon it. In Art

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

also there is "an escape[40] from chaos." For as Herbart continues, "*Art is movement ordained in number, mass confined in measure.*" Without Art, the ever surging emotions, the upwelling currents of deeper life could never have been captured and materialized, and the ever elusive and fugitive moments never immortalized. The poets and artists have captured and preserved in 'number and measure' all that is of enduring charm to man. By means of metaphoric activity, our dumb spiritual life finds voice. But the order which the poet articulates is an emotional one. An emotion is of the nature of stir and motion. The emotional order therefore is dynamic. Art thus, on the one hand, sobers down 'the feeling-storms' and other lower forms of animations, and on the other it opens new vistas of emotional enjoyment.

Metaphoric activity springs directly from creative genius (Pratibhā). Rājeśekhara[41] tells us that mind in man is of three grades, memory (Smṛti), Cognition (Mati) and Genius (Pratibhā). Memory is record of the past; Cogintion is the apprehension of the present; and, genius is the prophet of the future. It is genius which explores, reveals and forms new and charming facets of natural and human existence. Genius is supported and sustained by energy (Śakti). The conception of poetic energy in Indian thought is universal, for it is again metaphysical in nature. Saraswatī is the goddess of art-energy and the astist, in the moment of spiritual communion, fills his soul with the same fire. We therefore here lay emphasis on Upāsanā for the artist. Kālidāsa is said to be the very flesh and marrow of the goddess Saraswatī.

The discovery of a concept is the product of analytic-synthetic activity. A concept unifies and orders multiplicity. Concept-formation is seeing one-in-many. It is also the work of genius. Herbart[42] regards genius as "the man who sees and feels, not only the object before him, but sees this object

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

in its universal implications—sees the one in the many, the many in the one." A metaphor unravels a vista, sometimes even a panorama, yet veiled under the cover of spiritual dumbness. But this unveiling cannot be without a stir. So genius in art is often compared to demonic possession. Even metaphoric illumination is thought to be a form of mysticism. Leuba[43] regards it as a kind of epileptic aura and its discharge alike spontaneous because it is organically caused. As metaphor always involves an upwelling of a symbol from within, the activity, according to Lyttelton,[44] cannot be called only conscious. It is the work of our super-conscious mind. "The living symbol cannot come to birth in an inert or poorly developed mind.... Only the passionate yearning of a highly developed mind....can create a new symbol."[45] Because the symbol dscovered and grasped by a metaphor is primordial, luminous and enchanting, Kritschner[46] regards it as a product of "the psycho-pathic inheritance, the demonic unrest and mental tension", which if we remove "from the constitution of the man of genius, nothing but an ordinary, talented person would remain." Rājaśekhara[47] considering creative genius at all the levels—from abnormal to super-normal as given above—has classified poets into ten kinds.

Concept in the sphere of Reason is much like metaphor in the sphere of Emotion. Both illumine and order experience; both grasp and gather up in a single flash vast stretches of rational and emotional life. A brilliant concept is as much an act of 'creation' as a luminous metaphor. They differ only in their spheres, but not in their ultimate achievement. Conceptual activity builds us the content of knowledge; the metaphoric activity supplies the content of the 'beautiful'. Both are equally primordial and necessary in understanding and explaining nature. Rājaśekhara tells us that creative genius[48] in art, which is the mother of metaphor, takes two forms both important to the creator and the critic:

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

one is creative, the other appreciative. To create or appreciate a metaphor we require genius, as we require it for understanding and elucidating Nature with the help of a concept. And at last we transform by super-imposing an order, our experience both with the help of metaphor and concept.

5. *Atiśaya and Idealization.*

To create in Art means to idealize. A metaphor is creative if and to the extent to which, it goes beyond the actual datum of sense. The extent to which it goes beyond is called Atiśaya. The creation of Atiśaya (excellence) is *sinequa non* of metaphoric activity. It is a fact of human nature that it is thrilled by the creation and understanding of Atiśaya. Thus the essence of metaphoric activity is the process of idealization. Some thinkers specially in the West have identified artistic creation with the process of idealization. Addison speaks of the Pleasures of Imagination or Fancy. "The poet", he says, "seems to get the better of Nature." Things greater stranger or more beautiful than the eye ever saw can be fancied by Imagination; on this account it is the part of the poet to humour Imagination in its own Notions, by mending and perfecting Nature where he describes Reality, and adding greater Beauties than are put together in Nature where he describes a Fiction.[49]

The conception of Atiśaya rules in many of our attempts at art-creation, even besides Literature. The purpose of this idealization of forms to us is not, as it is to Addison, to "humour Imagination" in anyway, though Indian architectural and sculptural forms are the beneficial food to it because of their deep symbolism. "The characteristic of Hindu sculpture in the extension of human powers and knowledge, Expansion and exaltation of consciousness (of light against darkness), extension and intensification of action (of right against wrong), accumulation and distillation

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of cultural wealth (of spiritual, not sensuous pleasure), these and others are aesthetical virtues expressed in Hindu sculpture[50]." Because of this religious aim of our hieratic art, sometimes the forms may appear to be unreal, which in fact are only super-real, that is real to religious contemplation. This form of idealization raises several fundamental issues. We take for consideration only two: 1. What are the psychological and aesthetic limits of idealization? 2. What different forms can this idealization take in the sphere of Art?

In the process of idealization or creation of Atiśaya in the mind, first there is the object which is idealized. This may be called Viṣaya, for instance, the 'face' of a lady. Then there is the referent (Viṣayī) with whose help excellence in aesthetic charm is brought about. The process of referring Viṣaya to Viṣayī has been variously called as Nigaraṇa (swallowing), Sādharaṇatā[51] sampatti (Identification) and Abhedādhyavasāya (determination of unity). The question of extension of Viṣaya towards Viṣayī (of facial beauty towards the beauty of lotus or moon) can be considered both psychologically and aesthetically. The psychological standpoint is: How *possibly* can we give to face an ideal form? And the other is: How *allowably* can we give to it a *beautiful* ideal form? As the first question is not of direct concern to us we sum it up as follows: We idealize a form into another either on account of Sādṛśya (con-similarity) or any other kind of relation. The latter relations may be causal, spatial or that of inherence etc. Therefore the ideal or imaginal form can become a possible referent if it has a definable relation with the actual form.[53] When we say, "Child is fire", we idealize the child-form into the fire-form, because it is conceivable that the child has flame-like lustre. When we say, "Butter is life", we say so because butter is conducive to life, and so on. An imaginal form proves to be absurd if no definite trace or reference of relation can

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

be discovered. The ideal communicates with the actual by the way of a definite reference.

Of all possible reference, some are of great aesthetic value. These are the ways of artistic idealization (Utprekṣaṇaṁ). Ruyyaka defines artistic idealization as the *process*[54] (not accomplished product) of Adhyavasāya; whereas the latter is the *impression of identity* because of the actual form being completely covered by the ideal one. When this complete merger of the actual into the ideal is due to the abundance of Sādṛśya, Viśvanātha[55] tells us, it is known as upacāra. Ruyyaka[56] reminds us that if idealization of a form is to possess a real art-value, we should have an inescapable sense of truth about the process. A lurking consciousness of falsity in the ideal process will mar the aesthetic effect. Here we reach the limit of aesthetic idealization. The ideal form must possess 'the poetic truth'. If Art seeks to transform and re-build human experience by the processes of idealization and intensification, it must possess a 'truth' acceptable to the highest faculties of man. A merely subjective reading of Nature and her aspects is 'fallacious' both aesthetically and rationally. It is known as Pathetic Fallacy. And yet the truth of ideal form cannot be proved on cold and cogent logic. What can then be the nature of 'poetic truth' which sets a limit to idealization?

Jagannātha, with his rare insight, resolves the difficulty by pointing out two criteria of 'poetic truth'. Firstly the process of idealization must be governed by the sense of beauty[57]. The ideal form should be aesthetically enjoyable (Ramaṇīya). Beauty to him is an emotional illumination flooding the soul with ecstatic joys. Thus 'truth' in Art is emotionally tested. An art-form is true if it is powerful enough to 'emotionalize' the soul. This test however is not enough, for it is too subjective. Jagannātha therefore adds that 'idealization' is true if the quality which stimulates and sustains the process is true. To illustrate:[58] "A large

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

number of swans (Bakas) of silvery feathers are squeaking loudly half-immersed in the blue waters of the Yamunā." This is a heavenly sight. The half-immersion of *silvery swans* in the *blue* waters and their incessant *calls and cries*. This starts the idealizing process in the creative poet who voices his deep thrill and appreciation of the scene by adding: "I imagine the *children of the moon*, for fear of being swallowed up by *dense darkness*, are *crying* for help." Here in the words of Jagannātha, the success of idealization is complete in that the dark of the night can be imagined to swallow, and that the cries of the swans reflect the cries of fear of some one sinking. The stimulus here is the quality of the scene itself. It initiates, sustains and intensifies the ideal form invented by the poet.

Idealization first takes two forms :[59] The form may be given directly or suggested by the material. Then the latter takes three forms : 1. The whole of the *ideal form* (swarūpa) may be suggested, complete with its class-essence (Jāti), excellence (guṇa), activity (Kriyā) and material (dravya). 2. The ideal form may comprehend the cause (Hetu) in the same way or 3. the effect (Phala). We illustrate one of the numerous forms of idealization below : After the conquest of Laṅkā, Rāma flying back in the Puṣpaka to Ayodhyā describes to Sita how he picked up one of her ornaments set with chiming ringlets on his way where she was taken away by Rāvaṇa. "This is the place where in search for you I picked up one of your nūpuras, which was as if *silent* on account of *grief of separation* from[60] you." Here the scene becomes pathetic by imagining the gold ornament to be in grief. There is no 'pathetic fallacy' here because the imaginal forms of the grieving nūpura intensifies our pathos. This, according to Appaya, is the example of idealization of quality (गुणोत्प्रेक्षा).

Whenever there is 'idealization', the quality which initiates and sustains it is either itself common (Sādharaṇa)[61]

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

or is made so by other devices. At times even the process of Sādhāraṇī-karaṇa is unable to initiate 'idealization', for this may not be beautiful. The process only aims to remove the obstacles in the way of idealization. In developing proper art-forms in painting and sculpture, we need 'Sādharaṇīkaraṇa' so that we draw inspiration from perfect paragons of natural beauty. Every part of the human body—eyes, nose, lips and all has been ideally perfected in form by the same process. Thus the process of artistic idealization (Utprekṣā) has been the inexhaustible mine of countless art forms in India. It has been fully treated by the Paṇḍitas of Alaṁkāra Philosophy.

6. *Aesthetic Representationism and European Aesthetics.*

Whence is the ideal form drawn? From external Nature or from a spiritual upsurge from within? On the answer to this question have the religious Art of Europe and the Art of India in general parted company with the modern European Art. The modern Indian Art is mainly inspired by the entrenched tendencies in the European Art. The difference is more fundamental than it appears to be on the face of it. They differ as much as Realism differs from Idealism. From the logical extreme of Realism as much as the extremist position of Idealism no account of Beauty in Art can be given. If one leads to flat Naturalism, the other to utter sujectivist account of it. And yet the interpretation of Art in both is different, which is a fact important to bear in mind.

"Those who wish to study the development of Indian Art must emancipate themselves entirely from the innate European tendency to use a supposedly geater or less degree of the observation of Nature as a measuring rod by which to trace stylistic sequences or recognize aesthetic merit. Indian art can only be studied as showing at different times a greater or less degree of consciousness, a greater or less energy; the criteria are degrees of vitality, unity, grace and the like, never of illusion. In Indian art of primarily representative interest,

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

that of portraiture, was practised by amateurs, and even so required a mental visualization only less formal than that of the hieratic work."[62]

The realistic art of Europe invents 'significant' forms, where an ideal form is a 'sign' which indicates the amount and extent of idealization of Nature achieved by the artist. An ideal form is equivalent to significant form. In fitness with the general idealistic trend of Indian thought, her art has been invariably 'symbolic'. A 'symbol' differs from 'sign' in many respects. For our present purpose a symbol is some concrete form of spiritual urge. The ethereal longings and deep spiritual experiences have a tendency to concretise themselves. In art they find the proper 'symbolic' forms. *The success of art therefore lies, not in how much it takes from Nature, but in how much it gives to it from the infinite energy within us.* 'Symbolic' art communes with Spirit, while 'significant' art traffics with Nature.

"Indian art is aiming at something quite other than the copying of Nature.... If here or there a relief or painting exhibits some features drawn from life, it is only accidentally that the artist has, in spite of himself, transcribed something from actual Nature : and this is certainly, from the indigeneous point of view, the least meritorious part of his work."[63]

The difference of 'symbol' and 'sign' raises another issue, that of validation of artforms. It is so in Epistemology. If perceptual experience represents some form of existence, whose esse is not percipi, its truth is to be proved by correspondence between 'esse' and 'percipi'. The test of validity will fall outside the perception. A thorough going correspondence view or the extrinsic test of validity (परतःप्रामाण्यवाद) cuts no ice without taking recourse to some form of internal harmony or coherence among the elements of our experience. Even Pragmatism is reducible to the standpoint of coherence between the practical and intellectual aspects of life. If 'correspondence' (बिम्ब-प्रतिबिम्ब-वाद) fails to furnish us a criterion in the sphere

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of thought, it does so phenomenally in the sphere of aesthetic experience. And the realistic stand in art leads us to the correspondence view of truth only. An art form in fact, is not true because it refers to Nature, or corresponds with some of her aspects. The more on the contrary it does so, the more it falls short of the standard. "The more the image is true to Nature, the more it lies." Here we need only an intrinsic and inherent test of truth. An ideal form validates itself, because it springs from, and conveys, a spiritual longing in a tangible material. An art-form of India, say the figure of Lord Viṣṇu, with four hands etc., is not true because it may, and, is not false because it does not, correspond to anything outside. Its charm to us is not even the fact that it is the result of imaginative augmentation and conjunction of parts. Yet the form is completely true and self-validating, because it symbolises the Infinite creative urge at the root of things.

This idealistic conception of Art form incidentally explains why some forms are more valuable than others and what those forms are. Accentuation of forms, takes place when the formative will is able to draw from the inner reservoir of spiritual energy, while their process of attenuation indicates the state of loosening (शिथिल-समाधि) of the will. In the process of attenuation symbols are thinned down to mere signs. We get our conclusion confirmed by A. K. Coomarswamy who says,

"It is true that in the decadence of Art, what should be symbols are replaced by what are merely signs, a formal by an informal referendum. . . . It is just in this connection that we are led to understand how and why it is that "realistic" art must be regarded as "decadent", that is to say, falling short of what is proper to the dignity of man as man, to whom not merely sensible, but also intelligible worlds are accessible. Granted that by restoring to the lotus all, or all we can, of those accidents that are proper to the lotus of the botanist, we produce an object apt to deceive an animal : what we have thus done is to make it clear that our reference is, and is only, to a

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

natural species and not to an idea; our 'whole' work of art, is no longer creative, imitating an exemplary form, but merely a succedaneum, more or less apt to titillate our senses."[64]

7. *The Classification of Aesthetic Theories.*

We are now in a position to classify aesthetic theories, our ultimate aim being to formulate in exact terms the judgment in beauty-experience. First there are said to be Art of the ear and Art of the eye (श्रव्य and दृश्य), though we have according to Bharata, a third category which is both the Art of the ear and eye. Behind this distinction of graphic and auditory arts lies the whole psycho-aesthetics of space and time perception : For the arts of the eye are the enjoyable forms of spatial perception, while the arts of the ear or arts of the musical pattern are forms of temporal relations. Even a psychological account of time and space perception is quite intricate and interesting. Its Psycho-aesthetics further reveals that in spatial perception of form, colour, mass and volume, that is, the static qualities, the perceiving mind is in motion : A statue or a painting is not felt as beautiful so long as each turn of the line or bulge of the mass or the harmony of colours or its symmetry does not wake up to pulsating life. But what seems to be the pulsation of the object is only a rhythmic flow of the percipient mind. Thus the graphic art may be said to be enjoyed when its immobile qualities create mobility or movement by its inner dynamo in the enjoyer's mind. Music and musical arts like drama and dance, which are created in time, are the successive currents of intervals occupied by sound-harmonies. To be enjoyed the surge of currents should be gathered up in a moment, the flow arrested and intensified. Music therefore as movement in itself, is enjoyed by a creation of immobility of the soul.

This indeed sounds curious that 'immobility' is enjoyed by 'mobility' of the soul, and that the mobile arts are enjoyable in a state of immobility. J. H. Cousins[65]

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

calls it "the curious aesthetical contradiction", and classifies arts as mobile and immobile. The *Bhāgavata*[66] also maintains that the music spell of Kṛṣṇa's flute creates a stir in the immobile (जड़) objects and arrests the motion of the objects in motion (चर). The relative merit of this distinction over the previous one is that it takes note of both subjective and objective conditions in art and its enjoyment. On the previous classification of arts as those of the eye or those of the ear, no aesthetic judgment can be formed. The objective standpoint in aesthetic judgment is : This is beautiful because this is so and so. This may include both visual and auditory arts. The subjective viewpoint is : I feel it to be beautiful because I feel so and so. This may also refer to both of them. Thus we find that the classification of aesthetic theories for the sake of discovering the nature of aesthetic judgment should ultimately be subjective and objective arts.

Joad[67] and others have adopted this scheme. Admirable as it may seem, the scheme suffers from serious difficulties. As arte-xperience involves a sensible element, a purely subjectivist account of it is incorrect. But in so far as art-experience is *experience*, we cannot fully understand it only in terms of objective qualities, such as colour, volume or gestalt of a work of art. A work of art even as a perceptual object has a spirituality about it. As an object of aesthetic appreciation, it is completely spiritual. A piece of music as art is what it is enjoyed to be. A work of art is therefore equal to art-experience, a form of intensely enjoyable self-activity. Only it is less than mystic experience which is completely devoid of objective reference. Thus in any formulation of aesthetic judgment, there cannot be exclusive choosing of the subjective or the objective element. Art-experience being a bipolar activity, the difference in several formulations can arise from an emphasis on one or the other of the poles.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The Indian theorists never committed themselves to the extremist position. The literary form of art being regarded as the most explicit expression of the human value called "Beautiful", is defined by our poet-philosophers as Sāhitya, which means the happiest concord of Śabda and Artha. There are definite indications to prove that Śabda is not equal to 'word'. It is anything which is a source of experience. It may be regarded as the sensible material of art experience. A word thus is completely saturated with spirituality. It is a spiritual index of a sensible quality. Artha is the meaning, the intelligible element in art-experience. Art results from the complete fusion of form and matter. Viśvanātha, Jagannātha and Ānandavardhana lay emphasis on the subjective element without disregarding the objective. Vāmana, Daṇḍin and Bhāmaha emphasize the formal side.

It is certain that a classification *cannot be based on subjective-objective polarity*, and no aesthetic judgment formed. And yet each theory has its centre of gravity, either gravitating towards the spiritual or the sensible element in art. The centre of gravity is the centre of inspiration. An internally inspired art abounds in spiritual qualities. The process of its creation or re-creation in enjoyment reaches the outer fringe as a result of spiritual articulation. The process starts from the inmost recess of spiritual existence, which becomes creative and highly charged with rhythm. It flows outward to concretise itself, and when it succeeds it invents a symbol which embodies the inner rhythm. This art we may describe as 'symbolic'. We propose to call it as 'ego-centric' art. The point-blank example is that of Vālmīki, in whom the inner disturbance, his Śoka (pathos), agitated within his creative soul to find a suitable embodiment. But art sometimes is inspired by forms outside, the forms that are inspiring and have tremendous satisfaction value for the human soul. A beautiful[68] grove,

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

a cottage in a green setting, a lonely tree in a bare plain, a solitary journeyman bathed in the sunset glory, an aged bard tuning his lyre to himself, and so on are the spectacles which are to the human soul a soothing balm and enchantment. Much of the art that is descriptive and narrative, whether in painting or poetry, whether used for background effect to make a spiritual quality prominent or as interesting in its own right, is thus externally inspired. This art may be known as 'Alter-centric. It is the art of 'significant' forms, the forms which have emotional, instinctual or even notional meanings to us. Art reaches the high pinnacle of perfection when it is a blend of 'significant' forms coming from outside and 'symbolic' forms springing from within.

8. *Mysticism in Aesthetics.*

Creation or re-creation of art forms (whether we regard them as 'signifying' some select aspect of external Nature or as 'symbolizing' a deep spiritual experience) involves 'an incalculable element', a mysterious 'X'. Even if we analyse the form into subjective and objective elements, this incalculable element escapes us. And this element known as चमत्कार is the source of all aesthetic delight. We have regarded camatkāra as the very essence of Rasa experience without which it will be indistinguishable from ordinary emotional experience. Camatkāra is translated as thrill, but it is much more than that. A mere thrill has no aesthetic value. That is why we refuse to honour a mere catch-penny 'thriller' or 'blood-curdler' as an artistic production. Camatkāra is bliss, illumination, release and thrill, all at once, perhaps even much more. The ideal forms in art, whether 'Significant' or 'Symbolic', are different forms of thrill (विच्छित्ति or चमत्कारविशषts:). Camatkāras is the sine qua non of an art-form.

To the question—why camatkāra evades the pincers of the analyst—the one reply that is given is ; Creation

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

is an unconscious act. According to Graham Wallas, any act of creation passes through four stages. The first is the stage of Preparation. It consists of overt action, and effort of accumulating, choosing and rejecting. Then begins the period of 'sleeping over' the problem. This is the stage of Incubation. Action passes down from the conscious to the Unconscious. It is when the libido is introverted (अन्तर्मुखी) and returns to its original rhythmic state which is creative. In the unconscious, new thought, new form or new invention, gradually takes shape and begins to show up a little. This is the beginning of the stage of Illumination. The conscious mind receives the new form with a pleasing wonder. It is the full-fledged form heading, by its inner force, towards materialization. This last stage in aesthetic creation may be called Execution, which in creation of a scientific thought, Wallas calls verification.

What interests us here are the periods of Incubation and Illumination. The incalculable element in art form is due to the unconscious activity. This unconscious activity is, according to Jung, Incubation. Incubation is Tapas,[70] and we have ample evidence from our Upaniṣadic literature that all creation starts from Tapas. In the Tapas the bonds of individuality begin to shatter, and life moves to a newer and higher plane of existence. This experience of spiritual expansion, extraordinary, ecstatic and thrilling, is regarded as 'mystic' by the intellectualist. Such an experience can be brought about in other ways also. The way of art is to induce it by the dynamo of sensible symbols. Thus mysticism in art becomes an inevitable conclusion.

That individuality does not condition our unconscious being is a proved truth of modern Psychology. Jung tells us that

"Individuality belongs to those conditional actualities which are greatly overrated theoretically on account of their practical signifi-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

cance. It does not belong to those overwhelmingly clear, and therefore universally obtrusive general facts upon which a science must primarily be founded."[71]

The only pity is that modern Psychology does not regard this state of returning to the Unconscious, unconditioned by individuality bonds, as something healthy and supernormal. To us in India this mystic state of absorbing our small self in the very ocean of being and bliss is the height of life's pefection. And it is the source of all aesthetic charm.

9. *Pictorial Art.*

Art is graded into the first-rate (uttama), second-rate (madhyama) and pictorial (citra) according to the degrees of intrinsic capacity to take the mind beyond the mere sensible. The first-rate[72] art is that which subordinates the sensible element, and becomes suffused with, and a source of, aesthetic meaning. The sensible element reverberates with aesthetic suggestions and creates an overwhelming sense of value. An example[73] will illustrate the point; Pārvatī, the daughter of the Himālayas, sat with her father. To him the Heavenly Seers brought the message of Pārvatī's betrothal with Lord Śiva, on whom Pārvatī's young maiden heart was silently and irrevocably set. Kālidāsa describes the scene in a masterpiece as follows:

"So when the Seers spoke of the message of Pārvatī's acceptance in nuptials by Lord Śiva, she, looking downwards in the presence of her father, began counting the petals of the lovely lotus she held in her hand."

Here the counting of the petals, in itself insignificant, is the Key that unlocks the deep experience of joy, shyness and confusion of a young maiden who has just felt the first surge of erotic desire and its first fulfilment. But the sensible element, the counting of the petals by Pārvatī, is submerged under the tremendous flow of its aesthetic

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

suggestions. It may be added that a painter, dancer or sculptor succeeds in his respective domain of artistic creation to the extent to which he subordinates the media of presentation to what he presents, that is the aesthetic meaning.

In the second-rate[74] art-creation, our mind is so much overpowered by the medium that it does not move towards the mystic beauty-experience : We enjoy the sensible element, its direct and clear meaning which has a charm but no thrill. We relish it but do not enjoy. This is an art of sense-titillation and may easily head towards the sensational. The pictorial[75] art is third to come. Its main appeal is to the imagination and sense. It is seldom artistic and mostly artificial and caters for the infantile taste. The pictorial art, such as the use of alliteration in poetry or mosaic designing in painting or the use of too many ornaments in a statue, is a kind of cunning by an artist who is no artist at all. The pictorial art is born of the desire to attract and amaze the reader rather than awaken him to realize a new plane of existence. In art history, it is the sure index of the weakening of the beauty impulse and formative will.

Not that the colours, masses or lines do not speak at all. They have their suggestive power, and any collocation of them has a powerful emotional effect. Thus the sensible in art is the indispensable element. It becomes artistic the moment it begins to obey the Law of Subordination and Emphasis. Thus in the enjoyment of painting and poetry, the cubic suggestion sustains the aesthetic experience. The modern experiments in the psychology of 'thinking' also prove that even the subtlest and most abstract thought processes are borne on by a sensible element. The sensible element is either a visual, chromatic or sound imagery. It is the 'bearer', 'trager' (the carrier) of abstract thought. Exactly in the same way, the pic-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

torial element in art must act as the 'bearer' of beauty-emotion. Art is degraded to third-rate when the 'carrier' of aesthetic message overrides the 'rider' and fills our consciousness with its own dazzle. Ānandavardhana[76] condemns this subduing power of imagery as an act of artistic dereliction. The colour-effect becomes, Ānandavardhana continues, more re- grettable if it overshadows the delicate sentiments of Śṛṅgāra experience, specially that form of it which is known as Vipralambha where its delicacy demands the bare outpour of heart.

The figurative element in the first-grade art plays its part when it submits to the Law of Subordination and Emph asis. Ānandavardhana[77] goes deeper and subsumes this law under a higher principle of mental life. An imagery is a true figure in art if it is born of the creative state of Rasa-experience, so that no separate effort is needed to bring it about. The artist does not aim at imagery; but it follows spontaneously upon the heels of creative passion seeking articulation. The imagery which 'bears' the beauty-impulse,[78] says Ānandavardhana, is though a masterpiece of wonderful creation, automatic and incidental. When the sensible element emanates from an organic Rasa-experience it does not require a conscious effort on the part of the artist. Ānandavardhana emphasizes the ease and spontaniety of creative imagery in art. He tells us that a metaphor or any sensible element in art is very difficult to conceive in a cold intellectual[79] fashion. But when the artist begins to feel within him the upsurge of creative emotion, a whole stream of imagery bearing the beauty-impulse flows out. This is how the imagery and the colour-element in art is 'internalized' with Rasa-emotion. An imagery remains external (बहिरङ्ग), and therefore discordant, so long as it requires a separate effort for its production. The organic unity of a figure with the deeper aesthetic meaning is achieved this way only, without which the whole imagery will seem

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

to be a patchwork of mental pictures. The process of 'internalization'[80] or 'organization' of imagery with aesthetic experience is known as Śarīrīkaraṇaṁ (शरीरीकरणम्). Abhinavagupta tells us of this undercurrent of imaginal element in art experience that those figures alone achieve the inconceivable beauty and thrill, which are so 'organized' (शरीरतापादनम्) with their creative source. The emotion by overflowing the figures lends a new charm to them, without which they will be merely colour-illusions and cold in effect. At the same time the figurative element bottles up the fugitive experience, bears it up and conveys it to our souls in pleasing, concordant forms.

The law as put forward by Ānandavardhana subsumes under it and explains the Law of Subordination and Emphasis. It may be known as the Law of Organic Articulation. Our aesthetic consciousness, when in its intensely creative state, seeks re-ordering of the entire emotional life. When the emergence of the new order is in sight, the cognitive element works under the command of creative emotion, so that there is the total articulation of emotional life in imaginably pleasing forms. This gives a paradoxical result: While artistic beauty is immanent in the figurative forms and collocations, yet the element that unifies them into an organic whole and infuses them with pulsating life transcends them.

Beauty of a work of art lies in the forms, and yet it is not because of them. The work is beautiful and artistic because of, and to the extent to which, it achieves, the unity of subjective experience transcending the objective diversity. This is so with the moral judgment. Moral quality attaches to acts and intentions because they spring from an organic unity of life, that is the attitude which goes beyond them. Without the transcendent unity of experience, there is neither virtue nor beauty. There is no truth either in solitary cognitive experiences without their being

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

unified by a universal essence. An art is merely pictorial and descriptive in which the artist's creative passion does not reduce the rambling images into an organic unity. Ānandavardhana's Law of Organic Articulation is in line with the philosophical outlook of the Vedānta, where Truth means the articulation of a new cognitive order, Virtue the creation and expansion of a new order in conative life, and where 'growth' means the emergence of higher orders of existence.

Ānandavardhana[81] breaks up the Law of Organic Articulation into five sub-laws. (1) The metaphor, imagery, or for that matter, any art-element, must be worked up to intensify and sustain the transcendent unity of Rasa-experience and not independently. (2) It is worked up at the opportune time, (3) and it is left out at the proper moment, (4) there is no over-doing or over-development of any element, and lastly (5) the Law of Subordination asserts again and again so that the element does not tend to become a dominant and discordant note.

Mutatis mutandis the law and its five sub-laws apply to ethical life as well. Psychologically healthy life and ethically virtuous one is made possible by the internal organization of conative urges. If an unruly instinct breaks this organized unity of life and works its way to independent fulfilment, vice results. In the same way, an over-development and under-development of any aspect of life result in complex-formations. The complexes are the psycho-moral tumours, which are not only painful but also nasty, and make a really virtuous life impossible. The comparison goes further. Each act and intention receives its moral meaning in so far as it contributes towards, and, is derived from the master motive of life.

(To be continued)

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

THE CALL OF THE JAGADGURU.—Śrī Śaṅkarācārya of Kāñcī Discourses of H. H. Jagadguru Śrī Chandraśekharendra Saraswatī compiled by P. Śaṅkaranārāyaṇan, M.A., Professor of Philosophy, with a foreword by His Highness Jaya Chamarāja Wadayar, Maharaja of Mysore. Pages xxxii and 244. Price Rs. 4/-, Ganesh & Co. Ltd., Madras—17, 1958.

Ādi Śaṅkara after establishing the four *maṭhas* finally settled in Kāñcīpuram, the then centre of intellectual life in South India and founded the *Kāñcī Maṭha*. In support of this there is historical evidence of a reliable character. The present Jagadguru has been occupying the *gaddī* from 1910 and is at present for the past one year in the city of Madras delivering discourses in Tamil to large audiences; and the present work is a summary in English of his 43 speeches.

The Mahārāja of Mysore who belongs to the Śṛṅgerī Maṭha and follows the Śaṅkara tradition of Advaita Vedānta has contributed a foreword commending the work to the readers—the citizen of the modern "secular state" and appealing that our direct need is to become spiritual.

We warmly recommend this book to our students. The entire work is a stirring call to the people of modern days to believe in the sanctity of the works of the past and to live the life enunciated therein as far as modern conditions would permit. *Dharma* should be practised with courage and constancy.

To quote a few examples of the teachings embodied in the work, lecture 8 refutes the cheap ridicule that Hindu religion is polytheistic. There is throughout the work a constant note to trace the foundations of the Śaivite and the Vaiṣṇavite religions to their Vedic sources. Hindu

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

religion does not grow by propaganda but by the rigid observance of its votaries. It is our duty to resuscitate and strengthen the Vedic religion in letter and spirit. Mere chanting of the Vedas without knowing its meaning and application in practice is like preserving the body without the soul which is vital to it.

In lecture 31 he emphasises the place of a true Sannyāsin in society. Regarding the Government's proposal to start a Sannyāsī-Saṅgha, he explains that a Saṅgha is the very negation of the solitary life enjoined on the Sannyāsins. The true Sannyāsin is an asset and should not be condemned as an unproductive dependent on society.

In lecture 43 he discourses on the *Ṣaṭ-padī-Stotra* of Ādi Śaṅkara and shows that the text

"नारायण करुणामय शरणं करवाणि तावकौ चरणौ।"

is a succinct statement of the Śaraṇāgati Mantra—words of absolute dependence and surrender to God adapted by Śaṅkara.

—A. S. Nataraja Ayyar

THE NAVAYATS OF KANARA, By Victor S. D'Souza, M.A., Ph.D., published by Kannada Research Institute, Dharwar, xii; 266 pp. Rs. 5/-.

This is an ethnological and cultural study pertaining to the Muslim community of Navayats who are found in the coastal areas of North and South Kanara districts of the Mysore state throwing light on the social history of the community. An interesting account is given at the beginning about the commercial relations between Arabia and the bordering countries and India and the mode of formation of the Muslim communities on the coasts of India represented by the Muslims of Bhatkal, Navayats of Deccan, the Konkani Muslims, Moplahs and Labbais.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The derivation of the term Navayat is discussed and after a critical consideration of the different views about the origin of the Navayatis of Kanara it is traced that they are the progeny of male Arab and Persian ancestors who came by the way of Malabar and also directly from Arabia and Persia and married or consorted with some local Indian women who spoke a Konkani dialect. Numerous references that are given in the foot-notes not only add strength to the conclusions of the writer but also point to the wide range of the subject covered by this study. The minute details regarding every aspect of the Navayat life including details about their dwellings, ornaments, dress, food, mode of eating, marriage customs, religious practices, etc., indicate the thoroughness and the close intimacy with which the subject has been dealt with by the author. This is a valuable addition to the cultural history of different people living in India.

—V. Hanumanthachar

DESCRIPTIVE CATALOGUE OF MANUSCRIPTS IN THE KANNADA RESEARCH INSTITUTE, Dharwar, Vol. 2, edited by Prof. S. S. Malwad and Sri B. S. Kulkarni, 1955, xii : 125 pp. Rs. 3 and Vol. 3, edited by B. S. Kulkarni, xii : 119 ; pp. Rs. 3/-.

The Second Volume of the Catalogue describes 44 works and Vol. 3, 48 works giving, in the usual manner, particulars about the substance of the manuscripts, its size, extent, author and short extracts from the manuscripts. Reference is given in the case of some works to Kannada *Kavicarita* for any additional information and attention of the reader is drawn to some important works which are not noticed in the *Kavicarita*. These volumes as well as Vol. 1 describing 57 *mss.* edited by Sri R. S. Pancamukhi will be of great use to those who are engaged in the study

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of Kannada language and literature. In this connection it may be stated that many parts of Karnāṭaka are not fully explored with a view for collecting *mss*. A systematic and intensive search for manuscripts in that state would undoubtedly bring out many literary treasures which would throw more light on the history and culture of the people of Karnāṭaka. For this purpose the state Government should come forward with liberal grants, appoint search parties and organise manuscript libraries. Only then the formation of states on linguistic basis would have some significance.

—V. Hanumanthachar

A Guide to the Kannada Research Institute Museum, by A. M. Annigeri, M.A., Curator of the Museum, pub. by Kannada Research Institute, Dharwar., x; 60 : xii pp. Price 50 nP.

It is really gratifying to see that the *Kannada Research Institute*, Dharwar does not confine itself merely to the collection of manuscripts and publication of books, but is also taking active interest in collecting and preserving ancient relics in Karnāṭaka in the shape of archaeological finds, inscriptions, sculptures, coins, paintings etc., which are of great interest especially to a student of history. The book under notice which gives a vivid description of some of the more interesting objects, such as, pre-historic and historic antiquities, stone and metal images, memorial stones, epigraphs, coins, paintings, etc., and will be a true guide to the students of history and archaeology.

—V. Hanumanthachar

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

SANĀTANA-DHARMA-SŪTRAS of Bhagavān Śrī Nārāyaṇa: Preface, transliteration and translation into English by Śrī Janārdana, published by The Śuddha Dharma Office, Mylapore, Madras 4, xii : 78 pp. Price Rs. 2·50 nP.

This is the 11th publication in the *Śuddha Dharma Maṇḍala Series*, containing the text of the 33 Sūtras bearing on the Sanātana-dharma as explained by the followers of that Maṇḍala. These Sūtras are stated to have been originally taught by Bhagavān Śrī Nārāyaṇa to Sage Agastya. In his lengthy preface Śrī Janārdana has criticised the principles of the Sanātana-dharma prescribed by the ancient Seers and Law givers of India, which he identifies with Varṇāśramadharma, and has set forth the view of the Maṇḍala. According to this view Para Brahma, Jīva or Ātman and Prakṛti are the three tattvas. The Ātman becoming subject to the forces of Prakṛti which is the constituent of the three qualities---Sattva, Rajas and Tamas and knowing no way to control it, remains helpless until knowledge dawns. "Of all such knowledge it is the one regarding one's own state as Jīva that is held to be effective." This is the state of *Brahma-yoga* or *Śuddha-yoga* which is reached by the adept in the line. In broad outline this view corresponds to the principles of *Seśvara Sāṅkhya*. It is surprising that these Sūtras for which the origin is claimed from Śrī Nārāyaṇa had remained unknown to the world of scholars all these years.

—V. Hanumanthachar

Ganganatha Jha Research Institute 1943 Allahabad.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

THE EARLY WOODEN TEMPLES OF CHAMBA, by Hermann Goetz with 16 Plates and 12 Text-illustrations and one map. Leiden. E. I. Brill 1955. Memoirs of the Kern Institute, No. 1, pp. xiv and 121 with a foreword by J. Ph. Vogel.

The reviewer recommends unreservedly this monograph of the *Kern Institute*, Holland, as an ideal for Indian students to follow. The author has been connected with the editing of the Kern Institute's *Annual Bibliography* of Indian Archaeology and is now the curator of the National Gallery of modern art at New Delhi. The work describes the three hill temples in the Western Himālayas and they all pertain to the worship of the goddess under various names. At Brahmor she is called *Lakṣaṇā Devī*, at Chatrarhi *Śakti Devī* and at Chamba-Lahul she is known as *Kāli* for the Hindus and *Vajra-vārāhī* for the Tibetans. The author has not only described the ancient temples and images from an aesthetic and iconographical point of view, but has also given the historical background very elaborately and has traced their relation to the medieval art of India and unravelled the problems presented by the *Vaṁśāvalī* of the Rājas of Chamba in connection with our knowledge of contemporaneous Indian History. The evidence proves that the temples were erected in the 7th or the 8th centuries A.D.

This book assumes a real importance in the study of Indian Art as the great masterpieces of the period have been lost due to the invasions and ravages of time. The temples and images sheltered by the snowy peaks and gorges of the Himālayas are the representatives of that later Gupta art which was the source of most of the earlier art of Nepal and Greater India and of the Buddhist art in Eastern Turkistan, China and Japan. For this reason these temples and sculptures are of more than local interest; they are the keys to the great periods in the art history of Asia and of the world.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

RĀGATATTVAVIBODHA, by Śrīnivasa, edited by V. S. Desai, Oriental Institute, Baroda, Gaekwad's Oriental Series, No. cxxvi : 1956, pp. ix and 62. Price Rs. 4.

This is a work on North Indian Music edited for the firse time from a single manuscript in the collections of the Maharaja of Bikanir. The author is believed to have written between 1650 and 1680 A.D.

In the prefatory chapter the author has tried to establish in a novel way the importance and utility of Gāna basing his arguments on the *Vidhi* and *Niṣedha* as laid down by the Śruti, Smṛti and the Bhāgavata, and shows how besides gaining fame and wealth it is a sure way of obtaining final beatitude (*mokṣa*) and of constant companionship of the Almighty Lord.

The welcome feature of this publication is that the *Sangeet Nāṭaka Akademi*, New Delhi, sanctioned Rs. 10,000 to the Baroda *Oriental Institute* in 1955 for the publication of six works on Music, Dance and Dramatics; and the present publication is the first result of that grant.

THE SOMA HYMANS OF THE ṚGVEDA. A fresh interpretation, Part I (Ṛgveda ix 1—15) by S. S. Bhave, Head of the Department of Sanskrit University of Baroda, Oriental Institute Baroda, 1957, pp. 8, 105. Price Rs. 4.

Vedic scholarship in India has now taken a different shape. It is time that new translation of the Vedic literature, based on all the available materials, is done; and of them the *Ṛgveda* claims precedence along with a new Vedic Index. The present work before us has appeared at the opportune time and is an attempt at a fresh translation of fifteen Sūktas—137 Ṛks—in the IX Maṇḍala of the *Ṛgveda* taking into consideration all materials eastern

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and western from the days of the traditional interpretation culminating in the *Sāyaṇa-Bhāṣya*, up to the translation of Geldner (1923); and it takes into account also what modern Vedic scholarship has since done. The notes are exhaustive and explain the basis of the variant interpretations. We heartily congratulate the author on this learned and erudite translation with exegetical notes; and we eagerly await the publication of other parts of his translation.

In this connection we respectfully invite the attention of the Union Government that the translation of the Ṛgveda should be undertaken by them and the task should be entrusted to a central board of scholars. We would remind as to how the then Government of India sponsored the publication of Madonell and Keith's Vedic Index. What the then Government of India did the present Union Government should do with its ample resources. This is a field in which Indian scholars put to test have shown their mettle and it is high time that the results of Indian scholarship are allowed to be shown in their true colour. A suggestion may be made that the text of the Sūktas should have been given in Devanāgarī script along with the *Sāyaṇa-Bhāṣya*.

MARRIAGE AND FAMILY IN INDIA, by K. M. Kapadia, second edition, Oxford University Press (Indian Branch), 1958, pages xxxii and 318. Price Rs. 15-/.

The Oxford University Press should be congratulated for this excellent revised edition of the author's work. The author is a Reader in Sociology in the University of Bombay. The work may be divided into two parts: first, it deals with the history of the institutions of marriage and joint-family from the earliest times down to the present day inclusive of the interference by legislation. Secondly, it attempts at an evaluation of the working of the said

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

institutions at the present day. The first is important to the student of the history of social institutions in India and the second to students of modern sociology. Again, the work deals both with the Hindu and Muslim institutions. The Christian has evidently been omitted as being of recent origin after the British conquest.

The conclusions of the author on the historical working of the institutions are correct and they have been supported by reference to the original authorities. The author's observations on the working of the Institutions and forecasting trends are useful, and as he states "a comprehensive investigation by a team of sociologists is necessary for this purpose" (page xi).

For example divorce has come to stay as a legislative innovation; but it remains to be seen whether the provision may be used as medicine for remedying real individual ills or may be used as a handmaid of animal passions to corrupt the entire social system. The interference by the legislature with the institution of joint-family is deplored by the author, thus : "Hindu sentiments are hence [after an elaborate reasoning] even today in favour of the joint-family. The destruction of the joint-family by legislation is therefore, rightly considered to be non-Hindu, because, it ignores Hindu family history and sentiments (page 232).

Polyandry never existed as an Institution in Ancient India. The stray instance of the Pāṇḍawas marrying Draupadī is an anachronism. The modern instances in India, as in Assam etc., could be eradicated only by education. Polygamy though sanctioned by the *Dharma-Śāstras* was never in practice and monogamy now insisted by the legislature is welcome. Regarding the choice of the married pair the moral and legal injunctions found in the same ślokas in *Manu* had by the time of Medhātithi solidified into a few legal injunctions, such as, the prohibition of the *Sagotra* marriage and have ever since remained

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

as legal injunctions till the legislature wanted to abolish them as antiquated. The inter-caste marriage—the *Anuloma* type—once sanctioned by the *Dharma-Śāstras* has ceased to exist as a fact, for centuries until the legislature has now revived it and made it legal by its fiat. Hindu marriage even of the *Gāndharva* type had always remained a sacrament through the ages; and now the legislature has added a new civil type.

—A. S. Nataraja Ayyar

RATNAKIRTINIBANDHĀVALĪ.—Buddhist Nyāya Works of Ratnakīrti. Edited by Professor Anantalal Thakur, M.A., Mithila Sanskrit Institute of Post-Graduate Studies and Research, Darbhanga. Published in the Tibetan Sanskrit works Series, Vol. III, K.P. Jayaswal Research Institute, Patna, 1957. Price Rs. 4/- Pages 36+163.

The volume under review contains 10 small treatises on Buddhist logic by Ratnakīrti, a well-known scholar and disciple of Jñānaśrīmitra of the 11th century. Of these, three were already published in the *Bibliotheca Indica series*, under the title *Six Buddhist Nyāya Tracts*. Through the efforts of Śrī Rāhula Sāṅkṛtyāyana we are in possession of several Buddhists works in manuscripts which have been preserved in the K. P. Jayaswal Research Institute, Patna. A bundle in that collection contains all the treatises of Ratnakīrti written in Maithilī script.

Prof. A. L. Thakur has been working with great interest on Indian logic including Vaiśeṣika for a pretty long time and has done very good work. He has edited several works on Logic written by Buddhist scholars. His knowledge of the contribution of Jñānaśrīmitra and Ratnakīrti to Indian logic is admirable. It is through his hard labour that we are in possession of the works of the above mentioned Buddhist scholars in print.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

It is needless for me to say that the study of the Science of Reasoning started afresh with Akṣapāda Gotama in about the 6th century B. C., or a little later Akṣapāda wrote his *Nyāyasūtra* in exposition of the views attributed to Naiyāyikas and also in defence of the Āstika views against the unsound arguments of the followers of the Buddha attacking the Standpoint of Naiyāyikas in various aspects. The work of Akṣapāda became very effective and the Buddhists criticised it from their own separate angle of vision. The followers of Akṣapāda wrote on the *Nyāyasūtra* and criticised the views of the Buddhis, who, in their turn, did not spare the non-Buddhists. This academic struggle continued for centuries till we come to Udayana who, in a way, finally stopped the struggle. The logical thoughts of these centuries are therefore, interwoven in the works of the Buddhist and the non-Buddhist scholars. It is not possible to understand the link of the arguments of one school without studying the works of the other school.

The work under review helps us in many ways in understanding the problems of logic attributed to various scholars of the earlier centuries who wrote directly or indirectly on the Science of Reasoning. Most of these scholars were unknown to us before these references could be traced and verified. The scholars are really indebted to Professor A. L. Thakur for his strenuous efforts in editing the works and placing them before the scholarly world. It will not be, however, out of place to make a few remarks here in connection with the Preface, Introduction and also the arrangement of the treatises.

The *Nibandhas* as printed in the volume do not bear any reference to the *Tantra-Śāstra*, nor have the topics discussed therein any connection whatsoever with the Tāntrika practices and other problems of the Śāstra. I do not understand how the Preface-writer is justified to say—"The impression left by the Nibandhas of Ratnakīrti tends to show

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

that he was a Tāntrika of the first variety". If he understands that the word "नमस्तारायै" written at the top of some of the Nibandhas are indications of his being a Tāntrika, he should know that the manuscripts from which the press copy of these Nibandhas has been made were not the original manuscripts. It might have been written by the scribe of those manuscripts. Even if it were so, there was no occasion to discuss unnecessarily in the Preface Ratnakīrti's Tāntrika attitude which has no bearing on the subject. Coming to the arrangement of the *Nibandhas*, it may be pointed out that as the *Sthirasiddhidūṣaṇa* is referred to by the author in his *Kṣaṇabhaṅgasiddhi* (p. 84), it should have been placed before the latter and similarly, as the *Īśvaradūṣaṇa* was written earlier than the *Sarvajñasiddhi* (vide p. 16), the former should have been placed earlier. Again, as the *Citrādvaitasiddhi* was written earlier than the *Kṣaṇabhaṅgasiddhi* (vide p. 85), it should have been placed earlier. Lastly, as the *Apohasiddhi* was written earlier than the *Sthirasiddhidūṣaṇa* (vide p. 115), it should have been placed earlier than the latter. Thus, for the sake of critical study of these works, they should have been chronologically arranged as far as it is known to us. Thus, the arrangement should have been something like—

ईश्वरसिद्धिदूषणम्, सर्वज्ञसिद्धिः, अपोहसिद्धिः, स्थिरसिद्धिदूषणम्, चित्राद्वैतप्रकाशवादः, क्षणभङ्गसिद्धिद्वयम्, प्रमाणान्तर्भावप्रकरणम्, व्याप्तिनिर्णयः, सन्तानान्तरदूषणम्।

As to the remark "Particular references to the Buddhist views are traceable in his (Vātsyāyana's) work" (Introduction p. 16), it may be pointed out that recent researches have shown that the various views found in the *Nyāyabhāṣya* were older than the advent of the Buddha and his followers, and so it is not correct to attribute them to the later Buddhist *vādas*. It is a fact that some of those earlier views came to be associated with the later Buddhist *vādas*, but that cannot prove that Vātsyāyana borrowed them from the later Buddhists. Morever, nowhere either Akṣapāda, or Vātsyāyana or even

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Uddyotakara attributes any of the views to the known recent *Vādas* by name. Hence, the above remark of Professor Thakur is not in keeping with the advanced researches in Nyāya thought.

However, the edition is very useful and gives us enough information about a period which has been really very luminous, though ordinarily known to be dark. We congratulate the editor for his illuminating Introduction and achievement.

———

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

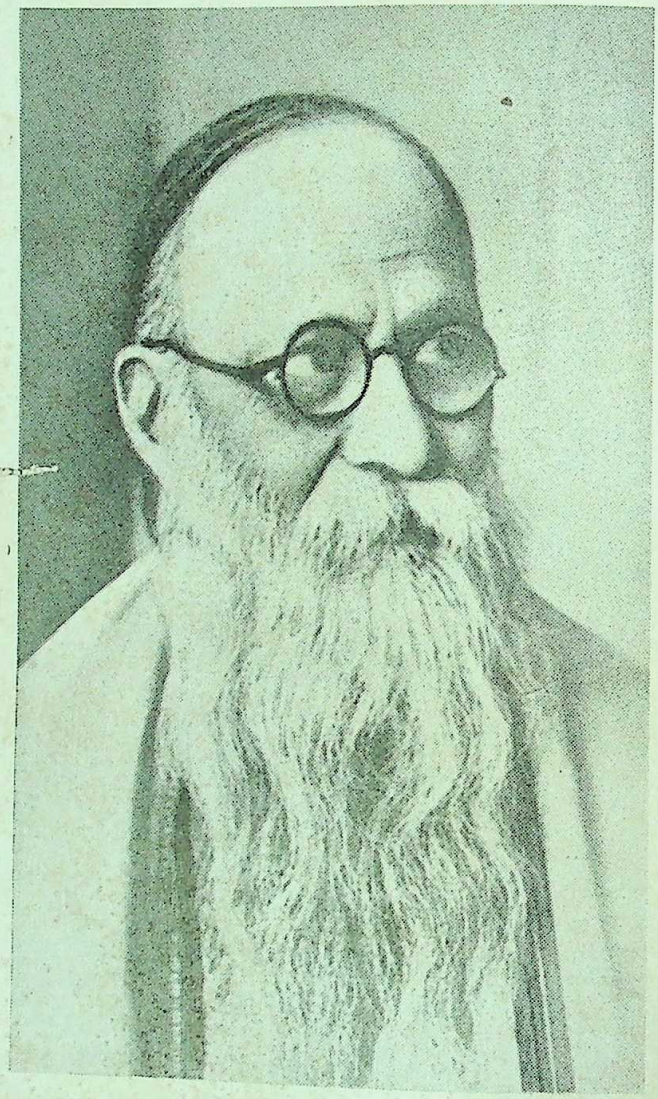
Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri



BHĀRATA RATNA DR. BHAGWAN DAS, M.A., D.LITT.

Born—January 29, 1869 ; Death—September 18, 1958.

President of the Ganganatha Jha, Research Institute from 9th April, 1949 to 18th September, 1958.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

OBITUARY

LATE BHARATA RATNA DR. BHAGVĀN DĀS* : A STUDY OF LIFE AND PHILOSOPHY

By DR. M. HAFIZ SYED

BHARATA RATNA DR. BHAGVĀN DĀS was born on the 29th January 1869, in the holy city of Kāśī. He showed signs of his brilliance at his early age. At the tender age of twelve years he passed his Matriculation Examination and obtained his Master of Arts Degree in Western Philosophy at a comparatively young age of eighteen. He did not take long to wait for a suitable job. The then United Provinces Government recognising his extraordinary merits straightaway appointed him as a Tahsildar and a year later he was promoted to the post of Deputy Collector, the duties of which he discharged with great distinction and served various districts of the Uttar Pradesh (the old United Provinces). In response to the call of some of his most esteemed friends more especially of late Dr. Annie Besant, he severed his connexion with the Government in 1898 and occupied himself wholeheartedly in the service of the Central Hindu College for quite a number of years. He served the Central Hindu College in various capacities and finally as a Secretary of the Board of Trustees. Later on, he served the Municipal Board, Banaras, as its Chairman for three years and the Kashi Vidyapith as its *Kulapati* from the time it was founded.

He took keen and active interest in the struggle for freedom of India. For some years he identified himself

*I am very much thankful to Śrī ŚrīPrakāshji, Governor of Bombay, who has kindly sent, at my request, the Photograph accompanying this article, of his father, the late Bhārata Ratna Dr. Bhagwān Dās—who was the President of our Institute till the last day of his life, 18th September, 1958.—EDITOR

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

with the Congress Politics and had to undergo incarceration perhaps for six months or more. He was elected by the seven cities of the Uttar Pradesh (then called United Provinces) to the Central Legislative Assembly and remained in office for two or three years. Due to his advancing age and his deeper interest in the cultivation of higher purpose, he resigned his membership of the Central Legislature and fully occupied himself in the pursuit of philosophic learning and interpretation of Indian Thought. In his own inimitable manner and original way of thinking he expounded ancient Indian wisdom according to modern methods.

Publications

During all the days of Government service and later the service of his own people he quietly and devotedly pursued his studies of the deeper problems of life. It was in 1904 that he published the *Science of Peace* which was recognised by eminent thinkers of India and Western countries as a monumental work of original speculation based upon his deeper insight into Eastern and Western Thought. It is a treatise on metaphysics which brings peace and certainty to every open-minded and genuine enquirer into the why and wherefore of many subtle and complex problems of life.

The second edition of this book in an enlarged and revised form was published in 1921. The second and great work of his was the *Science of Emotions* which has won the appreciation of modern psychologists who have acclaimed it as a solid contribution of Indian thought to human psychology. His another outstanding contribution has been the *Science of Social Organisation*, a wonderful interpretation of the ancient laws of Manu and their comparison with the modern development of social science.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Besides these original and by far the most thought-provoking philosophical works, his three volumes of "*Praṇava-Vāda*" deserve special mention. During his stay in Bara Banki as a Deputy Magistrate he came in contact with Pt. Dhanarāja who possessed colossal memory and who remembered by heart quite a large number of Sanskrit books up till that time unknown to the world. One of the books dictated by Pt. Dhanarāja was '*Praṇava-Vāda*' over which Dr. Bhagwan Das took immense pains, wrote out most carefully all that Pandit Dhanarāja dictated to him, corrected and revised it most meticulously and translated them into English and interpreted them in a most lucid manner. This service of his can never be forgotten, because, but for him and his labour of love, all that has come to us as an exposition of the philosophy of "*Praṇava*" would have been lost to the world of learning. In his later days he published several other books such as *Krishna*, *Mystic Experiences*, *Annie Besant and the Changing World*, *World-War and its Only Cure—World Order and World Religion*, *Communalism and its Cure by Theosophy*, *the Philosophy of Non-Co-operation*, *Ancient Solutions of Modern Problems*, *Social Reconstruction* and the *Science of Religion*, besides numerous pamphlets and articles which have been very much appreciated in various parts of India.

Faith in the Unity of Religions

There is another service to the cause of Religions of the World which Dr. Bhagwan Das has rendered in a most scholarly and most convincing manner. His now famous book on the *Essential Unity of all Religions* which has already undergone several editions, is too well-known to need further mention. By publishing this book he has proved categorically that all the religions of the world have sprung from a common stock and bear unity of thought and aims in essential principles. This volume has done

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

not a little in emphasizing the fact that the underlying principle of all the religions is one and the same. Coming as we do from a common source we all have a common destiny and a fairly common method of spiritual realization.

Ātma-Vidyā

Dr. Bhagwan Das's system of philosophical thought is perhaps all his own. He bases his philosophy on *Ātma-Vidyā*, or the *Science of the Self*. His point of view may be stated, in his own words :

He is a believer in infinitely countless individual selves or souls; (2) in their rebirths, evolution and involution in and through evolving and involving, integrating and disintegrating, forming and dissolving, material bodies and surroundings : the passing of each self, through all possible experiences, in infinite time, space and motion; (3) in cycles and circles of time and space on all possible scales of duration and extent, in which the process of rhythmic evolution and involution manifest themselves : (4) in one all-including, all-pervading, ever complete timeless, spaceless, universal soul of self, whose eternally changeless, and yet also ever changing Ideation, the entire world process of all souls and bodies is.

According to him the science of self can help the orderly conduct of the individual life, within the social life and vouchsafe earthly and spiritual well-being within the reach of all.

Applicability of Indian Philosophy

It is said in certain quarters that philosophy is merely speculative and theoretical; it cannot be applied in the scientific manner to the solution of social, political and economical problems. It has no use in every day human life. Its intellectual advantages are admitted but it is

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

wrongly supposed that it is of no use in ameliorating the condition of human society. This view of philosophy may be true in regard to Western system of philosophy; but the same cannot be asserted in regard to Indian systems of philosophy.

According to the Indian philosophical tradition the object of the study of philosophy is to put an end to pain and to ensure human happiness exempt from decay. From the Indian point of view, Western philosophy is barren and does not lead us anywhere beyond helping us to develop the power of thought but Indian philosophy leads us somewhere and gives us some insight into the why and wherefore of life's questions. It also vouchsafes us certain amount of certainty in our search for truth.

During the last fifty years and more efforts have been made to study Indian philosophy critically and systematically. Several eminent scholars have worked zealously in this field and have produced works of great merit; but they have mostly confined themselves in interpretation of ancient Indian philosophy in terms of Modern Thought. There, they have stopped. They have made no serious attempt to apply the fundamental basic principle of India's ancient wisdom to the solution of current social, political and other human problems. It may be safely asserted that unlike other Indian philosophers of the present day Dr. Bhagwan Das holds his own and has done his very best in expounding and solving some of the current Indian problems in the light of ancient wisdom.

What is True Democracy?

In his well-known book "*Ancient Solutions of Modern Problems*" page 48, he says, "As things are, today, most of the so-called self-governments of the world are, not governments of the people, by the (higher self, the select and elect best, of the) people, for the (welfare of the)

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

people, but "of the people, by the (lower self, the push-ful, cunning, scheming, self-seeking, intriguing, worst of the) people, for the (aggrandisement of cliques of bureaucrats and handfuls of capitalists and militarists, and against) people."

Truly democratic spirit is revealed in the following statement (page 65) :—

"Aryan culture says that if a hundred men of the people complain against any public servant he shall be dismissed forthwith."

In his wonderful treatise on the *Science of Religion* (p. 127), we read, "that no birth not even learning, but conduct is the supreme test of the regeneracy."

Value of Bhagwan Das's Works

Some Hindu leaders have begun taking interest in the revival of what they call Hindu Culture without taking the least trouble to find out what is stands for and what its spiritual basis is. It was left to Dr. Bhagwan Das alone to expound and prove what was and what should be the philosophic basis of Hindu Culture and how it could not be brought on the level of modern requirements in order to preserve its true spirit in the amidst of conflicting ideologies existing in our country. In short, Dr. Bhagwan Das's services to the cause of Indian Thought, Indian Culture, Indian Religion, Indian Society and Indian Politics are too great and too all-embracing to be adequately expressed in the limited space of a short article.

Sincere workers in various fields of human welfare would do well to study his truly inspiring and constructive original suggestions conveyed in his variety of books in order to fit themselves for the acquisition of right understanding and right form of activity which may help them to reorganise their various institutions in the light of ancient wisdom the like of which the world has not yet seen and found.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

JOURNAL
OF THE
GANGANATHA JHA RESEARCH INSTITUTE

Vol. XVI] MAY—AUGUST 1959 [Parts 3—4

STUDIES IN INDIAN HISTORY & GEOGRAPHY BASED ON EARLY GREEK ACCOUNTS

By Dr. B. C. Law

The accounts left by the early Greek historians and geographers regarding India are very valuable. The prominent among them may be mentioned. Flavius Arrianus of Nicomedia in Bithynia, (born about A.D. 96),[1] who lived during the reigns of Hadrian, Antoninus Pius, and Marcus Aurelius, was the author of the *Indica* containing a description of India in the Ionic dialect including the voyage of Nearchus intended to be a supplement to the *Anabasis*, *Periplus of the Euxine*, an official account written for the Emperor Hadrian, etc. Alexander's expedition to India produced a large number of narratives and memoirs relating to India. But all these works are lost and their substance is found in brief in Strabo (60 B.C.—19 A.D.), Pliny (a naturalist, 23—79 A.D.), and Arrian. Much more information can be gathered from Diodorus (100 B.C.—100 A.D.), Curtius (A.D. 100), and Justinus (not later than 500 A.D.). Megasthenes (305 B.C.), who stayed for a long time in India, gave us an interesting account of India. Before Arrian and Megasthenes Hecatoeus of Miletus (500 B.C.) helped Herodotus (484—431 B.C.) much to know about India and

[1] Some say that he lived in 200 A.D. while others are of opinion that he lived up to 172 A.D. (R. K. Mookherjee, *Chandragupta and his times*, p. 6).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the Indians. Hecatoeus was the first Greek geographer who knew the two continents of Europe and Asia. Ktesias of Knidos (Ctesias of Cridus, 398 B.C.), who was the physician and historian at the court of the Persian Emperor Artaxerxes Mnemon and a contemporary of Xenophon, gave us an account of India less accurate than that of Arrian. The accounts of India given by Megasthenes and Eratosthenes (about 240 B. C.) were used by Arrian while giving a general description of India. The account of the voyage made by Nearchus the Cretan from the Indus to the Pasitigris given in the second part of Arrian's *Indica*, is mainly based on the narrative of the voyage written by Nearchus himself.

The account of the Asiatic expedition of Alexander the great, given by Arrian, who was the best of Alexander's historians, is no doubt remarkable for the accuracy of its narrative and the perfect purity of its style and clearness. Ancient India as described by Ptolemy is very useful in studying the early geography of India.

An attempt has been made in this article to reconstruct the history and geography of Ancient India based on the writings of the early Greeks.

From the time of Dionysos to Sandrakottos the Indians counted 153 kings and a period of 6042 years but among these a republic was thrice established. Dionysos, according to the Indians, was earlier than Herakles by fifteen generations, and no one excepting him made a hostile invasion of India. Not even Kyros, son of Kambyses, made any hostile invasion, although he undertook an expedition against the Skythians and showed himself the most enterprising monarch of Asia. Alexander came and overthrew in war all whom he attacked and would have conquered the whole world, had his army been willing to follow him. An Indian king, on the other hand, was prevented by a sense of justice from making an

Alexander and Indian kings

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

attempt to conquer beyond the limits of India.[2] Rapson says that this assertion on the part of Arrian certainly seems true for the earliest times.[3]

Megasthenes did not travel much over India, though he saw more of it than those who came with Alexander, the son of Philip. He resided at the court of Sandrakottas, the greatest king in India, and also at the court of Poros. Megasthenes also informs us that the Indians neither invaded other men nor other men invaded the Indians. For Sesostris the Egyptian, after having overrun the greater part of Asia and advanced with his army as far as Europe, returned home. Idanthyrsos the Skythian subdued many nations of Asia and carried his victorious arms even to the borders of Egypt. Semiramis, the Assyrian queen, took in hand an expedition against India but died before she could execute her design. Thus Alexander was the only conqueror who actually invaded the country. Regarding Dionysus many traditions are current that he made an expedition into India and subjugated the Indians before the time of Alexander. Tradition does not say much about Herakles. The Nysaeans joined Alexander's party.[4] Of the expedition led by Bakkhos the city of Nysa[5] was no mean monument, while the mount Meros[6] was yet another. There were but few memorials of Herakles who was unable to take the rock, Aornos,[7] which Alexander seized.

---

[2] *Indica*, 9, 12.

[3] *Cambridge History of India*, I, p. 321 f. n. [4] *CHI*, I, 354

[5] It was a Greek colony long before the advent of Alexander to India (Chinnock, *Arrian's Anabasis* p. 399). Holdich points out that the lower spurs and valleys of Koh-i-Mor are where the ancient city of Nysa once stood (*Gates of India*, p. 122). D. R. Bhandarkar says that Nysa was situated between the Kophen (the Kabul river) and the Indus (*Carmichael Lectures*, 1921, p. 32; Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, p. 154, f. n. 4).

[6] It is called Mar-Koh near Jalalabad in the Punjab visited by Alexander (McCrindle, *Invasion of India*, p. 338).

[7] Vide McCrindle, *Invasion of India by Alexander the Great*, p. 39.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Alexander while leaving India established the new order of things. He appointed Spatembas, one of his companions to be the king of the country. When Spatembas died, his son Boudyas succeeded to the sovereignty. The father reigned over the Indians for fifty-two years and his son, twenty. Kradeuas, the son of Boudyas, duly inherited the kingdom and thereafter the succession was generally hereditary. When failure of heirs occurred in the royal family, the Indians elected their sovereigns on the principle of merit. Herakles[8] was really an Indian. He was held in high honour by the Sourasenoi,[9] an Indian tribe,

[8] The dress which he wore resembled that of the Theban Herakles. He had many male children but one daughter whose name was Pandaia. She received from her father 500 elephants, a cavalry of 4000 strong and an infantry of one hundred and thirty thousand men. According to some Indian writers, when Herakles was going over the world and ridding land and sea of whatever evil monsters which infested them, he saw in the sea an ornament for women which was eagerly bought and carried away to foreign markets. It was the sea-pearl known as Margarita. Herakles appreciated its beauty and caused it to be brought to India that he might adorn his daughter with it. (McCrindle, *Ancient India*, p. 206).

[9] The Sourasenoi or the Śūrasenas were among the tribes who occupied a rank in Indo-Aryan Society, second only to that of the small population of the narrow strip of Brahmāvarta. Therefore they must have belonged to the Vedic people, though probably they had not acquired sufficient political importance in very early times to find a mention in the *Ṛgveda* or the subsequent Vedic literature. They must have occupied the Muttra district and possibly some of the territories till farther south according to some (*Cambridge History of India*, Vol. I, p. 316). Rhys Davids says that they lived immediately southwest of the Matsyas and the west of the Jumna with Madhurā as their capital (*Buddhist India*, p. 27). The capital of the Śūrasenas was Mathurā on the Jumna included in the Agra division of the United Provinces. It lay on the upper Jumna about 270 miles in a straight line north-west of Kauśāmbī. The Greek historians make mention of Mathurā. It was noticed by Arrian on the authority of Megasthenes as the capital of the Sūrasenas and Ptolemy also mentions it. The Greek writers also make mention of another city of the Śūrasena country named Cleisobora (Kṛṣṇapura, Brindāvana). Lassen transcribes Chrysobara as Kṛṣṇapura (*Indische Altertumskunde*, I, p. 127, n. 3). He locates it at Agra. Cunningham identifies it with Keśavapura mahalla of Mathurā (*ASIR.*, XX. p. 45). Some suggest that Gokul on the left bank of the Jumna five miles south south-east of Mathurā, may be identified with it (Cunningham, *Ancient Geography*, S. N. Majumdar's Ed., p. 707). According to the Greeks Methora (Mathurā) was situated on the banks

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

who had two large cities, Mathora and Cleisobora,[10] through whose country flowed a navigable river called the Jobares.[11] It was asserted that a cave in the dominions of the Parapamisadai, was taken to be the cave of Prometheus the Titan, in which he had been suspended for stealing the fire.

No difficulties could daunt the courage or defeat the skill of Alexander.[12] Alexander divided his forces leaving Krateros, the man most faithful to him and whom he valued equally with himself.[13] Kleophis, the consort of the slain chieftain and her infant son were captured and it is said that she subsequently bore a son to Alexander. Arrian in his *Anabasis*[14] speaks of the mother and daughter of Assakenos. According to Arrian[15] Kleophis must have been the widow of the chief slain in the siege. Arrian supplies an account of the death of Boukephala.

Alexander crossed the Akesines (Chenab) near the foot of the hills. The passage of the river was difficult by reason of the rapid current of the stream, and of the large rocks with which the channel was bestrewn, and on which many boats were wrecked.[16] Arrian in his *Anabasis*[17] says that these particulars clearly prove that the Akesines (the Chenab river) was crossed near the foot of the hill, some 25 or 30 miles above Wazirabad. Arrian further says[18] that the fleet when descending the Hydaspes (Jhelum) from

---

of the Jumna higher up than Agra from which it was 35 miles distant. This city was situated to the south of Indraprastha (*Mahābhārata*, Sabhāparva, XXX, 1105-06).

[10] Cleisobora (Clisobora) has been identified by some with Mahāvana, six miles to the south of Mathurā on the opposite bank of the Yamunā (Growse's *Mathurā*, p. 279). It has been identified with Brindāvana according to Cunningham (*Ancient Geography*, p. 429).

[11] The Yamunā river (modern Jumna).

[12] Arrian, *Anabasis*, vii, 15.

[13] *Ibid.*, vii, 12.

[14] iv. 27. [15] v. 20.

[16] Smith , *Early History of India*, 4th Ed., p. 77.

[17] v. 20. [18] *Anabasis*, vi. 2.4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Nikaia, the town of the battlefield, reached the capital of Sophytes, king of the salt range, on the 3rd day. According to Cunningham the capital of Sophytes was at Ahmedabad. The battle of Hydaspes was fought after the summer solstice, that is to say, later than 21st June. Not satisfied with the vast empire he possessed, Alexander wanted to lead an expedition to Arabia. He made a voyage down the Euphrates and began the construction of a dockyard at Babylon. Suddenly in the midst of his preparations he was stricken with fever. He became speechless and died at an early age of 32 in the height of his fame and the splendid plenitude of his power.[19]

Some Indian Tribes

The four tribes, namely, Isari, Cosyri, Izgi, Chisiotosagi and the Brachmanae were located somewhere in Kāsmere or its immediate neighbourhood. The Isari were probably the same as the Bysari according to Pliny. The Cosyri are to be identified with the Khasira mentioned in the *Mahābhārata* as the neighbours of the Daradas and Kāśmīras. The Izgi are mentioned by Ptolemy under the name of the Sizyges as a people of Serike. The Chisiotosagi or Chirotosagi are probably identical with the Chiconae. The Prinas were probably the Tamasā or Tonsa mentioned in the *Purāṇas* as Parṇāsā.[20]

The Sibai,[21] an Indian tribe, wore skins. Relying on this fact it was declared that they were descended from those who belonged to the expedition of Herakles. The

[19] Sykes, *History of Persia*, I, p. 300.

[20] McCridle, *Ancient India*, p. 135 f. n.

[21] There can hardly be any doubt as to the identity of the *Rgvedic* Śivas with the Sibai or Siboi of the Greeks (Arrian, *Indica*, V. 12; Diodorus XVII, 96). When the army of Alexander, says Arrian, came among the Sibai, an Indian tribe, and noticed that they wore skins, they declared that the Sibai were descendants of those who belonged to the expedition of Herakles and had been left behind; for besides being dressed in skins the Sibai carried a cudgel and brand on the backs of their oxen. It seems reasonable to suppose from the description of

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Sibai carried a cudgel and brand on the backs of their oxen, the representation of a club, wherein the Macedonians recognised a memorial of the club of Herakles. Arrian says that if anyone believed all this, this must be another Herakles not the Theban but either the Tyrian or the Egyptian or some great king who belonged to the upper country lying not far from India.

Political motives prompted king Abisares at first to seek Alexander's protection but later he was inclined to resist the invader by joining his forces with those of Poros.[22] The region occupied by the Glauganicians lay in close proximity with the kingdom of Poros according to Arrian.[23] The country occupied by them is said to have been the most populous with numerous cities.

The Abastanoi were the same as the Ambaṣṭhas according to Arrian.[24] In Alexander's time they were settled on the lower Akesines (*Asikṇī*) and had a democratic government. They had an army of 60,000 foot, 60,000 cavalry and 500 chariots.[25] They eventually submitted to Alexander.[26] They were called by Ptolemy as Ambastai who settled in the east of the country of the Paropanisadai, which was a collective name for the tribes that were located along the southern and eastern sides of the Hindukush.[27] The Ambaṣṭhas were the same as the Abastanoi (Arrian), Sambastai (Diodoros), Sabarcæ (Curtius), Sabagræ (Orosius) of Alexander's historians.[28]

---

of their dress and weapons that the tribe belonged to a racial group not distinctly Aryan. They are said to have had forty thousand foot soldiers at the time of Alexander. During the time of Alexander's invasion the Siboi or Sibai are said to have dwelt between the Indus and the Akesines or the Chenab., For further details vide Law, *Indological Studies*, Pt. I, pp. 24—26; Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, pp. 82 ff.

22 Chinnock, *Arrian's Anabasis*, p. 276. 23 *Ibid.*, p. 276.

24 McCrindle, *Invasion of Alexander*, 292. 25 *Ibid.*, p. 252.

26 *Cambridge History of India*, I, p.376.

27 McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, pp. 311-12.

28 McCrindle, *Invasion of India*, pp. 292 ff.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

According to Arrian the Brachmans or the Brāhmaṇas seemed to have been very influential in the principality of Mousikanos[29] comprising a large portion of modern Sind.[30] They are said to have been the main agents in bringing about an uprising of the people against the Macedonian invader. At last they had to submit to Alexander. A city of the Brāhmaṇas had to be stormed while the operations against Sambus were going on.[31]

What Megasthenes tells us that the Indian tribes were one hundred and eighteen in number, does not seem to be true. He further tells us that the Indians in ancient times were nomadic. Like the Skythians they did not till the soil but they roamed about in their wagons from one part of Skythia to another, neither dwelling in towns nor worshipping in temples. Similarly the Indians had neither towns nor temples of the gods. They were so barbarous that they wore the skins of such wild animals as they could kill and subsisted on the bark of trees. These trees were called *Tāla* in Indian speech. They also subsisted on wild animals caught by them, eatng the raw flesh before Dionysos came to India. Dionysos when he came and conquered the Indian people, founded cities and gave laws to these cities and introduced the use of wine among the Indians, taught them to sow the land, himself supplying the seeds for the purpose. It is also said that Dionysos first yoked oxen to the plough and made many of the Indians cultivators instead of nomads and supplied them with implements

---

[29] The territory of the Mousikanos was we l-known to Alexander's historians. Alexander took them by surprise and they had to submit to him (*CHI.*, I, p. 377). According to Strabo (Hamilton & Falconer's Tr. III, p. 96) they used to eat in public and their food consisted of what was taken in the chase. They made no use of gold or silver. They employed youths in the flower of their age instead of slaves. They studied the science of medicine with due attention. They never liked to go to law-courts by creating constant disputes.

[30] Chinnock, *Arrian*, p. 319.

[31] *Diodoros*, XVII, 103. 1; *Arrian*, VI, 16.5.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

for agriculture. The Indians worshipped gods with cymbals and drums as taught by Dionysos who also taught them the satyric[32] dance. Dionysos instructed the Indians to let their hair grow long in honour of the gods and to wear the turban. He also taught them to anoint themselves with unguents, so that even upto the time of Alexander, the Indians were marshalled for battle to the sound of cymbals and drums. Towards the north beyond the Himālayas the Uttarakuri were the people who dwelt enjoying long and happy life.[33] The Gangaridai were a nation having a vast force of the biggest sized elephants. Alexander did not make war with them knowing that they had 4000 well-trained elephants and that they were fully equipped for war.[34]

Arrian mentions two cities belonging to the Aspasians (Iranian name *Aspa* corresponding to Sanskrit *Aśva*) named Andaca and Arigacon.[35] Massaga (Maśakāvatī[36] or Massaka or Mazaga or Masoga),[37] which was the capital town and the Assakenian stronghold in eastern Afghanistan, was stormed by the troops of Alexander. When the town capitulated, a large number of mercenary troops, who were assembled there, agreed to join the army of Alexander. At night they secretly planned to escape. At this the Macedonians spared none of them to live till morning.[38] One of the ascetics was per-

Cities & Towns

[32] Satyr—Greek wood-god.

[33] *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian*, p. 23.

[34] *Ibid.*, pp. 32-33.

[35] Chinnock, Arrian's *Anabasis*, pp. 230-31.

[36] It was the capital town of the Assakenoi according to the Greek writers. It was the kingdom of king Assakenos (*CHI.*, Vol. I, p. 353; Law, *Indological Studies*, I, pp. 2-3; Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, pp. 180 ff.).

[37] Smith, *Early History of India*, 4th Ed., p. 57 f. n. 1.

[38] *Arrian*, IV, p. 27; *Diod.*, XVII, 84; *Cambridge History of India*, I, p. 353.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

suaded by the king of Taxila to become a companion of Alexander. He was called by the classical writers as Kalanos who was a disciple of Dandamis.[39] Alexander, when he arrived at Taxila, saw the Indian gymnosophists whose endurance he admired. The eldest of these sophists with whom the others lived as disciples having Dandamis as their master, not only refused to go himself but prevented others from going. Alexander did not put forth his hand to violence knowing him to be of an independent spirit. He is said to have won over Kalanos, one of the sophists, whom Megasthenes represents as a man utterly wanting in self-control.[40]

Lamghān, a small territory, lay along the northern bank of the Kabul river. Lambatai were its inhabitants. It was visited by Hiuen Tsang. It was known as *Lan-po* according to him.[41] *Souastene* designates the basin of the Souastos (i.e. the basin of the Swat river). It was known as Subhavāstu or Suvāstu. It was visited by Hiuen Tsang who called it the kingdom of U-Chang-na.[42] The *Daradrai* inhabited the mountain region which lay to the east of the Lambatai and of Souastene and to the north of the uppermost part of the course of the Indus along the north-western frontier of Kāśmīr. Strabo mentions them as Derdai and Pliny as Dardae.[43] They were also known as the Dardanoi. According to the *Mahābhārata* (Droṇaparva, Ch. 10, 18) they fought with the Kaurava forces in the Kurukṣetra battle and were defeated by Vāsudeva. The *Viṣṇupurāṇa*[44] and the *Matsyapurāṇa*[45] associate them with the Ābhīras and

[39] *Arrian*, VII, 24; *Strabo*, XV. c. 714 ff.

[40] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*, pp. 116-17.

[41] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, 1927, Ed., 106.

[42] McCrindle, *Aneient India as described by Ptolemy*, 1927, pp. 106-107.

[43] *Ibid.*, p. 107.

[44] Wilson's Ed., II, p. 184.

[45] CXXI, 45—51.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Kāśmiras and link their country with Gandhāra, Śivapura, etc. *Kaspeiria* is identical with the valley of Kashmir. It is a contraction of Kāśyapamira (Kaspapyros, 'a Gandaric city'). *Kāśyapapura*, the city of Kāśyapa, is the original designation of Kāśmīr.[46] The Kulindas were the inhabitants of Kulindrine. According to Cunningham[47] *Kulindrine* is identified with Jālandhara. This is not accepted by St. Martin. The *territory of Kuluta*, which was formed by the upper part of the Vipāśā basin, is included in the Kulindrine or Kylindrine of Ptolemy.[48] It was visited by Hiuen Tsang who called it K'in-lu-to. *Goryaia* designates the territory traversed by the Gouraios or the Ghor river[49]. The Ghor river is an affluent of the Kabul river now called the Landai, formed by the junction of the river Pañjkora and the Swat river. Alexander passed through Goryaia and entered the territory of the Assakenoi after having crossed the river Gouraios. *Nagara* or Dionysopolis has been identified by Lassen with Nanghenhar, sanskrit Nagarahāra. Hiuen Tsang visited it, who called it Na-kie-lo-ho.[50] *Gandarai* is Gandhāra having two important cities of Takṣasilā (Taxila) and Puṣkalāvatī (Peukelaotis) or Puṣkarāvatī. Puṣkarāvatī is said to have been founded by Puṣkara, son of Bharata and nephew of Rāma.[51] It is called also Peukelai by Dionysius Periegetes. Takṣasilā (modern Taxila) is called Shi-shi-Ch'eng. It figures prominently in Buddhist and Jain stories.[52] The Chinese traveller Fa-hien distinguishes Takṣasilā from Gandhāra.[53] According to Strabo the country of the Gandarai, which he called Gandaritis lay between

[46] *Ibid.*, pp. 108-109. [47] *AGI*, p. 157.
[48] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, pp. 109-110.
[49] *Ibid.*, p. 110. [50] *Ibid*, p. 113.
[51] Wilson, *Viṣṇupurāṇa*, Vol. IV. Ch. 4.
[52] *Dīpavaṁsa*, III, 31; *Jāt*, II, pp. 219—21; *Jāt* IV, p. 391; Law, *Historical Gleanings*, Chap. I; Law, *India as described in early texts of Buddhism & Jainism*, pp. 278, 280—282.
[53] Legge, *Fa-hien*, pp. 31-32.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the Khoaspes and the Indus and along the river Kophes or the Kabul river.[54] Herodotus mentions the *Gandarioi*.[55] Herodotus describes them as being clad in cotton garments and bearing bows of reed and arrows tipped with iron.[56] *Arsa* represents the sanskrit *uraśa*, the name of a district which is to be identified according to Cunningham with the modern district of Rash in Dhantāwar to the west of Muzafarabad. It was visited by Hiuen Tsang[57] who places it between Taxila and Kashmere. It was called *u-la-shi* by the Chinese pilgrim.

Sāgala also called Euthymedia is the sanskrit Sākala, which has been identified by General Cunningham with Sanglawala Tiba. A fine description of Sāgala is given in the *Milinda-pañho*[58] which is an important post canonical Pali work. It is mentioned freequently in the *Mahābhārata* as the capital of the Madras. It lay to the west of the Ravi. Alexander visited this city on learning that the Kathaians and other warlike tribes occupied that stronghold for the purpose of opposing his advance to the Ganges.[59]

Labokla has been identified with Lahore, the capital of the Punjab.[60] *Ostobalasara*[61] has been identified by St. Martin with Sthāniśvara or modern Thaneswar. *Indabara* is ancient Indraprastha or modern Delhi.[62] It was the later capital of the Kuru Kingdom founded by the Pāṇḍavas.[63] It was surrounded by walls and moats.[64] It was 7 yojanas in extent according to Jātaka No. 537. There was a direct

---

[54] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 115.
[55] BK. III. c. xci.
[56] Rapson, *Ancient Iudia*, p. 87.
[57] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 118.
[58] Trenckner's Ed., 1 ff.
[59] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, 123.
[60] *Ibid.*, p. 127.
[61] *Ibid.*, p. 128.
[62] *Ibid.*, p. 128.
[63] *Mahābhārata*, Ādiparva, ccvii, 7568—94.
[64] *Ibid.*, Ādiparva, 207 vs. 29—30.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

route from Indraprastha to Vārāṇasī.[65] According to Ptolemy Hastināpura was 24 miles south-west of Dārānagara and 11 miles to the west of the present Ganges.[66]

Modoura has been identified with Mathurā in U. P., the birth place of Śrīkṛṣṇa.[67] The Yonas as Bactrian Greeks founded principalities in India establishing their suzerainty even over Mathurā (*Madhuram apayāto yavanarājā*). Modoura is situated on the banks of the Jumna, higher up than Agra from which it is 35 miles distant. It is said to have been founded by Satrugna, the younger brother of Rāma.

Gagasmira has been identified by Lassen and St. Martin with Ajmere.[68] St. Martin says that Kontā is probably Kuṇḍā on the left bank of the Jumna to the south-east of Saharanpur.[69]

Passala was a big town of Rohilkhand, 30 miles from Sambhal, towards the south-east and at a like distance from the east bank of the Ganges.[70]

Adisdara or *Adeisathra* is identified with Ahicchatra, an ancient city. It was the capital of northern Pancāla.[71] The form of the name in Ptolemy by a slight alteration becomes Adisadra which has been satisfactorily identified with Ahicchatra[72].

Banagara was the name of a town and a district that lay on the line of communication between Kabul and the Indus. It was visited by Fa-Hien and Hiuen Tsang.[73]

---

[65] For a systematic history of Indraprastha vide B. C. Law *Hastināpura & Indraprastha in Ancient India published in the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bombay*, New Series, Vol. 30, Pt. I, June 1955.

[66] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, p. 212.

[67] See Law, *Indological Studies*, Pt. III, Chap. III; Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 129.

[68] *Ibid.*, p. 129. [69] *Ibid.* p. 130. [70] *Ibid.*, p. 131. [71] *Ibid.*, pp. 133, 161; vide, Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, p. 34.

[72] For a systematic account of Ahicchatra vide B. C. Law, *The Pañchālas and their capital Ahichchhatra, Memoirs of the Archaeological Survey of India*, No. 67.

[73] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, p. 141.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Barbarei[74] or the Barbaricum of the *Periplus of the Erythraean sea* was a great emporium of coal trade. The Barbaras according to the *Mahābhārata*[75] are associated with the Ambaṣṭhas, Kulindas etc. and also with the Yaunas, Kāmbojas, Gandhāras and Kirātas and are located in the Uttarāpatha (Northern-India).[76] According to some the country of the Barbaras was in the west or in the north western frontier of India stretching upto the Arabian sea. It was a market town and port situated on the middle mouth of the Indus and included in the Śaka country whose metropolis was Minnagar.

The territory situated between the Ravi and the Beas was occupied by the Khatriaioi.[77]

Kassida is Kāśī or Vārāṇaśī.[78] One of the Mahājanapadas of Jambudwīpa was Kāśī (modern Banaras) which derives its name from the river Varaṇāvatī. It is situated at a distance of eighty miles below Allahabad on the north bank of the Ganges at the junction between it and the river Varaṇā. The Varaṇā is a considerable rivulet which rises to the north of Allahabad and has course of about 100 miles. The Aśī is a mere brook. The ancient city of Kāśī was also known as Surundhana, Sudassana, Brahmavaḍḍhana, Pupphavatī, Ramma and Molinī.[79] This city occurs in the Vedic and Sūtra literature, Epics, Purāṇas, as well as in Buddhist and Jain literature. It was a centre of trade and industry.[80]

Sagoda is identified with Ayodhyā, capital of Kośala.[81] Ayodhyā also known as Vinītā was one of the seven holy

[74] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, p. 148.

[75] Sabhāparva, Ch. 31, 199; Droṇaparva, Ch. 119, 14 .

[76] *Mahābhārata*, XII, 207, 43. The *Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa* places them in the Sindhu country (LVII, 39).

[77] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 157. [78] *Ibid.*, p. 228.

[79] *Jātaka*, IV, 104, 119; V, 177, 312; VI, 131; and IV, p. 15.

[80] For a detailed study vide B. C. Law, *Ancient Indian Tribes*, 1926, Chap. I.

[81] *Ancient India* (Ptolemy) p. 228.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

places of the Hindus. Fa-Hien calls it Sha-Che. It was also known as Sāketa, Ikṣvākubhūmi, Rāmapurī, and Kośala. It was an unimportant town in Buddha's time. It was the capital of the southern Kośala. It was situated on the Sarayū river identified with the Ghāgra or Gogra in Oudh about 6 miles from Fyzabad railway station.[82]

The *Ambaṣṭhas*[83] existed as early as the time of the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*[84] in the Punjab but in later times they migrated to Bengal and Bihar. The *Mahābhārata*[85] mentions them along with the Śivis, Mālavas and other north-western tribes. In Alexander's time they were settled on the lower Akesines (modern Chenab). According to Ptolemy they were located along the southern and eastern sides of the Hindukush.[86]

The royal city of *Calingae* (*Gangaridum Calingaram regis*) was called Parthalis according to the classical writer Pliny, who further points out that over their king 60,000 foot-soldiers, 1000 horsemen and 7000 elephants used to keep watch and ward. According to the *Mahābhārata*[87] the Calingae proper or the Kalinga country comprised the entire tract of country lying along the coast of the Vaitaraṇī in Orissa to the borders of the Āndhra country. Mention may be made of Pliny's reference to three Kalingas in his time, namely the *Gangaridae-Calingae*, the Kalingas who lived conterminously with the *Gangaridae*; the *Macco-Calingae* or either the *Mekala-Kalingas* or *Muka-Kalingas*; and the *Calingae proper*.[88] Pliny thinks that these tribes must have been allied with the Kalingas proper.

---

[82] For details, vide Law, *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, 67 ff.

[83] Or Ptolemy's Ambastai, *Ancient India* p. 161.

[84] VIII 21-3. [85] II, 52. 14-15.

[86] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, pp. 311-312.

[87] III, 114.4.

[88] Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, pp. 159-60; 162-63.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The country of the *Pandoouoi* is identified with the Pāndya country which formed the seat of the Pāṇḍavas of the *Mahābhārata* fame.[89] The Pāṇḍya kingdom comprised the great part of the modern Madurā and Tinnevelly districts and also southern Travancore. Strabo[90] mentions an embassy sent to Augustus Caesar about 22 B. C. by a king 'Pandion' possibly a Pāṇḍya of the Tamil country.[91]

The *Pulindas* are located to the north-east of Kaccha, lying between the Khatriaioi in the north and Larike in the south.[92] The *Mahābhārata*[93] places the Pulindas in the Deccan along with the Āndhras, Śavaras, Madrakas etc. The *Matsya* and *Vāyupurāṇas*[94] describe them as dwelling in the Deccan (*Dakṣiṇāpatha-vāsinaḥ*) along with the Vaidarbhas, Daṇḍakas, Vindhyas, etc. The *Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa* supports this fact.[95] The *Bengali Rāmāyaṇa*[96] informs us that the Pulindas appear both in the south and in the north.[97]

The *Sabārai* of Ptolemy is taken by Cunningham to be the Suari of Pliny.[98] The *Aitareya-Brāhmaṇa*,[99] the *Mahābhārata*[100] and the *Matsya* and *Vāyupurāṇas*[101] place the Savaras (Ptolemy's Sabarai) in the south. Baiṭhān is Paiṭhān on the north bank of the Godāvarī in the Aurangabad district. Paiṭhān is Prastiṣṭhāna.[102] *Tagara*-Ptolemy places it to the north-east of Baiṭhān.[103] Tagara has been identified with Ter, 12 miles to the north of Osmanabad in Hyderabad state. Fleet has identified it with Ter, 95 miles south-east of Paiṭhān.[104] It has been ientified by some with Devagiri,

[89] *Ibid.*, 121. [90] XV. 4, 73.
[91] *Cambridge History of India*, I, p. 597.
[92] *Ancient India*, (Ptolemy) p. 157. [93] XII. 207.42.
[94] 114. 46—48; 45, 126, [95] 57. 45-48.
[96] Kiṣkindhākāṇḍa XLI, 17; XLIV. 12.
[97] Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, 174-75.
[98] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 173; vide Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, p. 172.
[99] VII. 18. [100] XII. 207.42. [101] 144. 46—48; 45. 126.
[102] *Ancient India*, (Ptolemy) p. 177. [103] *Ibid.*, p. 177.
[104] *JRAS.*, 1901, 537 ff.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

by others with Junnar, and by R. G. Bhandarkar with Dharur in Hyderabad. Yule places it at Kulbarga lying to the south-east of Paiṭhān at a distance of about 150 miles.[105] *Hippokoura* lay inland and was the capital of the southern parts of Ariakes.[106] *Banaouasei* is Vanavāsī. It is identical with the modern Vanavāsī situated on the upper Varadā, a tributary of the Tungabhadra.[107] The Vanavāsakas were doubtless the people of the kingdom of Vanavāsī, a well-known region of the south in north Kanara.[108]

Modoura is now called Madura or Madurai on the banks of the river Vaigai, the capital of the south Pāṇḍyas.[109] *Malaṅga* was near Elur, a place some distance inland about halfway between the Kriṣṇā and the Godāvarī.[110] *Pityndra* was the capital of *Maisolia* which was probably Dhaṅakaṭaka now Dharaṇīkoṭa, about 20 miles above Bejwada on the Kriṣṇā.[111] *Taprobane*[112] is Tāmraparṇī. The country of Tāmraparṇī is placed below Pāṇḍya or Drāviḍa, and the mount Vaidūryaka is mentioned as its rocky landmark. The *Agastyāśrama* or the hermitage of the sage Agastya, and the Gokarṇatīrtha are located here.[113] *Tosalei* is Tosali.[114] Tosali or Tosala was the name of a country as well as of a city in south India. In the *Purāṇas* Tosala is always associated with Dakṣiṇa-Tosala and distinguished from Kalinga. According to Ptolemy *Karoura* was ruled by Kerobothros (Keralaputra).[115] Keralaputra is undoubtedly the Kerala or Chera country. The

[105] Law, *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, p. 191.
[106] *Ancient India* (Ptolemy) p. 179. [107] *Ibid.*, p. 179.
[108] Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, p. 382.
[109] *Ancient India* (Ptolemy) p. 184
[110] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, p. 186.
[111] *Ibid.*, p. 187. [112] *Ibid.*, p. 251.
[113] Vide my *Indological Studies*, Pt. I, p. 60 ; Law, *Early Indian Monasteries*, Bangalore, p. 6.
[114] *Ancient India* (Ptolemy) p. 230.
[115] *Ibid.*, p. 180.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Keralas were one of the earliest tribes of south India. Keralaputra is the country south of Kūpaka extending down to Kanneti in central Travancore (Karunagapalli Taluk). The Kerala country comprised Travancore, Cochin and the Malabar district. Its capital was originally Vañji (now Tirukarur on the Periyar river near Cochin) but later Tiruvañjikalam near the mouth of the Periyar.[116]

Ptolemy mentions Nāsika,[117] famous for its caves (*Paṇḍuleṇas*), situated about 300 ft. above road level.

Kanagora is Kānyakubja or modern Kanauj, situated on the bank of the Kāli-nadī, a branch of the Ganges, in the modern district of Farrakabad.[118] It was also known as Gādhipura, Kuśasthala and Mahadaya.[119] It was the birth place of Viśvāmitra.[120] It was visited by Hiuen Tsang who saw 100 Buddhist establishments.[121]

Abiria was the country of the Ābhiras lying to the east of the Indus, above the insular porton formed by its bifurcation. Abiria is Ophir.[122] According to the *Mahābhārata*[123] the Ābhīras were located in the western division of India. The Epic evidence is supported by that of the author of the *Periplus of the Erythraean sea*, a Greek record of commercial geography of the 1st century B. C. as well as by the Greek geographer Ptolemy who flourished in the middle of the 2nd century A.D. Later epigraphic evidence places them in the west but the *Purāṇas* seem to locate them in the north. A more definite location of them is provided by a śloka in the *Mahābhārata* which places them in west Rajputana

---

[116] Law, *Indological Studies*, Pt. I, 58-59.
[117] *Ancient India*, p. 156.
[118] *Ibid.*, p. 134.
[119] *Abhidhāna-Rājendra*, IV. 39-40.
[120] *Rāmāyaṇa*, Bālakāṇḍa.
[121] Vide B. C. Law, *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, pp. 93-94.
[122] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, pp. 136, 139-40.
[123] *Sabhāparva*, Ch. 51.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Syrastrene represents the Sanskrit Surāṣṭra.[124] It is modern Surat in Kathiawar on the gulf of Kutch. Syrastrene extended from the mouth of the Indus to the gulf of Cutch.[125] The *Rāmāyaṇa* refers to Surāṣṭra.[126] According to the *Padmapurāṇa*[127] Surāṣṭra is in Gurjara. It is also mentioned in the *Bhāgavatapurāṇa* as a country.[128] Rājaśekhara assigns Surāṣṭra to the western division along with Bhrigukaccha, Ānartta, Arbuda, Daśeraka and other countries.[129] At the time of the *Mahābhārata* Surāṣṭra was ruled by the Yādavas. It appears from Kauṭilya's *Artha-Śāstra*[130] Surāṣṭra had a *saṃgha* form of Government. According to Strabo[131] the conquests of the Bactrian Greeks in India were achieved partly by Menander and partly by Demetrios, son of Euthydemos.[132]

Sousikana is a corrupt reading for Musikana, the royal city of Musikanos. Cunningham identifies this city with Alor which was for many ages the capital of upper Sindh.[133] The Mūṣikas (Mūṣakas) were a southern offshoot of the Punjab tribe known to Alexander's historians as the Mousikanos.[134] Pargiter is wrong in suggesting that they were probably settled on the banks of the river Musi on which stands modern Hyderabad.[135] A people called Mauṣikāra

[124] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 140.

[125] Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, p. 348.

[126] Ādikāṇḍa, Ch. XII; Ayodhyākāṇḍa, X and Kiṣkindhākāṇḍa, XLI; Cf. *Patañjali's Mahābhāṣya*, I. I. I. p. 31.

[127] 190.2.

[128] I. 10. 34; X. 27. 69; VI. 14. 10.

[129] *Kāvyamīmāṃsā*, Gaekwaḍ Oriental Series, pp. 93-94.

[130] p. 378.

[131] Book XI, Sec. XI. 1; H & F, Vol. II, pp. 252-53.

[132] For a detailed study please refer to my *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, 297 ff and my *Tribes in Ancient India*, pp. 347-48.

[133] *Ancient Geography*, 295; McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, pp. 144-45.

[134] Cf. *C. H. I.*, I, 377.

[135] *Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa*, 366.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

occurs in Patanjali's *Mahābhāṣya*,[136] which appears to have some connection with the Mūṣikas. The Hāthigumphā inscription of king Khāravela of Kalinga refers to Mūṣikanagara which may have some connection with them.

Binagara is identified with Alor.[137] The *Periplus* points out that it lay in the interior above Barbarikon emporium mentioned in the *Periplus of the Erythraean sea*.[138] Barbarikon and Patala formed the two towns of the islands of the Indus delta.

Kouba is generally taken to be Goa or Gava, the capital of the Portuguese possessions in India.[139]

Larike or Lārdeśa was the early name for the territory of Gujarat and the northern Konkan.[140]

Barygaza, modern Broach, a large city, is situated about 30 miles from the sea on the northern side of the river Narmadā.[141] Bharukaccha or Bhrigukaccha or Bhirukaccha is identical with modern Broach or Bharoch. Modern Broach is Kathiāwād. In Ptolemy's Barygaza we have a Greek corruption of Bhrgukṣetra.[142] It was a sea port town. It was known as Po-lu-ka-Che-p'o at the time of Hiuen Tsang.[143]

Palimbothra[144] was the greatest city in India in the dominions of the Prasians, where the rivers Erannoboas and

---

[136] IV. I. 4. [137] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 152.

[138] Prob. *circa* 80 A. D.

[139] Ptolemy, *Ancient India*, p. 181. [140] *Ibid.*, p. 153.

[141] *Ibid.*, p. 153.

[142] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, pp. 153-54.

[143] For further details vide Law, *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, pp. 277 ff.

[144] It was known to the Chinese pilgrims as *Pa-lin-tou*. It was the later capital of Magadha. It is modern Patna, the capital of Behar. It was originally a Magadhan village known as Pāṭaligrāma which lay opposite to Koṭigrāma on the other side of the Ganges. The fortification of Pāṭaligrāma was undertaken by two Magadhan ministers, Sunīdha and Vassakāra (*Dīgha*, II, 86 ff.; *Sumangalavilāsinī*, II, 540). It led to the foundation of the city of Pāṭaliputra (Palibothra or Palimbothra). King Ajātaśatru of Magadha was the real founder of this city. Pāṭali-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the Ganges met together. The Ganges was the greatest of all Indian rivers, and the Erannoboas[145] was perhaps the third largest of the Indian rivers. Megasthenes points out that the inhabited part of Palimbothra extended on either side to an extreme length of eighty stadia and that its breadth was fifteen stadia[146] and that a ditch encompassed it all round, which was six hundred feet in breadth and thirty cubits in depth. The wall was crowned with five hundred and seventy towers and had sixty four gates.[147] According to Megasthenes Herakles was the founder of this city. He fortified it with trenches of notable dimensions which were filled with water introduced from the river.[148] There was a royal route from the north-western frontier to Pāṭaliputra.[149]

Dr. Spooner, the excavator of the ancient city of Pāṭaliputra at Kumrahar, opines that the pillared hall of the Maurya pālace is strictly reminiscent of the Persian throne-room even in details and that its surroundings showed a parallelism to the Achaemenian side.[150] The pedestals at Pāṭaliputra must have been of Persepolitan style. One big column discovered at Pāṭaliputra showing a mason's mark of peculiar type seems to be extremely

---

putra was built near the confluence of the great rivers of Mid-India, the Ganges, the Son and the Gandak, but now the river Son has receded some distance away from it. This city was protected by a moat 600 ft. broad, and 30 cubits in depth. It was the capital of later Śisunāgas, the Nandas and also the great Maurya Emperors Chandragupta and Aśoka but it ceased to be the ordinary residence of the Gupta sovereigns after the completion of the conquests made by Samudragupta. For further details, vide Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, Ch. XLVI; Law, *The Magadhas in Ancient India*, *JRAS. Publication*, No. 24; Law, *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, pp. 249ff.; *ASI Annual Report*, 1912—13, Pt. I.

[145] The Yamunotri, which is eight miles from Kursoli, is identical with the Greek Erannoboas (Hiraṇyavāha or Hraṇyavāhu).

[146] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian*, p. 65.

[147] *Ibid.*, p. 67.

[148] *Ibid.*, p. 37. [149] Megasthenes, Frag. IV. 3.

[150] *JRAS.* 1915, p. 69.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

similar to a mason's mark familiar at Persepolis. The Columns of Darius are 10 Persian cubits apart and the Maurya columns are 10 Indian cubits apart. The Mauryan hall discovered at Pāṭaliputra and the hall of the Achaemenian type at Persepolis are almost similar. The Mauryan Porch corresponds with the porch at Persepolis on the northern side of the throne room.[151]

As regards the relation between India and Persia it may be pointed out that the earliest foreign notice of India is in the inscription of the Persian King Darius of Persepolis and Naksh-i-Rustam dated *circa* 515 B.C. Herodotus gives us valuable information as to the relation between India and Persia which supplements the less detailed statements of the inscriptions. The buildings of Persepolis commenced with Darius I. In 316 B. C. Persepolis built by Darius, situated 40 miles north-east at Siraj, not far from the place where the Pulwar river flowed into the Cyrus, was still the capital of Persia as a province of the Macedonan Empire. The city gradually declined but the ruins of Achæmenidæ bear testimony to its ancient glory. The gold coverings at Persepolis were like the gold domes of the Shi'ite Mashhads of Iran and Iraq. The mighty platform at Persepolis, which rises 40 ft. above the plain, forms three sides of a parallelogram. The splendid porch of the Palace built by Xerxes was the chief glory of Persepolis. The Hall of Xerxes, the palace of Darius, the magnificent hall of hundred columns are the finest examples of Persian architecture. It is well-worth quoting here the remarks of Sir Percy Sykes : "Persia borrowed and borrowed truly from the great nations with which she was brought into contact, from Babylon, Assyria, Egypt and Hellas but she did not copy slavishly. Even the Assyrian colossi take

[151] *Annual Reports of the Archaeological Survey of India*, 1912-13, (1915); 1926-27 (1930); *Progress Report of the ASI*, Eastern Circle, 1912-13; 1913-14; 1915-16; Law, *Indological Studies*, Pt. III, Ch. IX.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

a secondary place in the excellent palaces built by the architects of the Achæmenian monarchs. . . . . Even in its ruins the throne of Jamshid challenges our wonder and admiration." The wealth of architecture of Persepolis lies in the magnificence of the royal palace and sepulchres. It is conspicuous by the absence of any temple or religious sanctuary except perhaps the five altars near the royal tombs.

Tamalites represents the sanskrit Tāmralipti, the modern Tamluk, a town lying in a low and damp situation on the bay of the river Rūpnārāyaṇa, 12 miles above its junction with the Hughli mouth of the Ganges.[152]

According to Ptolemy *Barakoura* was Rāmu, a town lying 68 miles south south-east of Chittagong.[153] *Sonanagoura* or Suvarṇanagara, now Sonargaon, is situated about 12 miles near the right bank of the lower Brahmaputra.[154]

Ozene is Ujjayinī.[155] Ujjayinī was the capital of the Avantī kingdom or western Malwa situated on the river Śiprā, a tributary of the Cambal. It is modern Ujjain in Gwalior in Central India. According to Hiuen Tsang, it was about 6000 li in circuit. The produce and manners of the people were like those of Surāṣṭra (modern Surat). The population was dense[156] Ujjayinī is called by the Greeks as Ozene wherefrom every commodity for local consumption or export to other parts of India was brought to Barygaza (Modern Broach).[157] It was one of the seven sacred places of the Hindus, and astronomers recovered their first meridian of longitude from this place. The dramas of the celebrated poet Kalidāsa were performed on the occasion of the spring festival before the viceregal court of Ujjayinī

[152] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, pp. 169, 170.
[153] Ptolemy's, *Ancient India*, p. 195.
[154] *Ibid.*, p. 228. [155] *Ibid.*, p. 154.
[156] Watters, *On Yuan Chwang*, II. pp. 250-51.
[157] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, p. 155.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

(C. 400 A.D.).[158] Ptolemy places Minagara (Minnagar) about 2 degrees to the south-west of Ozene.[159] Dr. D. R. Bhandarkar identifies it with Mandasore.

Mountains

The Greek writer Megasthenes says that India possessed many large and navigable rivers which had their origin in mountains. Like Megasthenes and the Epic and Pauranic writers, the Greek astronomer and geographer Ptolemy groups the rivers of India according to the mountains and hill ranges out of which they have emanated. The position of mountains as given by him is hopelessly incorrect but one can get some clue to their identification when he describes the river issuing from each mountain. In fact he seems to have before him some old traditional list of Indian rivers which he made use of in his geography.

Ptolemy enumerates the following mountain ranges of India : the Apokopa, Sardonyx, Quindion, Bettigo, Adeisathron, Ouxenton, Oroudian, Bepyrrhos, Maiandros, Damassa or Dobassa and Semanthinos. Of these the Apokopa (or the punishment of the gods) has been identified with the Aravalli mountain.[160] Quindion has been identified with the Vindhya, Bettigo with Podigei, the Tamil name of Malaya, Quxenton with the Ṛkṣavant, Adeisathron with the Sahyādri, and the Oroudian[161] with the Vaidūrya mountain.[162]

Ptolemy describes the Ṛkṣavant as the source of the Toundis, the Dosaran and the Adamas, and the Quindon as that of the Namadas and the Nanagouna. The Dosaran has been identified with the Daśārṇā of the *Purāṇas* and the Namdas and the Nanagouna with the Narmadā and the

[158] *Ibid.*, p. 154; Rapson, *Ancient India*, p. 175.
[159] *Ibid.*, p. 156.
[160] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, 1927 Ed., p. 355.
[161] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, 1927, pp. 75—81.
[162] *Ibid.* p. 356.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Tāptī respectively. According to Ptolemy the Dosaran is said to have issued from the Ṛkṣa. By the Ṛkṣavant he meant the Central region of the modern Vindhya range, north of the Narmadā, while the Quindon stands for only that portion of the Vindhya from where rise the Narmadā and the Tāptī.[163] The Vindhyapādaparvata is the mountain Sardonyx of Ptolemy. It may be identified with the Satpura range which is the source of the Tāpti.

According to Megasthenes and Arrian the Arbuda or the mount Abu is identical with the Capitalia, which, attaining an elevation of 6,500 ft., rises far above any other summit of the Aravalli range.[164] The Capitalia is the loftiest of the Indian mountains. The Mount Caucasus is called the Paropamisos.[165] The Parapamisos or the Paropamisos denotes the great mountain range now called the Hindukush. The mount Parosh or Aparasin of the *Zendavesta* corresponds with the Paropamisos of the Greeks. According to Pliny, the Skythians called the Mount Caucasus, Graucasis, a word representing the Indian name of the Paropamisos.[166] The Imaos is the Himalaya mountain. It is the source of the Ganges and the Indus as well as the Koa and the Swat rivers. The mount Maleus of the Greeks (Malla-parvata) may be identified with the Pareshnath hill in Choto Nagpur. The Mandāra hill known to Megasthenes and Arrian as Mallus in the Banka sub-division of the Bhagalpur District, is a mountain of Eastern India, worthy of notice.

Rivers

According to Megasthenes there were fifty-eight navigable Indian rivers. The *Ṛgveda*[167] contains a list of 19 rivers. The *Mārkaṇḍeya-purāṇa*[168] mentions some Indian rivers. All these rivers have their origin in the Himalayan region and

[163] Law, *Geographical Essays*, p. 109.
[164] McCrindle, *Ancient India*, p. 147. [165] *Ibid.*, p. 143
[166] *Ibid.*, p. 186 f. n.
[167] X, 75.4. [168] LVII, 30.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

they belong to northern India. The sacred rivers of Buddhist Midland are enumerated in the *Majjhima Nikāya* and the *Visuddhimagga*.[169] The *Milinda Pañho*,[170] an important extra canonical Pali work, speaks of 500 rivers of which ten are said to have been important, namely, *Gangā*, *Yamunā*, *Aciravatī*, *Saranhū*, *Mahi*, *Sindhu*, *Sarasvatī*, *Vetravatī*, *Vitamsā* and *Candrabhāgā*. Megasthenes says that the Himalayan rivers of northern India belong to two main river groups or systems, namely, the Indus and the Ganges, the former being connected with northern and north-western division, and the latter with the Madhyadeśa (Midland). The fact is that the Indian rivers belong to two classes, namely, those which belong to distinct groups or systems and those which flow independently either to disappear in a desert or to empty themselves into a sea.

The accounts of some writers about the Indians as faras the Hyphasis (modern Beas or Vipāśā) are not unreliable in their description of India because they are connected with the expedition of Alexander. Arrian says that no real knowledge of the country can be had beyond that limit.[171]

The rivers of India, according to Megasthenes, stretch along the northern frontier, traverse the level country, and after uniting with each other fall into the Ganges.[172]

Arrian says that the rivers of India breed crocodiles like the Nile in Ethiopia and Egypt. Some of the Indian rivers have fish and monstrous creatures such as are found in the Nile except the hippopotamus. Onesikritos asserts that the Indian rivers breed hippopotamus also.[173] They are certainly the largest to be found in all Asia. The mightiest

---

[169] *Majjhima*, I, 39; *Visuddhimagga*, P. T. S. p. 10.

[170] p. 114.

[171] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*, p. 202.

[172] *Ibid.*, p. 32.

[173] *Ibid.*, p. 203.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

rivers are the Inddus an the Ganges. In the opinions of the classical writers the river Indus is rivalled by no other river than the Ganges. According to Megasthenes the Ganges is much larger than the Indus. A contradictory statement appears in McCrindle's *Ancient India*[174] that the Indus is almost of the same size as the Ganges. The Indus is perhaps the largest of all rivers in the world after the Nile.[175]

Megasthenes says that the rain fell in India during summer especially on the mountains called the Parapamisos[176] (the different form is Paropamisos, now known as the central Hindukush), the Emodos[177] and the range of Imaos (Himālayas). The rain also fell on the plains of India so that much of the country was submerged like Egypt. The river Nile was subject to similar inundation. The rain fell on the Ethiopia mountain during summer. The Nile swollen with the rains overflowed its banks and inundated Egypt.[178]

It should be borne in mind that many Indian rivers are sacred in the eye of the people. Numerous religious shrines and hermitages adorn their banks. Many of them still bear the living associations of the history and civilisation of the country. The *Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa*[179] points out that all the rivers are sacred, all flow towards the ocean, all are mothers of the world, they are well-known to cleanse from all sins.

The Indus (Sindhu) is the greatest known river of the northern India after which the Indus group is named. In

---

[174] p. 33.

[175] McCrindle, *Ancient India*, p. 29.

[176] *Ibid.*, 46; Cf. Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, 1927, p. 34

[177] The part of the Himalayan range extending along Nepal and Bhutan and onwards towards the ocean is meant by the Emodus. The other forms are Emoda, Emodon and Hemodes (McCrindle, *Ancient India*, p. 132 f.n.).

[178] McCrindle, *Ancient India*, pp. 202-203.

[179] LVII, 31

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

other words it lent its name to the country through which it flowed.[180] It speeded over the precipitous ridges of the earth and was the lord and leader of the moving floods. The Sindhu is also known by the name of Sambheda and Sangama both meaning the confluent. It is counted among the seven streams of the *Divyagaṅgā* or the celestial Gaṅgā. The Indus at the start is a united flow of two streams, one flowing north-west from the north-west side of the Kailāsparvata and the other in a north-westerly and then in a south-westerly direction from a lake situated to the north-east of the Kailās. From a certain point it follows a slightly serpentine and south-westerly course till it falls into the Arabian sea, forming two well-known deltas at its mouth below Karachi, the larger one called Prasiane by Arrian and the smaller one Patale[181] (Sk. *Prasthala*). It finds its way through the western Himalayan range midway between Gilgit above and the Nagnaparvata below.[182]

The Sindhu group as known to Pliny was formed by the Indus and 19 other rivers of which the most famous were the Hydaspes (Jhelum) with its four tributaries, the Cantabra fed by three tributaries, the Acesines (Chenab) and Hypasis (Beas), both of which were navigable. The Sindhu now known as the Indus skirted the frontiers of the Prasii.[183] It was generally regarded as the western and north-western boundary of India, though some writers viewed the river Kophes (Kabul) as its farthest limit.[184] It was nowhere broader than 50 stadia[185] or deeper than 15 paces. Its navigable stream turned westwards as if follow-

[180] Cf. Beal, The Buddhist records of the western world, I, p. 69.

[181] Patala was the capital of Patalene which was a delta at the mouth of the Indus (Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, 1927, p. 139).

[182] Law, *Rivers of India*, p. 12.

[183] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*. p. 143.

[184] *Ibid.*, p. 156.

[185] One *Stadium* 600 Greek ft. or 606 $\frac{3}{4}$ English ft.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ing more or less the course of the Sun and then falling into the ocean.[186] The Sindhu (the Indus) was known to Arrian as the great river which like the Ganges, its only rival, spread out in many places into lakes with the result that where the country happened to be flat, its shores appeared far apart.

The classical writers differ as to the number of the tributaries of the Indus, it being 15 according to Arrian and 19 according to Pliny.[187] The Ganges had 19 tributaries.[188] The main tributaries of the Indus are said to be the Hydraotes (Rāvī), the Akesines (Chenab), the Hypasis (Beas), the Hydaspes (Jhelum), the Kophen (Kabul river), the Parenos (modern Burindu), the Saparnos (Abbasin) and Soanos (Svan).[189] The Tautapos is probably the lower part of the Sutlej (Śatadru). It is a trans-Himalayan river as its basin lies north of the Himalaya.[190] The Hydraotes which is identical with the Rāvī or the Irāvatī or the Airāvatī of the *Purāṇas*, flowing from the dominions of the Kambistholi (Kapisthala), fell into the Akesines (modern Chenab),[191] after receiving the Hyphasis (as known to Arrian and Diadoros), Hypasis (as known to Pliny and Curtius), Hypanis (as known to Strabo), and Bibasis of other classical writers (Sk. Vipāśā) in its passage through the country of the Astrybai as well as the Saranges from the Kekians (Kekaya country in the northern Punjab),[192] and the Neudros from the country

---

[186] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*, p. 144.

[187] *Ibid.*, pp. 45 & 143. [188] *Ibid.*, p. 137.

[189] *Ibid.*, pp. 196—99 f. n.

[190] Pargiter, *Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa*, Tr. p. 291 note.

[191] Pliny's Acesines, Vedic *Asikṇī*, *Candrabhāgā* of the *Purāṇas* and the Pali *Apadāna*. Alexander thought the river Akesines to be the Nile on his first visit to this river (Strabo, XV. c. 696).

[192] The territory of the Kekayas lay beyond the river Vipāśā (Beas) and extended upto the borders of the ancient Gandhāra kingdom according to the *Rāmāyaṇa* (II, 68, 19—22; VII. Chaps. 113-114). For further details, Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, Chap. XIV.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of the Attakenoi (Aṣṭagaṇas, Aśvakas).[193] This river falls into the Sutlej or the Zaradros the most easterly of the five rivers.[194] The Hydaspes (the Bidaspes of Ptolemy. Sk. Vitastā, modern Bidastā, Behut, Jhelum) is the river which rising from the country of the Oxydrakai (Kṣudrakas) and bringing with it the Sinaros received in the dominions of the Arispai, falls into the Akesines (Chenab).[195] The Candrabhāgā, one of the sanskrit names of the Chenab (Akesines) is identified with the Sandabal according to Ptolemy.[196] The Akesines joined the Indus in the country of the Malloi.[197]

---

[193] McCrindle, *Ancent India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*, p. 196.

[194] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 91.

[195] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*, p. 196.

[196] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 89.

[197] The Malloi or the Mālavas occupied the country below the confluence of the Hydaspes (Jhelum) and the Akesines (Chenab), that is, the country comprising the Jhang district and a portion of the Montgomery district (*JRAS.*, 1903, p. 631). According to McCrindle they occupied a greater extent of territory comprising the modern Doab of the Akesines and the Hydraotes (Chenab and Ravi) and extending to the confluence of the Indus and the Akesines, identical with the modern Multan district and a portion of Montgomery (McCrindle, *Invasion of India*, App. Note p. 357). Some locate them in the valley of the lower Hydraotes (Ravi) on the both banks of the river (Raichaudhuri, *Political History of Ancient India*, 4th Ed., p. 202). According to Arrian the Malloi agreed to combine with the Oxydrakai against Alexander but the conqueror had advanced so suddenly that their design was thwarted and they did not get any opportunity to unite against the common enemy (McCrindle, *Invasion of India*, pp. 150, 236 f. n. 1). The Malloi were certainly taken by surprise by Alexander's army and suffered a defeat which was not final. More than once the Malloi offered determined opposition from their fortified cities, which fell one by one to the sword of Alexander and his general Perdikas. The city-walls of the Malloi were razed to the ground and the citadel captured. But in the course of the heavy fighting Alexander was seriously wounded. He took revenge on the enemy by ordering all the inhabitants of the city including women and children to be killed. This city has been wrongly assigned by Diodoros and Curtius to the Oxydrakai. (*Ibid.*, p. 351, App. Note Q; Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, Ch. VIII). Both Arrian and Plutarch definitely state that it belonged to the Malloi and not to the Oxydrakai. Even after this defeat and massacre the Malloi do not seem to have been completely annihilated, for Arrian tells us that the leading men from the Malloi and Oxydrakai came to Alexander to discuss the terms of a treaty which was eventually concluded.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Augmented by its confluents the Akesines succeeded in imposing its name on the combined waters and retained it till it united with the Indus.

The Akesines (modern Chenab) was greater than the Ister and the Nile, where it joined the Indus after receiving its tributaries, the Hydaspes (modern Jhelum) and the Hydraotes (modern Rāvī).[198] The river Chenab or the Candrabhāgā belongs to the Punjab. It is the Ṛgvedic Asiknī identical with the Greek Akesines. Sometimes the united streams of the Jhelum and the Chenab are known by the single name of Candrabhāgā, the Sandabaga or Sandabal of Ptolemy. The Chenab appears to flow just above Kishtwar as a confluence of two hill streams. Its course is southerly from Kishtwar to Rishtwar. It flows past Jammu wherefrom it flows in a south westerly direction forming a doab between it and the Jhelum (Vitastā).

The Akesines (Chenab) was crossed by Alexander near the foot of the hills. The passage of the river was difficult by reason of the rapid current of the flooded stream and of the large rocks with which the channel was bestrewn and on which many boats were wrecked.[199] Arrian in his *Anabasis*[200] says that these particulars clearly prove that the Akesines was crossed near the foot of the hills, some 25 or 30 miles above Wazirabad. Arrian further says[201] that the fleet when descending the Hydaspes (Jhelum) from Nikaia, the town of the battlefield, reached the capital of Sophytes, the king of the Salt Range on the 3rd day. According to Cunningham the capital of Sophytes was at Ahmedabad. The battle of the Hydaspes (the Jhelum or the Behut river

---

[198] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*, p. 190.

[199] Smith, *Early History of India*, 4th Ed., p. 77.

[200] v. 20.

[201] *Anabasis*, VI, 2.4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

according to Ptolemy) was fought after the summer solstice, that is to say, later than 21st June.[202]

The Bidaspes or Bedasta (Sk. Vitastā, Pali Vitaṃsā)[203] or the modern Jhelum river, the most western of the five rivers according to Ptolemy, drains the whole of the Kashmere valley and empties into the Chenab (Akesines). It was known to the Ṛgvedic Āryans by the name of Vitastā.[204] This river is known in Kāśmir under different local names.[205] On the left bank of this river Alexander defeated Poros and built the city of Nikaia in commemoration of his victory.[206]

The Rāvī or the Irāvatī known to the Greeks as the Hydraotis, Hyarotis, Adris or Rhonadis; appears first to our view at the southwest corner of Chamba in Kashmere as the confluence of the two streams. From Chamba it flows past Lahore and meets the Chenab or the united flow of the Vitastā and the Candrabhāgā between Ahmadpur and Saraisidhu.[207]

Ptolemy says that Arrian errs in assigning three tributaries to the Hydraotes e.g., the Hyphasis, the Saranges and the Neudros. We know it to be incorrect as the Hyphasis joins the Akesines below the junction of the Hydraotes.[208]

The river Beas (Sanskrit Vipāśā) is identified with the Vipāsis or Hypasis of Pliny or the Hyphasis of Arrian and Diadoros or the Hypanis of Strabo. It is a tributary of the Śatadru or the Sutlej. The Śatadru is the Zaradros of Ptolemy and the Hesydrus of Pliny. The *Mahābhārata*

---

[202] *Ibid.*, pp. 84, 90.

[203] *Ṛigveda*, X, 75, 5; *Nirukta*, IX, 26; *Bhāgavatapurāna*, V, 19, 18.

[204] X. 75.

[205] Law, *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, p. 135.

[206] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, p. 89.

[207] Law, *Rivers of India*, p. 13.

[208] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, p. 90.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

refers to the origin of the river Vipāśā (modern Beas). Vaśiṣṭha, broken in heart due to the death of his sons at the hands of Viśvāmitra, wanted to commit suicide. He therefore threw himself into the river by tieing his hands and feet. But he was saved by the strong current of the river which threw him on its banks. According to the *Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa*[209] the river Vipāśā issued from the Himalayas. Some hold that this river rises in the Pir Panjal range at the Bhotang Pass near the source of the Ravi. It is fed by a number of glaciers. From Chamba it flows in south-westerly direction to meet the Śatadru (modern Sutlej). Pargiter says, "In ancient times the Śatadru did not probably join the Beas, as it does now, but pursued an independent course to the confines of Sindh."[210] The river Sutlej flowed south-west from where it issued from the Himalayas into the Naiwal channel and then along the dry bed of the Ghaggar at a distance of 30 to 50 miles south of and more or less parallel to its present course.[211]

The Kophen or Kophes which is an affluent of the Indus is the modern Kabul river called as such by Pliny. It is also known as the Kophes of Arrian and Kophen of Pliny. The Kubhā of the Ṛgveda[212] is one of its names. It is apparently the same river as the Kuhu of the *Purāṇas*. It may be identical with the Koa of Ptolemy, which is described to have its source in the Imaos or the Himālaya (Himavat).[213] Ptolemy makes the river Koa join the Indus. Koa is no doubt a curtailed form. The Kubhā cuts a valley through the Sulaiman range. It flows into the Indus a little above Attock (Sk. *Hāṭaka*), receives at Prang a joint flow of its two tributaries called the Svāt[214] and Gaurī (Garroia of

[209] LVII. 16—18.
[210] *Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa*, p. 291 notes; *JASB.*, 1886, Pt. II, p. 332.
[211] *Pargiter*, *Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa*, Tr., p. 291 note.
[212] X. 75, 6.
[213] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 81.
[214] Soastos of Arrian, Sk. *Suvāstu*, *Mahābhārata*, Bhīṣmaparva, IX.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Arrian), identified with modern Panjkora, a tributary of the Svāt. The *Ṛgveda*[215] mentions the river Suvāstu. The *Vāyu and Kūrma Purāṇas*[216] refer to this river. The Gauraios of the Greeks united with the river Svāt formed the Landoi, an affluent of the Kabul river. According to Arrian Soastos and Gauraios are different rivers. Some have identified the river Suvāstu with the Subhavastu of Hiuen Tsang.[217]

The Kophen fell into the Indus having risen in Peukelaotis[218] and brought with it the Malamantos, (Kameh, Khonar, the largest of the tributaries of the Kabul river, identified by some with Arrian's Choes), the Soastos (Choaspes, Sk. *Suvāstu*, modern Suvad, Svat) and the Garroia (Sk. Gaurī, Garaea). According to Ptolemy the Souastene designates the basin of the Souastos (Svāt river).[219] The Parenos and Suparnos emptied themselves into the Indus as did also the Soanos (modern Svan), coming without a tributary, from the hilly country of the Abissareans (Sk. Abhisāras). According to Megasthenes most of these rivers are navigable.[220] Between the Khoaspes (Kunar) and the Indus and along the Kabul river (Kophes or Kophen) there existed the country of the Gandarai according to Strabo.[221]

---

[215] Viii. 19, 37; Cf. *Nirukta*, IV. 15. [216] XLV, 95; XLVII. 27.

[217] *JASB.*, 1839, p.317 and 1840, p. 474.

[218] Peukelaotis by Arrian and Peukalei by Dionysius Periegetes may be identified with Puṣkalāvatī which was the capital of an Indian King named Hastī (GK. Astes) at the time of Alexander's Invasion (326 B. C.). It is represented by modern Prang and Charsadda, 17 miles north-east of Peshwar on the Svāt river (Schoff, *The Periplus of Erythraean Sea*, pp. 183-84). Arrian says that the Kabul river (Kophen) falls into the Indus in the land called Peukelaotis. The people of the surrounding region are referred to some times as the Astakenoi by classical historians. The reigning King at the time of the Alexander's invasion was Astes who was defeated and killed by Alexander's general Hephaestian (Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, p. 395).

[219] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, 1927, p. 106.

[220] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*, pp. 196-97.

[221] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 115.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

According to Megasthenes the Ganges at its source is 30 *stadia* broad flowing from north to south and emptying its waters into the ocean forming the eastern boundary of the Gangaridai.[222] Arrian observes that according to Megasthenes the Ganges is much larger than the Indus. Ptolemy's description of the Ganges is very meagre as compared with his description of the Indus. He mentions three of its affluents while Arrian[223] enumerates no fewer than 17 and Pliny 19.[224] In the case of the Ganges the number of its tributaries was known to Megasthenes as nineteen.[225] The Ganges, according to Arrian, had a breadth of 100 *stadia*, where narrowest, while in many places it spread out into lakes so that when the country happened to be flat and destitute of elevation, the opposite shores could not be seen from each other. The Indus presented similar characteristics[226].

Ptolemy refers to the mountainous region where the rivers Vipāśā (Beas), Śatadru (Sutlej), Yamunā (Jumna) and Gaṅgā (Ganges) have their sources. He also mentions the Śailodā river upon which the Kulindas[227] lived between Meru and Mandāra.[228] Six important cities existed to the east of the Ganges : Boraita, Korygaza, Kondota, Kelydna, Aganagora and Talarga.[229] Korygaza or Sory-

---

[222] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian*, p. 32.

[223] McCrindle, *Ancient India*, p. 45. [224] *Ibid.*, p. 143.

[225] *Ibid.*, p. 137. [226] *Ibid.*, p. 193—95.

[227] The country of the Kulindas called by Ptolemy as Kulindrine is identified by Cunningham with the kingdom of Jālandhara (Jullundar) but this is not accepted by St. Martin (*CAGI.*, p. 157). The Kulindas are located in the west Punjab along with the Mālavas, Yaudheyas, Arjunāyanas, Udumbaras, Kulūtas and Uttamabhadras. They were probably identical with the Kunindas, a tribe known from coins (*CHI.*, I, pp. 528—29).

[228] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, p. 110; Vide also Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, Ch. XX.

[229] *Ibid.*, pp. 215—16.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

gaza seems to have been situated on the Gaṇḍakī, perhaps between the Gaṇḍakī and the lower Sarayū. Kondota seems to be connected with the Gaṇḍakī[230]. Kelydna may be safely assumed to be a bad transcription into Greek of the Sanskrit Kālinadī (Kālindī).[231] Aganagora may be identified with Aghadip (Agradvīpa) on the eastern bank of the Ganges, a little below Katwa.[232]

Pliny says that according to some the Ganges rises from uncertain sources like the Nile and inundates the countries lying along its course. Some are of opinion that the Ganges rises on the Skythian mountains and has 19 tributaries. Others assert that it issues forth at once from its fountain and after tumbling down a steep and rocky channel is received immediately on reaching the level plains into a lake, wherefrom it flows out with a gentle current, being at the narrowest 8 miles and on the average 100 *stadia* in breadth and never of less depth than 100 ft. in the final part of its course which is through the country of the Gangarides[233] a very powerful people in the lower Gangetic valley.

Pliny mentions an island in the Ganges inhabited by the Macco-Kalingae and Modokalinga.[234] The Ganges was the boundary of the tribes known as the Calingae and the Mandei and the Malli.[235] The Ganges received as tributaries the rivers Kainas,[236] Erannoboas, and Kossoanos, which were all navigable. Besides it received the rivers Sonos, Sittokatis, and Solomatis, which were also navigable and also the Kondochates, the Sambos, the Magon, the Agoranis and the Omalis. The two added by Pliny are the Prinas and Jomanes.[237] The rivers Kommenases,

---

[230] *Ibid.*, p. 230. [231] *Ibid.*, p. 215.
[232] *Ibid.*, pp. 215—16; Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, Ch. XXII.
[233] McCrindle, *Ancient India*, p. 137.
[234] *Ibid.*, p. 134. [235] *Ibid.*, p. 136. [236] *Ibid.*, p. 62.
[237] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, 1927, p. 97.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Kakouthis and Andomatis fell into the Ganges. The Amystis flowing past the city named Katadupa (Kāṭadvīpa, modern Katwa) and the Oxymagis from the dominion of a tribe called the Pazalai and the Errenysis from an Indian tribe called the Mathai united with the Ganges. Regarding these streams none of them was inferior to the Maiandros even at the navigable part of its course.[238]

The Kainas has been identified with the Kaṇ or Kane or Kena which is only indirectly a tributary of the Ganges as it falls into the Jumna.[239] The Erannaboas represents the Sanskrit Hiraṇyavāha or Hiraṇyavāhu. It may be identified with the river Son, which formerly joined the Ganges a little above Bankipur. The Kossoanos may be identified with the river Kauśikī, modern Kośi, Kuśī.[240] This river seems to hāve largely shifted its course.[241] It flows into the Ganges on its north bank through the district of Purnea. The Sonos may be identified with the Son river joining the Ganges, ten miles above Dinapur. It has its source near the Narmada. At the time of the *Rāmāyaṇa*[242] the Son flowed by the eastern side of Rājagṛha (modern Rajgir). According to Ptolemy the mouth of the river Soa is the Sonos (Son) falling into the Ganges about 16 miles above Patna.[243] They are all navigable.[244] The Sittokatis, as St. Martin thinks, may be the representative of the river Sadākāntā mentioned in the *Mahābhārata* along with the Kauśikī, Sadānīrā[245] and

---

[238] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*, pp. 190—91.

[239] *Ibid.*, p. 191 f.n.

[240] *Rāmāyaṇa*, Ādi., 34; *Varāhapurāṇa*, 140.

[241] Pargiter, *Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa*, Tr., 292 note.

[242] Ādi., Ch. 32. [243] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 99.

[244] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*, p. 137.

[245] The Sadānīrā of the *Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa* (i. 4, 1.14 ff). has been sought to be identified by some with the Gaṇḍak and by others with the Rapti. This river formed the boundary between Kośala and Videha (Law, *Geographical Essays*, p. 117; *Imperial Gazetteer of India*, 12, 125).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the Ātreyī. It is evident from this as Arrian thinks, that this river (Sittokatis) belongs to the northern part of Bengal. The Solomatis may be identified with the Sarayū, a tributary of the Ghogra, according to Cunningham.[246] The Kondochates is identified with the Gaṇḍak (Gaṇḍakī or Gaṇḍakāvatī). The Sambos may probably be identified with the Gumtī (Gomatī).[247] The Māgon may probably be identified with the Mahānada now the Mohona, the principal river of Magadha, joining the Ganges not far below Patna (ancient Pāṭaliputra). This identification is doubtful. Due to lack of evidence it is difficult to identify it. The Agoranis may be identified with the Ghargharā or Ghogrā. The Omalis cannot be identified. The Kommenases may be identified with the Karmaṇāśā, a small river joining the Ganges above Buxar. According to N. L. Dey[248] the Karmānāśā is situated on the western limits of the district of Sahabad and forms the boundary between Bengal and U.P. The Kokouthis may be identified according to Lassen with the Bāgmatī, a sacred river of the Buddhists in Nepal. Another

[246] Cf. Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 99. Sarabos is identified with the Sarayū or the Ghargharā or Ghogrā. It rises in the Himalayas, a little to the north-east of the sources of the Ganges. Lassen takes it to be the Rapti. The confluence of the Sarayū and the Ganges was visited by Rāma and Lakṣmaṇa [*Rāmāyaṇa*, Ādikāṇḍa, 23 sarga, v. 5; vide *Mahābhārata* (84.70); Pāṇini's *Aṣṭādhyāyī* (VI. 4.174); *Viṣṇusmriti* (85.32); *Kālikāpurāṇa* (Ch. 24, 139), *Padmapurāṇa* (Uttarakhaṇḍa, vs. (35—38); *Raghuvaṃśa* (VIII, 95; IX, 20; XIII, 60—63]. The city of Ayodhyā about 6 mles from the Fyzabad Station stood on this river which was a tributary of the Ganges (*Bhāgavatapuraṇa*, V, 19, 18; IX, 8, 17; X, 79, 9). This river joins the Ganges in the district of Chapra in Bihar. According to the *Mahābhārata* (Anuśāsanaparva, Ch. 155), this river issues from the Mānasasarovara.

[247] The Rigvedic Gomatī (*Rigveda*, X, 75, 6) is the western tributary of the Indus. It joins the Ganges below Banaras. It rises in the Shahjahanpur district and flows into the Ganges about half-way between Banaras and Ghazipur (*Indian Antiquary*, Vol, XXII, 1893, p. 178). The *Mahābhārata* (Ch. 84. 73), *Bhāgavatapurāṇa* (V. 19, 18; X, 79, 11), *Padmapurāṇa* (Uttarakhaṇḍa, vs. 35—38), *Skandapurāṇa* (Avantikhaṇḍa, Ch. 60) and the *Viṣṇusmriti* (85.43) mention this river (for details, Law *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, p. 80).

[248] *Geo. Dic.* p. 240.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

name of this river is Bāchmatī.[249] The Andomatis has been identified by some with the river Dāmodara (Dammuda) which flows by Burdwan. The river Bhāgīrathī in its lower course receives the well-known tributary called the Damodara which rises from the hills near Bagodar in the district of Hazaribagh and flows south-east through Hazaribagh and between the districts of Manbhum and Santal Perganas and then through the districts of Burdwan and Hughly. It flows into the Hughli in several streams in the district of Midnapur. The Amystis is identical with the Ajavati. The Oxymagis may be identified with the Ikṣumatī. The river Kālindī flowing through Kumaun, Rohilkhand and Kanauj is the Ikṣumatī.[250] The Errenysis may be identified with the rivers Varaṇā and Asī joining the Ganges in the neighbourhood.[251]

The Diamouna is identified with the Yamunā. Pliny calls it the Jomanes. Arrian calls it the Jobares.[252] The Ganges with its junction with the Jumnā and the Sarasvatī is called the Triveṇī.[253] The river Yamunā (modern Jumna) is mentioned in the *Ṛgveda*,[254] *Atharvaveda*,[255] *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*[256], *Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa*[257], *Pañcaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa*,[258] *Śāṅkhyāyana-Śrautasūtra*[259], *Aśvalāyana Śrautasūtra*[260] and Patañjali's *Māhābhāṣya*.[261] This river is called the Kālindī by Bāṇa in his *Kādambarī*[262] because its water appears

---

[249] Law, *Geography of Early Buddhism*, p. 36.

[250] N. L. Dey, *Geo. Dict.* p. 77.

[251] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes & Arrian*, 191 f. n. The river Dāmodara is called by Ptolemy as the Damuda (Ptolemy's *Ancient India* p. 100).

[252] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 98.

[253] *Ibid.*, p. 99.

[254] X. 75, 5; V. 52.17; VII, 18, 19.

[255] IV. 9, 10.

[256] VIII, 14, 4.

[257] XIII, 5, 4, 11.

[258] IX. 4.11.

[259] XIII, 29, 25, 33.

[260] XII, 6, 28.

[261] 1.1.9, p. 436; 1, 4, 2, p. 670.

[262] p. 62.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

to be dark. The Yamunā proper is the first and great western tributary of the Ganges. The Vāluvāhinī is mentioned in the *Skandapurāṇa* as a tributary of the Yamunā.[263]

The Indus and the Ganges are greater than the Ister and the Nile. The Nile does not receive any tributary but in its passage through Egypt its water was drawn out to fill the canals. The Ister is an insignificant stream at its sources and though no doubt it receives many confluents, still these are neither equal in number to the confluents of the Indus and the Ganges nor are they navigable like them.[264]

Megasthenes mentions the river Silas named after the fountain from which it flowed through the dominions of the Silæans, on the water of which nothing would float but everything would go to the bottom. The Indians think that this river is located in the north. It purifies everything plunged in it.[265]

Among the south Indian rivers, the Godāvarī, which is identified with the Greek Goaris by Ptolemy, is the largest and the longest river, the source of which can be traced to the western ghats. According to the *Brahmapurāṇa*[266] this river has its source in the Trayamvakatirtha. Many holy places are situated on its bank.[267] The Kṛṣṇā is called as Maisolos by Ptolemy.[268] It is the same as the Kṛṣṇavenā of the *Purāṇas*. It survives in its modern name Kṛṣṇā. It issues from the Sahya mountain according to

[263] For further details, see Law, *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, pp. 135-136.

[264] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian*, pp. 198-99.

[265] *Ibid.*, pp. 33, 64 f.n.

[266] Ch. 77. vs. 9-10; *Śaurapurāṇa*, Ch. 69, v. 26.

[267] For further details, vide Law, *Historical Geography of Ancient India*, pp. 152-53.

[268] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, 1927, p. 67.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the *Mārkaṇḍeyapurāṇa*.[269] The river Kāverī is known to the Greeks as the Khaberos.[270] This river starts from the Coorg and passes through the districts of Coimbatore and Trichinopoly and falls into the Bay of Bengal. It is called "the beloved of the Pallavas." The river Bindā is the Bhīmā[271] or the Bhīmarathī which joins the Kṛṣṇā.[272]

The Adamas, as Yule observes, is probably a branch of the Brāhmaṇī river.[273]

The Namados is identified with the Narmadā or Revā or Mekalasutā[274] or Samodbhavā. The Quindion identified with the Vindhyas is described by Ptolemy as its source. The Nanagouna is identified with the river Tāptī. The source of this river is the Quindion which stands for only that portion of the Vindhya wherefrom rise the Narmadā and the Tāptī, that is to say, the eastern part of the modern Vindhyas, south of the Narmadā. According to Ptolemy the Dosaran is identified with the Daśārṇā of the *Purāṇas*.[275] This river can still be traced in the modern Dashān river that flows through Bundelkhand, rising in Bhopal and emptying into the Betwa.[276] According to Wilson a Daśārṇā river is said in the *Puraṇas* to rise in a mountain called Citrakuṭa = Kāmptānathgiri in Bundelkhand.[277] Ptolemy failed to give indigenous name of this river but named it after the people inhabiting the region. Thus the Dosaron is the river of

---

[269] 57. 26, 27.

[270] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 65.

[271] *Ibid.*, 1927, p. 103.

[272] *Garuḍapurāṇa*, I, p. 55.

[273] Ptolemy's *Ancient India*, p. 71.

[274] It has its source in the Maikal range, preserving the name of the ancient territory of Mekala. Mekalakanyā is another name of the Narmadā.

[275] *Viṣṇupurāṇa*, II, 160 f.n. 3.

[276] Law, *Tribes in Ancient India*, p. 375.

[277] Essays Analytical, etc., II, 336, f.n. 1.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the region inhabited by the Daśārṇas who belonged to the south-east of Madhyadeśa.[278]

The Mahī is known to Ptolemy as the Mophis.[279] This river rises in Malwa and drains itself into the Gulf of Cambay. It occurs as the Mahatī in the *Vāyupurāṇa*[280] and as the Mahita and Rohi.[281]

[278] McCrindle, *Ancient India as described by Ptolemy*, 1927, p. 71.

[279] *Ibid.*, p. 103.

[280] LXV. 97.

[281] *Mahābhārata*, Bhīṣmaparva, IX, 328; *Varāhapurāṇa* (LXXXV); vide also Law, *Geographical Essays*, p. 117.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

SOME REFLECTIONS AND NOTES ON SOUTH INDIAN MYSTICISM

By Dr. K. C. VARADACHARI,

I.—EROS IN MYSTIC APPROACH[1]—ĀṆḌĀL

IT is well-known to students of Philosophy that Plato held true love to exist between souls and the ordinary ways of love are more clearly of the lower nature that is between the sexes and might properly be described as lust. But the fact remains that we are seized with the sexes and the element of sex has to be sublimated in the process of love.

The glory of the Śrī Vaiṣṇava theology of the Āḻvārs consists in the beautiful understanding of the ways of transformation of the Eros through dedicated devotion (*anbu* or prīti). The sublimatory process however, required the understanding of the double poise of the Infinite Being, as an inseparable Di-unity of Nārāyaṇa and Śrī, Knowledge and Mercy. Accordingly the soul comes to a peculiar relationship in its realisation of the Ultimate Self. The path is the path of Mercy or Dayā invoked as the Teacher and the Mediator to the Infinite, a sort of interpretor of the Infinite to the finite and the finite to the Infinite through mother-love. This has become a cardinal principle of the ascent to divine relationship of the intensest kind. The attainment is nothing less than the attainment of the eros (*Śṛngāra*) relationship that is unique to the highest consciousness of absorption in the beloved. Its pale counterpart is the bridal experience,

[1] Submitted to the *All-India Oriental Conference* : *Annamalainagar*, *December* 1955 and read at the *Religion and Philosophy* Section.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

its imperfect image so to speak, in the terrestrial world but nonetheless the only adequate one.

The path of Love was chosen by the hardy souls St. Nammāḷvār (Śaṭhakopa) Tirumaṅgai, and Āṇḍāl. But in the case of the former two it was the transformation of the attitude of the ordinary male to the female ere the relationship could be established. It should prove much more easy for the female (sex) to realise the Highest through her own route of being (in physical incarnation). But not until the soul itself becomes feminine could this ecstacy be achieved. Whether this is so or not, it is clear that for the female of this incarnation, the path of Āṇḍāl shews how the transformation could be effected and the rich raptures of the Supramental are open to her.

It is not my purpose in this paper to expound the esoterics of the two works of Āṇḍal but to shew the psychological process through which a double ascent has been made by her though each one of them seems to promise the attainment of the Absolute. Why then the two compositions—one which utilizes the Mother (for Kātyāyanīvrata in Mārgaśīrṣa) to attain Śrī Kṛṣṇa for husband, and another a Kāmadeva-vrata to get the reciprocal love of Lord Kṛṣṇa in all ways. The Tiruppāvai and Tirumoḷi of Āṇḍāl (*Nācciyār*) form two episodes of the same process of growing into the divine nature preparing for the triple absorption of mind, breath and life and body. The final attainment of the Saint has been described as an absorption in the Idol of the Lord which was the fulfilment of the Eros.

It is clear from the Tiruppāvai, that sex of the female must find its culmination in the sex-love of the Divine, but indeed the effect of the entire *vrata* is to lead to the state when the Divine consorting with the Celestial Mother is now weaned away to look at the souls ardent in theirs of the Divine Lord. We are significantly reminded by

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the Freudian interpretation of the Father-love (which smacks of incestuousness-phobia) but surely the paradoxicality of the psychic development is that it is holy when it is in respect of the metaphysical Ultimate Being who is all to all—the *Viṣṇu Purāṇa* recognized this subtly when it said that all men were of the father-essence and all women of the mother-essence and always it is the father and mother that are spouses. Whatever may be the explanation based on the principle that the son is indeed the father born of the mother, it is clear that Āṇḍāl boldly ventured on this experiment of psychic potentiality and revealed what the tantras had in a gross way sought and failed—the potentiality of the God-love transforming the direction of the ascent, through the Mother's grace. The Divine once perceived by the soul does not give up its love but love urges it on to a final fulfilment.

The *Nāvciyār* or Āṇḍāl now dreams and yearns sleeplessly for the culmination, the spiritual marriage with the Lord Himself who has become a lover. The dreams are wonderful portrayals of the sole absorption in the marvellous exploits of the Lord in all His incarnations. Love itself is the master of this drama, a selfless love which is rich and grand, fragrant with the perfumes of renunciation and resignation. Kāma is the inner spirit and breath of all beings, by desire does every thing love and move and has its being. The Vedic hymn to Kāma is almost identical with the status given to the supreme Puruṣa. Indeed the supreme is the Love of love (Manmatha-manmatha—Kāmasya Kāmaḥ). Śrī Āṇḍāl seeks this father of all Kāma through Kāma himself. The Bhāgavata hierarchy reveals that Pradyumna is the son of Śrī Kṛṣṇa and Pradhyumna is Kāma himself. The saint seeks the Father through the son. The indwelling principle in every one is the Kāma or love which is identical with our very *antaryāmī*. The mystical understanding of this love within

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

us seeking the Eternal transcendent Love which is Universal and supra-cosmic makes it possible for the Divine Love to incarnate and possess us fully and in all our parts.

Thus St. Āṇḍāl practised the two fundamental vratas of Mother and Son typifying the essential nature of oneself as part of the Mother integral to the Mother, and the essential nature of oneself as love (son) of the Eternal Love and integral to him.

In mystic experience these two are co-ördinated and integrally experienced are very unique. St. Āṇḍāl therefore, stands as the most marvellous exponent of the bridal path of Mystic Attainment.

II.—AYONIJA

The concept of *ayonija* or not born or unborn or born of no womb has been one of the most common among mystical subjects. The true meaning is certainly beyond the usual conception of not being born of a womb. *Aja* and *ayonija* have to be distinguished. '*Ajo'pi san*', being unborn, I am yet born says Śrī Kṛṣṇa. It is usually interpreted as meaning that God is not born forced by the results, good or bad, of his previous karma. His birth is free birth out of His free will, of course, guided by His compassion and love to his devotees and adherence to dharma or supreme Law which He himself has promulgated. Birth from womb therefore, would refer to the conception of being born through karma. *Ayonija* would therefore, mean not materialising oneself as is said to be in certain theosophical literature but rather that their conception is through free will and grace of God for doing His work in this world. The dwelling in the womb (*gar-*

[2] Substance of the Inaugural Lecture on "Āṇḍāls" *Tiruppāvāi* festival. T. T. Devasthanam, TIRUPATI, on Dec. 17th, 1958.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

bhavāsa) or even the concept of 'immaculate conception' need not be thought of except by those who will hold the literal truth in a physical sense of the conception.

The first three Āḷvārs are said to have been born of flowers growing in tanks. The fourth was also said to have been rather mysteriously born, though Bhṛgu is said to have been his parent. Āṇḍāl is claimed to have been born under the basil (tulasī) plant. So Sītā is said to have been earlier born of the plough. We also know that the Pāṇḍavas were said to have been born of the gods, Dharma, Vāyu, Indra and Aświns, and Karṇa of Sūrya. The truth behind this concept has to be gleaned through the birth of Śrī Kṛṣṇa himself who said that he of his own wish and the prayers of Vasudeva and Devakī in their previous lives was born of them three times as Pṛṣṇigarbha, Vāmana and lastly, as Śrī Kṛṣṇa. The birth of Śrī Rāma is also a case in point showing how divine birth happens—*janma karma ca me divyam*—and it is the real meaning of *ayonija*—not born of the womb of karma but the womb of dharma, yoga, tapasyā, satya of women whose life was divine and divinised for the birth of God. Great Mahātmās are always born of parents whose life bore the stamp of dedication through lives. Āṇḍāl therefore, is not a myth nor her birth should be said to be miraculous. Viṣṇu-Citta could have no other glory than to be the father of a divine child. He was the soul of purity and dedication and love. The reference to the kind of flower as in the case of Gods is to show what divine quality they exhibited in their lives. A more natural explanation when it is available should be adopted.

Āṇḍāl was a divine child, a self-gift of Śrī or the Higher Mother who has the three forms of Śrī, Bhū and Nīlā, and a trinity of Mother form which helped to rouse maidenhood to levels of divinity.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

III.—Ars Intuitiva or Intuitive Love[3]

Āṇḍāl, it is said, was a genius; and her first, and in one sense the work that made her immortal mystic of the path of śṛṅgāra, Tiruppāvāi reveals the subtle intuitions of her consciousness, both transcendental and poetic. As such one eminent critic almost suggested that such perfection cannot be referred to her but to her poetico-mystic father Viṣṇu-Citta. It is well-known that her work has been interpreted and expounded with a wealth of learning and scholarship and delicacy that makes it a work of true Vedic and Vedāntic wisdom, Gītaic versatility and Bhāgavata-beauty. Hearing such discourses one almost could agree with the eminent critic. But intellectual thought though it can admire and adumbrate cannot reach up to transcendence of itself. Intuitive Vision and approach is of a different order of experience which, whilst it can exalt and suggest and uplift man's consciousness including his sensations and perceptions, and reasonings and imaginations, cannot be truly understood. Her love was not of the sensate amatory order, nor is it an intellectual love of God as found among philosophers but only of the intuitive order of being, which found in Him being and consciousness and bliss, apart from whom she felt as non-existent, unconsciousness and inconscient and miserable. Her intuition was not contemplative resignation but dynamic seeking for mergence in the Body of God. Intuitive Love then is integral in a sense; it is love with a totality of self-surrender to the Univer al Being who is the life of the universe, and with whom one is eternally united, inseparable and basic to all existence, of the sensate, waking, dreaming and deep sleep. Understood in this sense, and also in the sense that one does not become a jñānī in one life alone (*bahūnāṁ janmanāṁ ante jñānavān māṁ prapadyate*),

[3] Substance of the Inagural Lecture on "Āṇḍals" *Tiruppāvāi* festival, T. T. Devasthanam, Tirupati, on Dec. 17, 1958.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

that one is born intuitively loving the Divine One Person, is not inconceivable. In this sense are mystics made and born, and poets too and others. In this case it is a divine afflatus descending into the creation, freely to demonstrate the glory of love and the truths of Real Being.

Bhaktyātvananyayā śaktum jñātum draṣṭum ca tattvena praveṣṭum ca. . . . said the Lord. The only way to know, to have Vision, and to Enter into God is through devotion. Bhakti only is capable of making God reveal Himself to the soul. Devotion is of course, to be shewn through observances, such as those prescribed by the śāstras; in the case of those who are not qualified in any sense from following the directions of the śāstras, the śāstras themselves have prescribed the methods, to be adopted by women, girls, outcastes and so on. Thus, it cannot be said that the śāstra has not prescribed to each his particular method of devotion fitting his station and condition. Even devotion to be pleasing must be *vidhi-pūrvakaṁ* and not *avidhi-pūrvakaṁ* (according to rule and not otherwise). The *Svadharma* or one's own dharma in this regard also must be remembered as better than the dharma of others. Āṇḍāl following her *svadharma* as woman or girl awaiting to be married to a proper person, elects to seek God as husband, and indeed asks her comrades to do the same. Thus, individual effort or tapasyā or *vrata* is necessary for shewing devotion. God's grace is always ready (*siddhopāya*) but one should revere it, receive it, with devotion, and earnest necessity for living should prompt one to get up in the morning at Brāhmī-muhūrta and having bathed go to the temple of God to receive the prasāda or Grace of acceptance, Vision and knowledge and entry into the temple. One of the very important differences between the necessity for individual effort and spontaneous grace is solved by Āṇḍal who shews that if one is physically fit one should express one's devotion in all one's parts (*tvikaraṇa*). The Vrata

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

concept itself is ancient and has the sanction of the Vedic Yajña and Bhāgavata-vrata and kalpa. The soul should seek God, aspire after the highest state of union with Him. Undoubtedly, this love for God may grow or arise from the Divine selection (vṛṇute in *Yameva eṣa vṛṇute tena labhyaḥ* of the *Gītā* and the *Kaṭhopaniṣad*). This is *kāma-yajña* disinterested love of God for the sake of God who is not a viṣaya of the senses. Real nirviṣaya-bhakti or karma does not seek a material object that satisfies the senses (viṣayas). The love of God is self-giving utter and complete for the sake of realizing God. Bridal union usually develops as a consequence of integral aspiration, seeking a melting of oneself in the Divine Personality. This truth is brought out by Śrī Kṛṣṇa's especial statement : *tattvena praveṣṭum ca*; entering by one's essence into God. Some enter through their sense or perception, some through knowledge or jñāna, but rarely does one enter into God through or by his essence or spirit, substantially. The other two are by means of *dharma-bhūta-jñāna* or consciousness as attribute but the last is by means of one's substance.

That this is a reading that is to be really accepted is testified to by the very story of Āṇḍāl who was absorbed into the Iconic personality of God in the temple. She found herself entering into the Infinite Godhead even as earlier Pān Āḷvār entered into the Iconic personality of Śrī Raṅganātha. The Infinite Godhead took them into the body of Himself (*tanu*). It is said in the story of Mārkaṇḍeya (*Bhāgavata* XII) that the Child on the banyan leaf opened its mouth so that he could enter into Him and see the worlds within. This opening of the body of God to the devotee for the entry of the devoted soul and his coming out of it is there declared to be the Viṣṇu-Māyā. Here then the Door of the Infinite is open and one thence is born of the Immortal Being. A divine birth is the beginning of a Divine Life in God for God and by God. One

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

moves in Brahman freely, living and moving and being in Him really in one's own fullness.

IV.—Prapatti and Bhakti or the so-called *Mārjāla-Kiśora-Nyāya and Markaṭa-Kiśora-Nyāya*[4]

In Śrī Vaiṣṇavism alone the distinction between prapatti and bhakti is characteristically exploited. There has been some kind of loose thinking about the former being the mārjāla-kiśora-nyāya and the latter as markaṭa-kiśora-nyāya. Indeed the two are accepted by both the schools of Śrī Vaiṣṇavism and emphasized almost equally as the means to the highest realisation. The whole question then bristles with reference to the problem of realisation and liberation. The former shews utter helplessness and fear of impediments, obstructions including the wily but powerful Māyā and all beings and elements and so on. The latter is not so much fear-conscious as love-conscious. This differentium is usually forgotten. If liberation means the freedom from fear of saṁsāra, then the prapatti is quite adequate when the individual surrenders out of his helplessness and fear to the One Supreme Being who can save him from saṁsāra and all fear—*abhayaṁ sarvabhūtebhyo*—. But realisation means not merely liberation from saṁsāra but also attainment of Brahman or Godhead, experience and service and one's own self-realisation as God-dependent Being, then prapatti leads up to the same through engendering bhakti for the saviour-God which leads to the highest experience of Him. It is true that in this case prapatti is both capable of being the means to God as also directly to liberation from saṁsāra. Thus, it is an independent method for attaining liberation through God's grace even like Karma, Jñāna and Bhakti which entail certain fundamental performance of works, mentation and worships

[4] Submitted to the *All-India Oriental Conference*: *Delhi*, 1957 December.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

in prescribed manner in a selfless manner and for God-realisation together with liberation. Prapatti can indeed also lead to God-realisation directly even without passing over to the bhakti-state of prīti or love because in a sense prapatti or declaration of utter dependence on God alone through surrender is an assertion of the metaphysical or real truth of the nature of the soul—which is utter dependence on God alone, and on none other—*parama-śeṣataika svarūpa*, or *parama-ekānta-bhāva*.

There is hardly any possibility of considering that prapatti and bhakti are to be equated with the theory of self-effort and God's-grace as if they are separable in the Śrī Vaiṣṇava theology. The one puruṣa-kāra or doer or bringer about of the result is the Supreme Being himself or Mother who is the Supreme Being or so intimately in union with Him. The guru partakes of the nature of the Mother and leads the surrenderer to the highest realisation.

2. The conception of the identity of the *upāya* and *upeya*, the means and the end of self-realisation which in Śrī Vaiṣṇava theology and Vedānta includes the attainment of freedom from saṁsāra and all-fear (*sarva-bhaya*) entails the Śrī Vaiṣṇava conception of oneness of the Mother and Brahman or Nārāyaṇa and Śrī. There is of course, the peculiar difficulty of the puranic view not so much of the Pāñcarātra view which makes Śrī, a soul albeit eternally free, *nityamukta*, and in a special sense capable of being the Guru or *puruṣa-kāra*, even as the Īśvara of the Yoga school. The two schools of Śrī Vaiṣṇavism designated northern (*Vaḍagalai*) and southern (*tengalai*), seem to differ from one another on this issue. The Yogic situation demands that the Mother-Guru must be deemed to be identical with the Supreme Being or Parama-puruṣa or Brahman in order to satisfy this canon of identity of upāya and upeya. The conception of Ācārya—devobhāva becomes in a sense the guiding principle of ācārya-niṣṭha. The Yoga becomes the activity of

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

uniting the soul (jīva or the surrenderer) with the Supreme Status of the Paramapuruṣa or Brahman by the Supreme Puruṣa himself in the form of the Mother or in the Mother-aspect or Guru-aspect. Thus, the method of prapatti for the sake of self-realisation or self-protection clearly envisages this acceptance of the Guru as Mother also in the spiritual sense of granting divine birth or knowledge-birth or bliss-birth to the soul. The supreme meaning of the Gītācārya is essentially this identity of means and ends in Brahman as self-realisation and Brahman as Mother. All souls however eminent are less than the Highest and cannot be the final means to the Final End. This is obviously the reason for the concept of di-unity of the twin-personalities of the Final Being. Whilst this is the ultimate concept, the actual process of release and realisation proceeds with the co-operative activity of the twin-personalities of the Mother-Guru and the Ultimate Being known as the Goal of All Beings—Nārāyaṇa—*narāṇāṁ ayanaṁ*.

3. The third concept of importance for prapatti thus naturally follows that prapatti is the preparation for bhakti, the surrender leads to the enjoyment to the person who saves and redeems and frees and finally becomes the Object of all one's being and the substance of all life. Bhakti includes both the attainment of the Divine Lord through love or enjoyment as well as the realisation of one's self as dependent on the Ultimate Being and not merely as a self-conscious intelligence. It would certainly appear to be too much of a claim to state that prapatti for self-protection from saṁsāra or even for realisation of oneself could engender love for the Divine as such and for the sake of the Divine. The utter offering of oneself and all for the Divine that one loves and seeks to love exclusively and solely is different from a surrender that is made out of fear of the world and its cycle of saṁsāra and associations and death. Therefore it follows that only in a limited way does pra-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

patti lead to God-realisation as saviour and not to God as the Ultimate Being of supremest worth.

4. There is another point of importance which has to be considered, namely that self-realisation does not lead to God-realisation and those who seek to save their souls through attainment of self-realisation really never attain the highest. This doctrine of isolationism or *paraccheri* is impossible because of the intimate relation between oneself and the Divine Lord which is one of prakāra and prakārī and the knowledge of oneself entails the knowledge that one is the prakāra of God. It is perhaps a severe way of stating that one should seek to know God rather than oneself : the knowledge of God entails the knowledge of oneself, but not *vice versa*. The knowledge of the whole leads to the knowledge of the parts but not the knowledge of part the knowledge of the whole. This is impossible in the organistic view. There can be no isolationism and just as the attainment of freedom from saṁsāra inevitably will engender love for the saviour or redeemer or the Guru so also the knowledge of oneself inevitably will lead to the knowledge of the Divine Lord and lead to Love of God solely. The great teachers held this organic relationship and it is only the atomistic and mechanical thinking that has led to the schism.

5. There is another interesting point as to the speed of the ways. Prapatti is speediest way of release whereas bhakti is a slow and arduous path. In the Yoga Upaniṣads there is a version about this. There are said to be two parts to the highest Reality, the Śuka-patha or the patha followed by Ṛṣi Śuka or otherwise stated as bird-path or flight to the Divine and the Vāmadeva path or the path followed by Vāmadeva, the path of ant or slow-ascent or gradual path.[5]

[5] *Varāha Up.* IV.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Prapatti may be claimed to be the method of flight to the Unknown or the supreme Saviour. The ease with which the goal is achieved and the simplicity of the method show that it is open to all who are qualified by helplessness; 'whosoever seeks my refuge him (or her or it) shall I save without doubt. Him even if he be a sinner shall I make righteous'. There are of course variations of the urge for release due to intensity or purpose. Some seek immediate release : some could wait for it. But the flight to the Supreme Being happens because of the knowledge that the Supreme Being is the life and being of the soul. The path of gradual ascent by Vāmadeva is indeed also dependent on the grace of God which makes the seeker realise the eternal presence of God in all and his own oneness with that Supreme Puruṣa which makes him exclaim that he is Manu etc. . . . The prapatti of the ārta has the characteristics of the Śuka-patha which entails immediate release and immediate realisation of the Supreme Brahman, where as the prapatti of Vāmadeva has the characteristic of bhakti and kaiṅkarya rejoicing in the Nature of the Divine immanence in all and love of God in all and one's own inseparable relation with God in all things. So much so the contrast drawn between bhakti and prapatti is merely a distinction without difference. Ultimately, the aim of the seeker is integral realisation of God and love of God and freedom from the world of death and saṁsāra and rebirth. The concept of loving service (Kaiṅkarya) of God as the Ultimate aim of being resolves this duality for it is that which is implicit in the notion of absolute dependence of the soul on God and in all states and in all circumstances of the Divine Nature.

6. The Divine or God is clearly defined as fivefold unity, as the Ultimate Transcendent Being beyond all knowings and realisations too, as well as the Creator etc., and the Incarnate Historical personalities, the inner Ruler

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

immortal in all beings or creatures, and the Object of Worship in the temples who is the luminous power that can lead us to the apprehension of the other statuses of the Divine. Indeed to know one is to be guided to the knowledge of all in a truer sense than the usual version that to taste a drop of the ocean is to know the taste of the entire ocean. It is in this sense alone did the Tamil saints speak of the knowing of one is to know all: the integral unity of the five-fold nature entails this deduction. Prapatti is said to be direct and requires to be made by each soul in its moment of distress and dire need. To which Godhead has it to make this offering or surrender? The Śrī Vaiṣṇava thinkers following the Āḷvārs made this counsel: prapatti should be made to the Arcā or Icon in the temple or to the Godhead directly known as Vibhava or Incarnation as in the case of Vibhīṣaṇa, Kākāsura, Arjuna etc. The conception of prapatti however, has undergone certain changes in the history of Śrī Vaiṣṇavism. Indeed the prapatti is performed as rite or ritual in the set terms of Śrī Rāmānuja's *Gadya-traya* specially the *Śaraṇāgati-gadya* either at the time of performing the saṁāśrayaṇa or *pañca-saṁskāra* or as a special rite when the soul is needing the surrender—*bharanyāsa*, getting conscious of its futility and inability to attain realisation by its own efforts. There can be hardly any doubt about the need to become individually conscious of the need to attain self-realisation or/and freedom from saṁsāra and death and rebirth. The technique of *bharanyāsa* if it is given over to the Guru or the ancient Teacher or performed in such a way that the individual whose *bhara* has been offered is unconscious of this act itself as in the case of a consecrated or dedicated cow or calf or gift of animal for the service of the Divine, would be precisely the extension of the mārjāra-kiśora-nyāya (the Kitten's way). But such a technique however, acceptable to be self-abasing creature does not entail the fullest attain-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ment of the self-realisation or God-realisation. What is true of the unconscious creature or helpless soul cannot be said to be open to the soul already aware of its spiritual nature and able to choose the right way and means and goal. Bhakti, on the other hand, demands the conscious acceptance of God and love and seeks only the freedom from saṁsāra and ignorance and enjoyment of God alone through love, for love, and as love. Thus Prapatti is self-surrender either conscious or unconscious but bhakti is always a self-conscious act, therefore the distinction between self-surrender and self-offering. They are however, capable of being integral steps in a single process of divine attainment resulting in a double realisation as stated in the Upaniṣads: *vināśena mṛtyum tīrtvā sambhūtyā amṛtam aśnute* [6]*ātmanā vindate viryam, vidyayā-vindate amṛtam.*[7]

7. There is however a very important difference between prapatti and bhakti in addition to what we have stated. Prapatti or self-surrender has no niyama or condition in respect of place or time or fitness or fruit or methods of *yama* or *niyama*; provided the five conditions of *akiñcanatā*, *anukūlyatā*, *pratikūlyavarjanam*, *goptṛtvavaraṇam* (*bhagavaccaraṇa-varaṇam*), *mahāviśvāsa*, *kārpaṇya*, *ātmanikṣepa* happen. Even here it may be pointed out that five conditions are so interrelated that if one of them is present the others naturally follow by the grace of God. The central aspect is akiñcanatā which must relate itself with *varaṇam* of God's feet for refuge or in some divine manner get related to the Grace of God who chooses to save the helpless, willy nilly. The aim of sādhana on the prapatti path is to arrive at this helpless or nothingness state of being so as to ensure the flow of grace of God to it. The aim of the bhakti sādhana is to love God and feeling the help-

[6] Īśa.
[7] *Kena.*

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

lessness of attaining him love more and more for the sake of God alone till oneself is forgotten utterly in such a love.

8. It is the most important part of the Northern school to hold that the two must be integrated to arrive at the Highest state of Realisation of God and freedom, and each individual though he might have been chosen by the Divine out of sheer pity (karuṇā or dayā) for being saved should again perform the deep dedication of surrender and offering to Him alone. Though surrender is said to to be such that it must be done once only and that this 'once'ness can refer to that performed by one's teacher or Ācārya sometime also, yet it is claimed rightly in sādhanā that to remind oneself and perform it for other aims than that which prevailed at the first time, since the conception of release or realisation undergoes changes as one advances in the spiritual life of God and in God. The charge of lack of faith is never so serious as the charge of not doing what ought to be done by each individual soul in its conscious moments of self-realisation as the utter dependent of God who had developed the illusory sense of independence of oneself. This is serious enough from the point of view of sādhanā, for faith of the real kind is that which grows as an organic force of dependence of God rather than an external imposition or habit.

9. The conclusion follows from all the above that :

(1) The integral yoga has two parts : Prapatti and Bhakti.

(2) Prapatti is the act of seeking refuge of God, but it also includes when refuge cannot be consciously made or one is incapable of doing it, the act of God's grace which protects him, this latter being a spontaneous act (*jāyamāna kaṭākṣam*).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

(3) Prapatti accordingly is unconditional surrender to God or acceptance by God of the incapable soul, and depends on no other condition of knowledge or birth or station or place or occasion or fruit.

(4) Bhakti is the self-offering of the soul to God for the sake of freedom or for the sake of God-Love or both, and is a development of the real knowledge culminating in supreme devotion and love.

(5) The source for both these can be found in the Pāñcarātra Āgama, the *Gītā* and the *Rāmāyaṇa*. It depends on the type of individual whether he seeks the God-love or just freedom from fear of all kinds. But once being freed from one kind of fear by God's grace it is but natural for him to turn to God for securing freedom from all kinds of fear for which he could make his surrender more and more complete. But the main feature of prapatti is more or less selfish searching for security from fears of all kinds whereas bhakti is the unselfish love of God for the sake of God and fused with true intelligence of jñāna; it is self-offering integrally.

(6) The conflict between the mārjāra-kiśora and markaṭa-kiśora-nyāyas is not found in the earliest works of the sampradāya writers, even till the time of Manavāla Mahāmuni. The reference to it by Dr. S. Radhakrishnan in the introduction to the *Gītā* is therefore not sanctioned in the earliest schismatic writers of the Śrī Vaiṣṇavism. There is no sanction for it in the works of Śrī Rāmānuja or the Āḻvārs or the ācāryas up-till the 15th century.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Popular contrasts somehow have come and have led many writers to contrast the two schools of Śrī Vaiṣṇavism on this basis. Śrī A. Govindāchārya of Mysore in his *Arthapañcaka* edition of Pillai Lokāchārya[8] mentions this but it is not found in the works.[9]

[8] *J. R. A. S.*, July 1910.

[9] References are given to *J. R. A. S.*, 1908 p. 338 and vade-mecum, A. Govindāchārya, p. 45.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

DHARMAŚĀSTRAS AND THE MODERN AGE

By Dr. P. T. Raju

I

INTRODUCTION

The very name of the subject, "*Dharmaśāstras* and the Modern Age," presupposes the doubt whether all that is said in them is applicable to life in the modern age. *Dharmaśāstras* are not treatises on ethics like the modern treatises on the subject; they are not philosophies of morality, analyses of moral experience, but ethical codes in which the duties of individuals and groups called castes etc., are codified. They are a mixture of ethical, social and positive laws used by judges in courts as well as by religious, political and ethical teachers. They include even laws about economic relationships like the laws of inheritance, obtaining of course at a time when economics was not yet a full-fledged discipline.

The question raised about the *dharmaśāstras* of India may be raised about other ethical does also, of the Muslims, Jews, Christians, Parsis etc. For there is a general question whether the codes of conduct given to a society some centuries ago can be and ought to be followed literally in the modern age. The opinion has become general that all ethical codes were composed to suit societies living in a certain set of circumstances, which are not now the same; and changes in conditions of life necessitate modifications in the codes. But at present we are mainly concerned with the ethical codes of India.

There are indeed orthodox people in India who do not wish to view the *dharma-śāstras* in the perspective of history or social development, but as sacrosanct for ever,

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

But such people are to be found in other communities also. Their attitude can easily be appreciated: all ethical codes are associated with certain institutionalised religions; they support the religions and are supported by them; and any charge in the moral codes or even a critical attitude to them is considered to be a danger to religion, which promises redemption. But societies have been going through several kinds of transformation, economic, political and social, and even religious ideas are getting more and more purified; and humanity is not going to admit that all this charge is heading towards damnation. Unless the objections to reform are known to be not prompted by vested interests, they cannot have much weight.

II

Growth of Morality in Society

Anthropologists, sociologists, writers on ethics and law, and other scholars have shown that moral consciousness has a growth, that it differs from culture to culture, society to society, tribe to tribe, and then again from the less advanced to the more advanced cultures and civilizations. It is almost universally accepted that the development of moral consciousness determines the development of religious consciousness also, though it is not as commonly mentioned that the purification of religious consciousness influences the nature of moral consciousness by introducing a stronger sense of ethical relativism with regard to fixed moral laws and by strengthening tolerance in human relationships. The latter particularly holds of Indian religious consciousness as found in the Vedānta, which made the Hindu proverbially tolerant not only of other religions but also of other moral codes. It is of importance to note that originally the rules of moral conduct prescribed for the different castes and subcastes were motivated by the

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

laudable and commendable desire to allow every group to follow its own moral traditions and forms of worship, which later on became a desire to insist upon its following them and to prevent it from changing them. The problem of caste was not merely one of fixing separate professions, but also of tribes and races and forms of cult and worship. India, which is determined to abolish caste system, has consistently to support all fight against race discriminations. And if the abolition on a world-wide scale materializes, the emergence of a new culture based upon new principles is bound to occur.

Ethics, as we find in modern works, is reflective morality. It appears in the history of man at a quite late stage. One may summarize the stages of the growth of morality in the following way :

1. First, there was only custom or tradition, which governed the conduct of primitive society. Tribal people may have their gods associated with different forms of conduct. But for an objective study, the gods are unimportant, the traditions handed down from generation to generation are important. Generally the leaders of the tribe do not question them even if no gods are associated with them.

2. Next, when a tribe comes into contact with another tribe having different customs and traditions, the idea dawns on the members of the tribe that customs and traditions can be different. Even apart from noticing the forms of conduct of another tribe, some members of the tribe may violate some traditions. Usually leaders of the tribe attribute calamities to such violations; but when they find that other tribes are prospering in spite of violating what they themselves consider to be right forms of conduct, some connivance at violations and a vague sense of ethical relativity begin to appear.

3. But these violations introduce some internal disorder. And when some tribes unite and constitute a nation

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

or a larger society, the disorder is observed on a wider scale. Observation of different customs outside one's society introduces reflection; but the innovations and changes, which are in a sense violations of the tradition, introduce unstability. Besides, when everything depends on tradition, and tradition is handed down from generation to generation, it depends, for exactness of detail, on the memory of individuals, which is not often reliable. Different persons may remember the same tradition in different ways, and their memories clash. It is in such situations that ethical codes are composed. They are meant (1) to preserve the tradition in its exactness, (2) to prevent innovations and changes, (3) to offer ready guidance in detail for the administration of justice and (4) to relate the practices to the existing religion.

4. But just by the time of composition of codes reflective morality must have already entered the minds of men. Questions must have been raised not only about how an act should or should not be done, but also why it should or should not be done. Justification for every injunction is sought, and when justification is not obtained, reform is advocated. Opinions may differ about the forms of justification. It may be given in terms of some sacred scripture, social welfare, political stability or individual welfare. If it is given by appeal to some sacred scripture, it is acceptance of some authority and therefore tradition, though considered sacred. But the justification of the very tradition is now sought, and therefore justification of a tradition in terms of a sacred scripture is arguing in a circle. But when it is given in terms of the nature of society or the individual, no further justification is sought, because society and the individual are hard facts for ethics. But then some ideals of society and the individual are introduced, for no ethical conduct aims at merely preserving the brute in the gregarious man,

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

but man with individual, social and spiritual ideals. It is at this juncture that fullfledged ethics, rationally articulated and discussed, appears on the human scene. Thus ethics as a distinct discipline appears after ethical codes, which are biassed towards conserving particular forms of traditional conduct and opposed to complete rational investigation.[1]

III

Growth of Morality in the Individual

Ethics demands that one should control one's activity according to certain rules and laws. But no individual is born with a knowledge of these rules and laws. He learns them first from nature and society, then reflects over them and assimilates them to his experience, and afterwards is even prepared to go beyond them when convinced by his experience that he should and ought.

1. First, the child learns to control its activity from nature. When it places its finger near fire, it is burnt. Thus nature teaches the child through pains and pleasures. Even a grown-up learns what to eat and how much to eat through pains and pleasures.

2. Next, as the child grows, its parents and elder sisters and brothers teach it what to do and what not to do through rewards and punishments, and also praise and blame. So far the individual is not very reflective about conduct. He may now and then ask his elders why a certain act is performed in a certain way. But the majority of children are satisfied with the answers

[1] My teacher in Navya-Nyāya, M.M. Sri Sankar Tarkaratna, was fond of telling us that his own teacher would challenge every scholar to argue with him on any philosophical point, giving him any position to defend, but would refuse to argue on any point of the *dharmaśāstras*, the rules of which he regarded as sacrosanct and inviolable. This is real orthodoxy.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

obtained, and care more about rewards and punishments than about the justification of prescribed forms.

3. But as the child grows, many of the rewards and punishments are discontinued; and many forms of conduct have no rewards except social praise. A stage is reached in the individual's life, when no concrete rewards are obtained for right conduct except social approval, praise and fame, and the opposite for wrong conduct. Many forms of wrong conduct are not legally or even socially punishable. At this stage, the individual follows the traditions and is eager for social praise and approval.

4. But a stage comes in the life of some individuals, who are of course very few, when they rise above social approval and praise. They think for themselves, question their own head and heart about the justification of the prescribed laws of behaviour; and if they find that they are unjust, they are prepared to violate them and go against society. Such are ethical geniuses, leaders of mankind, some of whom become martyrs, and others successful reformers. It is they who give real impetus to reflective ethics.

IV

Dawn of Reflection and evoluation of Codes

Now, we may give the causes leading to reflective ethics and re-evaluation of codes as a summary and in an analytic manner.

1. The first is the observation of different social practices. In the contemporary age our knowledge of these differences is far greater than before. This knowledge is making us question the validity of many of our traditions, and is at the same time enabling us to see the living importance of equally many or even more.

2. Our attitude to physical nature has considerably changed. We view it as an inanimate force with specific laws by knowing which we can control it. We do not

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

think of the natural forces as being controlled by spirits, and we are attributing natural calamities less and less to the spirits angered by violated traditions.

3. There has been a gradual change in our outlook on man also. Many modern Christians, for instance, are less prone to believing in original sin. The Hindus are believing less and less in the unreality of the world. We are less convinced now that it is a sin to enjoy the values of the world and lead a comfortable life.

4. There is progress in our understanding of human nature also. There are certain acts which a man can do and certain others which he cannot do, and still others for not doing which he commits a sin or crime. That all moral laws are divine commandments is not accepted by many, who say that they are to be based on the uature of man and not on the will of God. Even if God gave them, they should not conflict with human nature ; and if they do, they cannot be dictates of God, who created man also.

5. Hence has arisen a change in the methods of establishing the validity of moral and legal laws, and many view-points have been taken for establishing and justifying them.

(a) First there is the standpoint of tradition. In the case of many customs like etiquette and formalities, which are not found to be particularly harmful, we follow them and justify them as belonging to "our culture", though we are not prepared to follow every practice handed down by our tradition. The amount of appeal to "our culture" varies from individual to individual, group to group, and locality to locality. In any case, justification by tradition is current throughout the world.

(b) Then, there is justification by appeal to religion. Practically every religious founder was a

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

reformer of his time. But when once his reforms were established, religion acted as a conservative force and gave sanction to all the practices. When it got institutionalized, all the institutions of society became religious, and any violation was regarded as a sacrilege.

But now our conception of religion is changing. If God is one and if the relation of God to man is the same throughout the universe, then all social institutions must be good and God could not have been interested in any particular set of social institutions and could not have damned the others. Besides, we are more often distinguishing than ever before the essentials from the non-essentials of religion, and are insisting that the essentials of all religions must be and are the same. Christian social forms, Islamic social forms, Hindu social forms etc., are externals to the essential spirit of religion. Indeed, as Radhakrishnan has often been saying, we demand that spirituality should be embodied in our social institutions; but we are at the same time not ready to accept that any particular traditionally handed down set of institutions alone embodies the spiritual. On the contrary, we are asserting that many institutions have lost the spiritual in them. Justification by religion is current throughout the world; but our conception of religion is more and more purified. On the one hand, there is a demand to separate religion from social and political life; on the other, there is a demand to make our social and political life more and more spiritual. But

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ethics in its concrete form cannot be separated from social and political life, and it cannot be separated from religion too. Hence a constant change of emphasis in our evaluation of traditional codes. Sometimes we argue against traditional ethics from the secular point of view; other times we want to make it religious.

(c) With the immense progress made by the physical and natural sciences, and the sciences of man, scientific outlook dominates our thought, and we want that everything should be viewed from the standpoint of science. I do not wish to raise the question whether scientific attitude to ethics is right or wrong. I only want that we should take note of its presence. Among the educated, the number of those who have more faith in science than in religion is on the increase. They demrnd that religion should not conflict with science; and where there is conflict, science is accepted and religion is doubted. They demand that traditional ethical codes must meet the requirements of scientific outlook. If they cannot, they should be modified. Some of those who advocate scientific outlook are extremists; they want to abolish all religion and condemn all reference to religion.

(d) Another basis taken for establishing and justifying ethical laws is the sociological. Those who adopt this attitude are indifferent to religion, even if they do not condemn it. The criterion for all ethical laws is social welfare, and not the salvation of the individual. Whichever of the traditional laws is found to be harmful

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

to society and retarding its progress is to be discontinued and new laws are to be introduced which contribute to social progress.

(e) But this sociological justification may be so interpreted as to submerge the individual in society and ignore his welfare. Humanism therefore wants that all laws should be justified from its own point of view. Practically humanism is as old as man himself; every man with deep sympathies, compassion, kindness, love and respect for other human beings is essentially a humanist. But humanism with a distinct name and programme could appear only when a movement, both theoretical and practical, was started in the interests of the welfare of man and in defense of human values and boldly challenged the excesses of religion and laws of orthodox tradition. Immense good has been done to man by the humanistic movement, whatever be its ultimate defects. In the contemporary world, particularly in some communist countries, it seems to be fighting for the recognition of the dignity of man and freedom of the individual; and many seem to be becoming martyrs in the name of humanism. And humanism can act as a check on the extravagances of science also.

(f) We are not to forget that what are called ethical codes are not merely concerned with what are now-a-days called ethical laws but with all laws of all kinds of social institutions including the economic and the political. They give their justification of economic and political relationships from the religious point of view. But now throughout the world

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

there are demands for readjustment of these relationships; and the demand is made and justified from the point of view of various ideologies, socialistic, communistic, democratic, humanistic and even religious. If the readjustment is justified, then the traditional codes cannot be right. All that we can say is that the traditional laws suited certain conditions, which do not now exist. In any case, this new demand gives occasion to questioning the eternal validity claimed for the ethical codes. For if the institutions and their relationships are to be changed, then ethical codes also have to be changed.

6. We may incidentally note that in the world now there is a demand for revolutionary change, for burning everything past; and there is a demand for conserving everything past. In order to avoid conflict between the two and the agonies of revolutions, slow and steady change is advocated by wise men who do not want a complete break with the past and yet realize the inenvitability of change. This change has to be neither too quick nor too slow, as either large sections of people will be condemned to misery by quick changes or outworn laws will keep many sections in unjustifiable conditions too long. If change is to be introduced steadily and carefully, re-evaluation and modification of ethical codes becomes necessary.

V

Nature and Growth of Dharmaśāstras in India

So far have been presented only general considerations, which are fairly universally applicable. But as the paper is concerned mainly with the *dharmaśāstras* of India, we may briefly review their nature and growth. Whatever

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

be the orthodox opinion—it is strong in its own circles—scholars on the whole believe that the *dharmaśāstras* have had a historical growth. There are several of them. Though not on fundamentals, they show differences of opinion, and the differences were due to changed conditions which historical life introduced. The largest amount of work done on *dharmaśāstras* is by M. M. Dr. P. V. Kane.[2] There are other important writers like M. M. Dr. Ganganatha Jha, and Dr. K. P. Jayaswal. Writers like Dr. Bhagavan Das have attempted to interpret Manu's ideas with the help of Plato's classification or rather stratification of classes. As the *dharmaśāstras* are also works on jurisprudence, they interested writers like Maine. This paper is not primarily concerned with the history of the *dharmaśāstras*, except to show that they had a growth. It is not interested also in the psychological justification of any of their ideas or in jurisprudence; its interest is mainly limited to their relevance to the modern age.

1. According to the orthodx tradition, the *dharmaśāstras* are based on the Vedas. The former are called *śrutis*, those which are heard, and the latter *smṛtis*, those which are remembered. Manu says that whatever he teaches about *dharma* (right action) was first told by the Vedas.[3] But a little later he says that, if there is conflict between *śruti* and *smṛti*, the former is to be followed but not the latter,[4]—which shows that Manu himself was not sure that the *smrtis* were always right.

2. The *smṛtis* are therefore meant to present the laws of conduct, which are not given in a codified form in the *śruti*. The *śruti* therefore could not be a ready

[2] *History of Dharmasāstra*, 5 Vols. (Bhandarkar Oriental Research Institute, Poona).

[3] *Manusmṛti*, II, 7. (Nirnayasagar Press, Bombay, 1946).

[4] II, 13.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

guide to conduct. This was the original reason for the composition of the *smṛtis*. For this reason the *smṛtis* are called subsidiaries to the Vedas (*śrutis*).

3. Before the *dharmaśāstras* came into existence, it is believed, there were *dharmaśūtras*, some of which are now available. Here we are entering a controversial field. Max Müller and Bühler seem to think that the Hindu law originated in the *dharmasūtras* of the Vedic *caraṇas* or schools. Kane says that the *dharmasūtras* of Apastambha, Baudhayana and Gautama belong to the period between 600 and 300 B. C., and that Gautama speaks of *dharmaśāstras*.[5] But none of those *dharmaśāstras* is now available. It is also possible that the writers of the time were using the words *dharmasūtra* and *dharmaśāstra* indifferentlly for the same work, for both were meant to serve the same purpose. Jayaswal thinks that the source of Hindu law is Kauṭilya's *Arthaśāstra*,[6] that *Manu's Code* was written in order to assert the supremacy of the Brahmins when the Brahmin empire was destroyed by the Mauryas, and that *Yājñavalkya's Code* was written during the time of the Satavahana empire which combined orthodoxy with Buddhism and made woman equal to man under Buddhist influence.[7] But Kane points out that *Arthaśāstra* is really a part of *Dharmaśāstra*, that, according to Yājñavalkya, wherever there is conflict between *Dharmaśāstra* and *Arthaśāstra*, the former should prevail,[8] and that Kautilya was earlier than the extant *Manusmṛti*, though not earlier than its kernel.[9]

It is the historians and orientalists who can pronounce judgment on these differences of opinion. In the present

---

[5] *History of the Dharmaśāstra*, Vol. I, p. 8.

[6] *Manu and Yājñavalkya*, p. 2. (Butterworth and Co., Calcutta, 1930).

[7] *Manu and Yājñavalkya*, p. xxi.

[8] *History of Dharmaśāstra*, Vol. I, p. 87.

[9] *Ibid.*, p. 99.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

paper the attempt to fix the stages of growth and their dates cannot be made. But it seems to the present writer that it is the general feature of the development of Indian philosophical literature that at first there were scattered and uncoordinated expressions of experiences, then a coordination of them in the form of *sūtras*, and then elaborations and expositions of the *sūtras* in the form of commentaries, summaries and other presentations. Neither are *sūtras* always aphorisms or pithy utterances as usually defined, but also complete sentences and discussions as in some Buddhist *sūtras*. So to think that originally there was *sūtra* literature on *dharma* (right conduct), the ideas of which were later expounded in the extant *dharmasāstras* is in accordance with the general nature of the development of India's philosophical literature. That some of the authors of *sūtras* refer to *sāstras* before them may or may not mean that, prior to the *sūtra* literature and as distinct from it, there existed another literature called *śāstra* literature. *Arthaśāstra* can be treated as part of *dharmasāstra*, because the latter deals with what the kings have and ought to do for obtaining wealth and increasing their power.

However, according to Dr. P. V. Kane, there was some *dharmaśāstra* literature prior to the period of 600-300 B.C., to which the authors of *Dharmasūtras* like Gautama, Baudhayana and Apasthambha belonged.[10] The *Śrauta-sūtras* and *Grhyasūtras* belonged to a period even earlier than 600 B.C. The *sutras* make frequent references to the Vedas. Kautilya, the author of *Arthaśāstra* is identified with Canukya, the minister of Chandragupta Maurya, and destroyer of the Nanda Dynasty, and is generally assigned to the period between 300 B.C. and 100 A.D. The present *Manusmṛiti* is assigned to sometime between 200 B. C. and

[10] *Ibid*, p. 9.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

200 A. D., *Yājñavalkyasmṛti* to 100 A. D. to 300 A.D., and *Parāśarasmṛti's* date is left undecided, as the extant one seems to be re-written and the original one lost. Yājñavalkya and even Kautilya mention Parasara. In any case, the *dharmaśāstra* literature seems to have obtained particular importance after *Manu*. It may be also true that different sects like Manavas etc., were holding particular views about conduct and that the extant *dharmaśāstras* brought them together and coordinated them. Such work was found necessary because of the prevalence of a large number of views which were sometimes conflicting. We may, therefore, say that one main purpose of the development of this literature was to present the different forms of right conduct as given in the Vedas in as consistent and exact a form as possible in the circumstances.

4. But the circumstances did not always remain the same. Buddhism and Jainism, which weakened the distinction between caste and caste and sex and sex, was born in 600 B.C., and began to reinterpret and attack orthodoxy. There were conversions and reconversions. And some disorder entered society. Then rules and laws had to be fixed, and unrestricted freedom had to be restricted. That the authors of the *dharmaśāstras* were aware of, and alive to the new conditions is shown not only by the changing views on the function of castes and status of women, but also for their concern for reconverting those who were forcibly converted by the *melecchas* and for purifying the women who were raped by them.[11] The author who devoted much thought to this question was Devala, who is supposed to be an inhabitant of Sindh. He is said to have taught on the banks of the Indus and perhaps knew the first Muslim invasion by Mohammad Kasim in the eighth century. Thus *dharmaśāstras* were written again and again

[11] P. V. Kane : *History of Dharmaśāstra*, Vol. II, p. 399; Vol. IV, p. 117.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

not only to make the Vedic ideas of right conduct consistent and exact but also to make new rules and laws which changing conditions required in the interests of social stability and strength.

5. We may now give the social conditions and outlook in which the *dharmasūtras* and *dharmaśāstras* originated.

(a) The social conditions of the time were as complex for those people as the conditions of our time are for us. By the early *sūtra* period we find that the castes were more or less formed. The distinction and separation were not yet as rigid as later. Besides the castes, there were the untouchables and the *mlecchas*. There were tribes pouring into India from outside, both Aryan and non-Aryan by blood. And they were mixing up with the settled society at various levels. Some of them were accepting the orthodox religion and cult, but the others were not. So orthodoxy could not be decided by blood or race alone. Again, every tribe was bringing with it its own social and religious forms; and when the tribe was incorporated into the settled society, its social and religious forms also were to be incorporated, while at the same time the supremacy of the orthoxy was to be asserted.[12] Those who were called Sudras and *mlecchas* were not necessarily non-Aryan by blood. Orthodoxy had its own definition of the word Aryan; the Aryan was one who accepted the Arya Dharma or the Aryan Way of Life, and it was the Way pres-

[12] See the author's *India's Culture and Her Problems*. For a detailed account see P. V. Kane: *History of Dharmaśāstra*, Vol. II, Part I, Chs. II, III and IV.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

cribed by the first two parts of the Veda, namely, the *Saṁhitās* and the *Brāhmaṇas*, or by the Vedas in general. But this conception was later contested by the Buddhists and the Jainas, who maintained that theirs was the true Aryan Way.

The formation of the Indian society may briefly be delienated. It seems to the present writer that by the time the Aryans entered India, the Dravidians were the rulers of the land. They were experts in trade and commerce and fortification of cities. They subjugated the pre-Dravidian inhabitants. Some are of the opinion that the caste system originally belonged to the Dravidians, for nowhere else in the Aryan countries is the caste system to be found. It is difficult to be exact on this point. However, when the Aryans, who had more effective mehods of offensive in warfare, conquered the Dravidians, they found the caste system very useful for establishing their own superiority and at the same time peace in the country. They retained priestcraft and warcraft completely for themselves, thus retaining religious and political superiority in their own hands; they retained part of trade and commerce also for themselves and allowed part of it to be carried by the Dravidians, who were already experts in it. This seems to have enabled some of the Dravidians to enter the third caste. The fourth caste was comprised of the agriculturists, whether they owned the land completely or not, and of the slaves, labourers etc. Those who were too uncivilized and did not have a settled life were out-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

side the four-fold caste system of society; and when some of them wished to settle down, they were allotted some of the lowest professions and were treated as the fifth caste.

But the actual formation of the Indian caste system could not have been as simple as presented. First, some of the new tribes, though Aryan by blood, would not accept the social and religious forms so far established. Those who accepted them were absorbed, but those who did not were called non-Aryan. Secondly, all the tribes which entered later were not Aryans, some of them were Hunas etc., who had Mongolian blood. Ways had to be found for absorbing them also, if they agreed. Thirdly, both Aryans and non-Aryans who chose to remain outside the orthodox society had inter-marriages and other relationships with it. Ways had to be found for recognizing them and legalising them. Fourthly, every tribe which had been inhabiting India or came from outside later had its own social traditions and religious cults. And it entered generally one of the four recognized castes. Hence, sub-castes had to be formed and different professions had to be assigned to each. In addition, professions had to be found for people born of mixed castes. In the fifth place, all the tribes had to be allowed to follow their own social traditions and forms of worship, so that they would peacefully settle down without bloodshed. For instance, each sub-caste was allowed to follow its own forms of marriage and worship its own gods and goddesses. The Brāhmaṇa usually officiated at such functions

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

which meant an indirect recognition of the superiority of the orthodoxy. But sometimes this was not even required. In the sixth place however much the authors of the *dharmaśāstras* tried to prevent the castes from following each other's professions, the profession of ruling and fighting was taken up by every caste, and they would inter-marry. Wealth and power seem to have broken the caste barriers often, which was justified in the name of profession.

(b) The outlook of the *dharmaśāstras* is generally that of the Mīmāṁsā or in other words of the *Saṁhitās* and the *Brāhmaṇas*, the first two parts of the Veda recognized as authoritative by the Mīmāṁsā. Jaimini in his *Mīmāṁsāsūtras* expounded their philosophy. The Mīmāṁsā is an exposition of Dharma (duty, right action, conduct). But the right action which the Mīmāṁsā wishes to explain is confined only to sacrifies to gods, and is not so much concerned with worldly professions and laws. Hence the need for later *dharmaśāstras* and *dharmasūtras*. Kane says that Apastambha's *Dharmaśātras* contains many of the technical terms and doctrines of the Mīmāṁsā.[13] And there are many cross references between the commentaries of the *Mimāṁsāsūtras* and *dharmaśāstras*. This is natural, as both aim at expounding *dharma*. The Mīmāṁsā is the main *karmayogaśāstra*, and all the *dharmaśāstras* are meant to expound Karmayoga in all its detail for all the castes. Manu, though

[13] *History of Dharmaśāstra*, Vol. I. p. 41.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

extolling knowledge or *ātmajnāna*,[14] calls his exposition Karmayoga.[15] We have therefore to say that not only do the *dharmaśāstras* make use of the Mīmāṁsā methods of interpretation, but also are they meant to be continuations and expansions of the study of right conduct. This is the view of Kumārila also, which it is important to note. The importance of this view is missed if the *dharmaśāstras* are taken to be only texts of jurisprudence and codification of legal laws.

This expansion was necessitated by the fact that the Mīmāṁsā was not concerned with many of forms of conduct like the political and economic and that new rules and laws were required by the changing conditions. That is why the authors of the *dharmaśāstras* accept not only the Vedas but also *smṛtis*, the conduct of moral leaders, and one's own satisfaction as the valid sources of *dharma*[16]. A little earlier Manu includes another, namely the character also of those learned in the Vedas as a source of *dharma*.[17] He says that he gave the *dharmas* of the different countries (*deśadharmas*), of the castes, of the sub-castes, and of even the *pāṣaṇḍas*[18] (those who were outside the Vedic fold).

Thus the authors of the *dharmaśāstras* had to collect the various rules and laws of right action not only from the Vedas, but also from the extant *dharmaśūtras* and *dharmaśāstras*,

---

[14] XII, 85. [15] II, 2.
[16] *Manu*, II, 12. [17] *Ibid*,, II, 6. [18] *Ibid.*, I, 118.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the forms of conduct prescribed for the castes, the customs and traditions of the many tribes which constituted the sub-castes, and also of those tribes which did not accept the Vedic way of life and were called *mlecchas* and *pāṣaṇḍas*, and which lived in the outskirts of the Aryan kingdoms and sometimes within them. The study of *dharma* made by the Mīmāṁsā could not have included so much as the *smṛtis*.

The Mīmāṁsā was mainly interested in the *dharma* that produced other-worldly effects. For it, human society was only a part of a wider society, the cosmos. The cosmic forces were at first conceived as animated and living, and later the distinction was drawn between the presiding deities (*adhidevatās*) and their material bodies. Thus the physical wind was controlled by the wind-spirit within. Besides these spirits, there were those of the ancestors. Thus, man was a member of a huge system of cosmic society and its worlds, and human society was only a small section. The Mīmāṁsā was interested in man's duties in this wider society in order to make his life comfortable and happy, and man could have such life only in and through action. Kumārila says that the Mīmāṁsā is not interested in secular matters like agriculture,[19] though it is interested in right action, *karma*. But the *dharmaśāstras* had to take interest in secular activities and expand the scope of *dharma*, without losing sight of its other-worldly reference and reference to the wider society. They

[19] *History of Dharmaśāstra*, Vol. III, p. 838.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

do not indeed contain treatment of agriculture, but the relation of agriculturists to other professions. The emphasis of the *dharmaśāstras* is on *karma* (action), not on non-action, and here they follow the first two parts of the Veda and the Mīmāṁsā. The outlook of all the three, the *dharmaśāstras*, the Mīmāṁsā, and the first two parts of the Veda is one and the same. But as the first had to enter more and more into the ways of life of all the sections of human society, they had to deal more and more with secular laws and became works on jurisprudence.

6. The orthodox society with the four castes was called the Aryan fold by the writers, though the fold did not include the Aryans only by race. Those outside the fold were called non-Aryans. Even the members of the fold had different customs in different localities. The authors of the codes had to observe and legalise them for purposes of law. Similarly, they had to legalise the practices of those outside the fold. For instance, it was the practice of the *mlecchas* to sell their children; but the members of the Aryan fold were not allowed to do it. So Kauṭilya did not prescribe any punishment to the *mlecchas*, if they sold their children.[20] Instances like this show that the authors of the codes observed the customs of the tribes and castes at different places, related them to the Mīmāṁsā ideal of Dharma, and then codified them.

Then the difficulty arose about conflicts between the Vedas and the customs. It is said that the four sources of Dharma are the Vedas, *smṛtis*, customs, and one's own desires. It is also said that each preceding source is more authoritative than the succeeding one. The latter is to be

[20] *Ibid.*, Vol. II, Part I, pp. 183 and 508.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

followed only when guidance is not obtained from the former. This means an admission that the Vedas did not cover all the cases covered by the *smṛtis*, that the *smṛtis* did not include all customs and traditions, and that even customs and traditions left out cases in which the individual could have his choice according to his pleasure. But whenever there was conflict between the higher and the lower, the higher alone was to prevail.

But this dictum was not accepted universally. The reason is simple. Dharma is both this-worldly and other-worldly. Some acts which are right other-worldly are not right this-worldly and *vice-versa*. The *smṛtis* are concerned with both kinds of *dharma*, but the Veda is concerned only with the other-worldly *dharma*, which comprises the laws according to which the deities and spirits of all the worlds influence the happenings of this world and the lives of men both here and here-after. Śabara says that, when there is conflict between the *smṛti* and the Veda, as the former is concerned with worldly purposes, it cannot prevail over the latter.[21] But Kumārila sees the conflict in a different light. He seems to be in favour of the view that both are always right, and reconciliation must be made between the two by referring them to two different purposes or subject matters[22]. All *smrtis* are authoritative when we consider the purpose they serve.[23] The portions dealing with *mokṣa* and *dharma* (here Kumārila seems to be referring only to the other-worldly *dharma*) have their origin in the Veda and so do not conflict with it; but the portions dealing with wealth and pleasures (*artha* and *kāma*) have their source in worldly practices. Then also there can be no conflict, as the Vedas are not concerned with worldly practices. But this solution ignores the relation between the four values of

[21] *History of Dharmaśāstra*, Vol. III, p. 836.
[22] *Ibid*, p. 834.
[23] *Ibid.*, p. 839.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

life, while Śabara's solution ignores the latter two values by completely subordinating them to the first two which are accepted solely on the basis of the scripture.

Again, in the case of a conflict between *smṛtis* and customs, many hold that the former should prevail. But some, like Viśvarūpa and Medhātithi, think differently, the latter even maintaining that custom also is *smṛti* as it is one of the sources of right conduct. In fact, the *smṛti* is itself a codification of several practices including the extant customs and traditions. Then customs and traditions are really part of *smṛti*. So far there can be no conflict between a part and the whole. But there may be customs not observed by the authors of *smṛtis*, or introduced by new tribes entering the country, or changed in different parts of the country in order to suit the new conditions of time and place. Then there will be conflict between the codified laws and the new customs. These differences of view apply to such situations, and some of the authors showed liberality. However, on the whole the gradation of the authoritativeness is accepted.

7. Another important point we have to note about the *dharmaṛāstras* is the recognition by the writers that, in interpreting, applying and following the four guides of *dharma*, namely, the Vedas, *smṛtis*, custom and satisfaction, both head and heart are to be used. Manu gives the general characteristic of *dharma* as that which is followed by good and learned men, who are devoid of attachment and hatred, and who understand it through their heart.[24] The word "heart" is explained by the commentators as "direct" (*sākṣāt*). But Manu might have meant more. The word should have meant sympathetic. The interpreter has to observe the customs of groups and tribes, not merely to reject them if they are not similar to his own, but to under-

[24] II, 1.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

stand sympathetically why and how they are being followed, what human and social purpose they have been serving.

Again, the interpreter has to use his head also. Bṛhaspati says that "the decision (in a cause) should not be given merely relying on *śāstras*, for in the case of a decision devoid of reasoning loss of dharma results."[25] The roots of a human and rational approach are found in the *dharmaśāstras*, and their general principle is accepted, though within the limits prescribed by the conceptions of the time. But the general tendency was to follow the texts in all important cases, as it is done in many of the courts now.

VI

Points for Revaluation

1. We have seen that the *dharmaśāstras* were the codifications of the extant customs and practices. This codification was done first, to bring together in a connected form all the ideas about conduct scattered throughout the Vedas, secondly to coordinate the views of all the interpreters of the Vedas, in the third place to legalise all the customs and practices of all the tribes and localities of both the Aryan and non-Aryan folds, in the fourth place to prevent transgressions and settle down people in their traditions, and in the fifth place to enact new laws suitable to changing and unforeseen conditions like rape and forcible conversion.

Now, apart from the injunctions of the Vedas, which cannot change, there is change faster than ever before in the customs and practices of castes and sub-castes and people outside the castes. We are finding many traditional customs and laws to be outdated, and we are introducing and importing new ones. The general tendency now is not to fix any group to any of its customs, though they are respected if the group likes to follow them. Again, the standpoint

[25] Quoted in *History of Dharmaśāstra*, Vol. III, p. 867.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of our approach to the appreciation of customs has been at least modified. For instance, attempts are made to dissuade some hill tribes from continuing their custom of marriage by capture, polyandry, polygyny and so forth. And our reason is not that they will be prevented from entering heaven but that of equality of sexes and so forth, which is humanistic; and we have other human, humanistic and sociological considerations.[26] We want that both head and heart should be used on a far wider scale than the traditionalists allow. The tendency is to give greater importance to this-worldly *dharma* then before.

2. This brings us to the second point, which is more philosophical than the first. The *dharmasāstras* call themselves *karmayogas* and say that every man will attain *mokṣa* if he performs his duties according to castes and *āsramas*. By the time of the Codes the ideas of God and *mokṣa* were already accepted by the Mīmāṁsā, which therefore said that *mokṣa* was attainable through *karma* (action). It first distinguished between two kinds of *karma*, sacrifices and other forms. Sacrifices do not produce bondage (*bandha*), but others do. Another distinction also was developed, namely, that of actions for visible fruit and actions for invisible fruit; and the Vedas were regarded as enjoining action with invisible fruit. Again, a third distinction, namely, between *karma* satisfying desires (*sakāma*) and *karmas* performed as duties without the idea of satisfying desires (*niṣkāma*), was also made, which was elaborated in the *Bhagavadgitā*. The former produce bondage and the latter liberation. Here come our philosophical difficulties.

(a) Can and does man perform any acion without any desire and purpose? Can any action be well-

[26] McDougall writes: "——it has been observed that the abolition of polygamy, in communities in which females are more numerous than males, has led to gross irregularities in the sexual relations as to diminish greatly the rate of reproduction", and criticises the "well-meant efforts of missionaries." *Social Psychology*, p. 233.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

done without concern for the result? If it is said that actions are to be performed without any attachment and with perfect detachment, will they be done with all the care and deliberation necessary for them or will they be perfunctorily done? How can we prescribe the *karmayoga* as *niṣkāmakarma* to the general run of mankind and make it its philosophy of life and guide? Psychologists tell us that behaviour is purposive. If so, does *karmayoga* teach us unporposive action?

(b) Again, as regards the distinction between the visible fruit and the invisible, we are not as certain of the latter as we are of the former. Many of us like to reverse this Mīmāṁsā criterion and say that, when there is conflict between the two, texts advocating visible fruit must prevail. For our contention is: If both are true, then there should be no conflict between two truths; and when we are convinced of the truth of the visible, it is the invisible that should conform to it and not contradict it; if there is contradiction, we doubt the truth of the invisible. This is in line with our demand that religion should not conflict with science; and even if it does not confirm science, it should be compatible and not incompatible with it, if it is to be accepted.

This attitude of ours is due to the growing feeling that every statement of the scriptures cannot be equally true, and that every statement is not God-given and eternally true. This problem was easier for the ancient writers who accepted the scriptures as an absolute authority, and whenever they found it diffi-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

cult to accept a statement at its face-value they wrestled with it grammatically and by introducing interpretative rules in order to extract new meaning. But there is a limit beyond which the passages cannot be stretched and historical scholarship is averse to artificial methods of interpretation. The modern view of the scriptures is that they are the expressions of experiences of historical individuals and seers, but not that the words of scriptures existed eternally in order to convey eternal truths.

(c) Our third difficulty on this point is about understanding how *karma* leads to a state beyond *karma*. Action presupposes the agent of action, man, ego, and also the result of action. *Mokṣa* is complete egolessness, according to all the Vedāntins. If the nature of liberation is pure egohood as the Mīmāṁsā thought, then it cannot be *mokṣa* for the Vedantins. But even according to the Mīmāṁsā, it is difficult to understand how purpose, desire etc,. can cease, if the ego even as pure continues for ever.

(d) Our fourth difficulty also is philosophical. We are no longer prepared to accept the spirits (*adhidevatās*) of the natural forces. And so we find it difficult to treat as true the conception of cosmic society, in which the spirits of the natural forces, the spirits of ancestors and the spirits of men live as members with mutual obligations and cutting across the different worlds. We have been taught to understand the activities of the natural forces as unpurposive; only activities of living beings are purposive; and of the living beings,

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

only man has duties and obligations. He has duties and obligations primarily to other living beings who have duties and obligations like him and secondarily to other living beings who have instinctive qualities having ethical significance like love, gratitude and faithfulness. He has no obligations to the material world of natural forces, which he can learn to control and utilize as it suits him. Thus human society acquires primary significance, and next the society of all living beings. But as the wolf and the jackal, for instance, can never be taught duties and obligations to man, man has no duties and obligations to them. They are outlaws from his ethical society. Destroying them or preserving them depends on other considerations. He has duties only towards those animals which have corresponding duties to him, whether they perform them by instinct or by a spark of reason. Thus when natural forces are known to be unpurposive in their activities, the duties of sacrifice to them lose all their significance.

(e) In the fifth place, we have to note that, according to the Mīmāṁsā, "that one should attain the knowledge of the Brahman" is not a *vidhi* or *codanā* like the other *codanās*, or in other words, *ātmajñāna* is not a *dharma*.[27] The Vedāntins hold different views about the nature of this injunction.[28] And on the whole they treat in as a special sort of injunction. But from the Mīmāṁsā

[27] *ātmajñānasya——na tatra dharmatvam* is the opinion of the *Bhāṭṭacintāmaṇi* of Gaṅgādhara Gāgā? Bhaṭṭa referred to by *Mīmāṁsākoṣa*, Vol. I, p. 896.

[28] *Siddhāntaleśasaṅgoraha*, p. 6. (Chowkhamba Sanskrit Series, Banares, 1916).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

point of view, the injunction, "the Ātman has to be realised", is not a *vidhi* to act, to perform some action (karma), but to suspend action. Without reference to *karma*, there can be no *vidhi*. Hence the conflict with the Mīmāṁsā idea that anything can be attained only through action. Here the conflict between the Mīmāṁsā and Vedānta is fundamental. This conflict also has to be resolved by the moderns. For if the injunctions of the Mīmāṁsā and the *dharmāśāstras* are ethically binding, one who violates them is to be called unethical,—even one who does not perform sacrifices is to be called unethical with reference to the comic society; but one who obeys these injunctions but refuses to have *mokṣa* cannot be called unethical. We may admit that he may be called unspiritual, and that the injunction, "the Ātman has to be realised", is meant to make man spiritual. But the difficulty lies elsewhere; the whole ethics is geared to *mokṣa* and is justified in the name of *mokṣa* by the Vedantins and the *dharmaśāstras* under the influence of the Vedānta. Then why should one who does not believe in *mokṣa* or does not care for it regard the injunctions as ethical, if they are all geared to *mokṣa*? Will he be not justified in founding his ethics on something else? Even taking the word *mokṣa* in the wide sense of religion, so far as the general run of mankind goes, psychological tests have shown that religious faith is no guarantee of moral behaviour. H. E. Barnes says that studies carried out in New York show that orthodox religious training

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

did not promote honesty and reliability. "To the contrary, children who have been exposed to progressive educational methods, based upon secular premises and psychology, appeared to have a far better record as to honesty and dependability."[29] The complaint against religious ethics is that it "was designed to please the gods rather than serve man directly and efficiently".[30]

(f) In the sixth place, the ethical codes recognize three debts, debt to gods to be paid back by performing sacrifices, debt to ancestors to be paid back by having a son, and debt sages to be paid back by propagating their learning. Our generation has grown sceptical about the first debt. Regarding the second debt, people now want to have children, but for more practical and secular considerations. The propagation of learning has become now as much society's responsibility as it is the individual's. The father does not train his son in the same profession as his. Every educated man is not a teacher, and the way he teaches his children is rather indirect. All this is due to the gradual changes in our social institutions.

3. Another philosophical point of interest is the traditional conception and classification of values into *artha* (wealth), *kāma* (desires, pleasures), *dharma* (duty), and *mokṣa* (salvation, redemption). As these are values, they are also "oughts", in some sense, not necessarily in the sense of moral duty. Wealth has to be acquired; but it

[29] *Social Institutions*, p. 713. (Prentice-Hall Inc. New York, 1947).
[30] *Ibid.*, p. 669.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

is meant for use in the enjoyment of pleasures and satisfaction of desires. "Wealth for wealth's sake" can be the motto of only the miser. But desires should not be indulged in disorderly, but according to prescribed rules of *dharma* or duty. There is an urge to enjoy pleasures as well as a duty to enjoy them. When urge and duty coincide, *dharma* is satisfied. But "duty for duty's sake" is not the ultimate criterion; duty is for *mokṣa*, by attaining which man transcends the sphere of duty. Thus each preceding value is a means for the succeeding one, and *mokṣa* is not a means to any.

Artha covers economic and political values. *Kāma* covers the psycho-physical values of the individual. *Dharma* covers partly religious and partly social, political and economic values. For instance, *artha* has to be acquired, but it has to be acquired only according to the rules of *dharma*. Similarly, *kāma* has to be satisfied, but it has to be satisfied only according to the rules of *dharma* again. Thus *dharma* has reference to both *artha* and *kāma* on the one side and *mokṣa* on the other. For all the three *karma* or action is necessary. There are no definite laws of *mokṣa*, because it is beyond description. The only kind of activity prescribed for attaining *mokṣa* is *niṣkāmakarma* or action without the appropriation of any of the three sets of values. But as mentioned earlier, this requires examination and explanation.

4. The next point for re-examination and evaluation is the sociological one, namely, the caste system. The modern age is not prepared to justify the continuation of this system. It is not prepared to accept that the son should take to the profession of the father, that the castes were created by God, that each caste has a particular nature (*guṇa*) and will have it eternally, that every caste should be confined to the profession assigned to it and should not take to any other profession, and that there

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

should be no inter-mixing of castes. It is also not prepared to accept that the difference between the sexes is as great as *dharmaśāstras* made it. It does not also beleive that the outcastes were created as outcastes by God. It is discarding many of the legal conceptions. We have therefore to determine which of the conceptions are still important for us and which harmful.

VII

Re-evaluation

1. Does a codification once made remain authoritative for ever ? The answer certainly is in the negative. The authors themselves of the *dharmaśāstras* were not unanimous on every point, and some of the later writers were obliged to introduce new laws to suit new conditions.

We attach more importance therefore to the spirit behind a traditional law than to its word. That is, we want to know the reason and understand in what form and with what modifications it can be applied to our present conditions. "Present conditions", so far as the laws go, mean the changing forms of social institutions, which determine the forms of social relationships including the political and the economic. Our conceptions of man, family and society have now changed or at least modified. So any set of codified laws which suited the social institutions of a particular time may not suit the social institutions of another.

In the past, the basis of laws was religious, though as a matter of fact the authors observed the social customs and traditional laws of people and gave them a religious sanction. But this made the customs not only inviolable but also unchangeable. But the modern authors approach the studies from the side of man as a member of society, and the viewpoints are sociological and humanistic. They do not all discredit religion, but demand that

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

religion should not be harmful to social and individual welfare. They say therefore that only as much of the traditionl codes as is useful for the welfare of man and society should be retained, and the rest modified or rejected. The codes certainly should be allowed to act as a conservative force, but should not be allowed to hinder progress. The *dharmasāstras*, as we have noted, are peculiar combinations of ethical, social, political and legal laws; and as our conceptions of ethics, society, politics and economics change there is necessity for constant re-codification of laws.

2. (a) It is difficult, in formulating and enacting laws, not to take into consideration the purpose and motive of actions. *Niṣkāmakarma* is meant, even according to the ancient writers, for *mokṣa*, not even for *dharma*. For *dharma* all is *kāmyakarma*, though in higher interpretations of *dharma*, *karma* becomes *niṣkāma*. But for the Codes, which constitute jurisprudence, there is no *niṣkāmakarma* except in the case of children and the insane. *Niṣkāmakarma* may be interpreted as "duty for duty's sake", without reference to the results of action. But when there is no desire for results, the carefulness and interest necessary for doing an act well will not be given to it, and the act becomes perfunctory. Society and social relationships are natural to man; they grow out of his nature and serve his needs. So to ask him to act without reference to his needs is to ask him to do what is not natural to him. Visible fruits therefore are to be taken seriously into consideration so

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

far as the laws of the *dharmaśāstras* are concerned, even if we believe in invisible fruit. All visible fruits are connected, directly or indirectly, with man's desires and needs.

(b) So far as the codes go, the present age is not prepared to give primary importance to invisible fruit like *apūrva* in enacting our laws. Social and individual welfare is a visible fruit. There may be invisible fruits; but if they are true, they should not conflict, but be compatible with visible fruit.

(c) The relation therefore between *kāmyakarma*, *niṣkāmakarma* and *mokṣa* becomes more difficult to understand for us than for the ancients. *Karma* not backed by desire will be performed perfunctorily, whereas that backed by desire prevents salvation and strengthens bondage. This difficulty can be overcome only if ethically done *karma*, though backed by desire, has a way of leading to *mokṣa*. This is possible, so far as the present writer's understanding of the problem goes, only if *niṣkāmakarma* is interpreted as *karma* done from the universal point of view, that is, the point of view of reason or, as the ancient Greeks called it, the *Logos*. Such action can liquify the knot of egoity and identify the ego with the Universal Spirit or the Brhaman. In order to achieve this, the ego has not only to identify its consciousness with the consciousness of the Universal Spirit,

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

but also its own purposes with the purposes of the Cosmos, society and humanity. What is then attempted will be the raising of the ego from particularity to universality, which is tantamount to the negation of one's egoity[31] through action and realising the universality involved in it with all its objectivity. The transformation then will be a psychological and spiritual transformation of the inwardness of man. Action is the test of the objectivity and authenticity of the realized universality and of the sincerity of ego in its attempts to raise itself to universality. This interpretation not only accords with the essential teachings of the *karma-yoga* but also makes it understandable to the modern man. It is not possible to discuss this philosophical point further in the present paper, as the discussion will lead deep into many other intimately connected problems.

(d) The problem of cosmic society need not detain us long. We no longer believe in it, as we are not prepared to believe that the natural forces of inorganic matter are presided over by spirits (*adhidevatās*).

(e) So far as ethical duties are understood, "the exhortation that the Ātman has to be realized cannot be treated as an ethical injuction. To the man who wants *mokṣa*,

[31] The present author has so far made two attempts to explain the situation. See his "Indian Philosophy : Its Attitude to the World." (*The Vedānta Kesari*, Madras, Nov. and Dec. 1944) and "Activistic Tendency in Indian Thought" (*Ibid.*, Oct. 1955).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

it may be said to be necessary; but to the man who does not want it or does not believe in it, but is satisfied with performing his duties to human and other living beings, it cannot be an ethical injunction. And he cannot be called unethical and his actions cannot be called unlawful, if he disobeys it. He can avoid *moṣka*, but he cannot avoid being a social animal with interests in his own and society's welfare, and so cannot avoid being an ethical animal.

There is a sociological side to religion. In the history of religion throughout the world, it has often affected and influenced social and political events, though in its essence it has often been regarded by philosophers as man's individual relation with the Universal Spirit. When man follows this definition strictly, his ties with society become weak. That is why religion in its psychological and spiritual aspects is often called individualistic. But when it has entered social forms and become institutionalised, it has become unprogressive and conservative, and has even degenerated itself and degenerated society. In such situations the revolt of man against religion becomes sociological and humanistic: the emphasis is laid on ethical and humanistic values. This is a peculiar feature of ethical laws which are obligatory on every man, while spiritual laws are not binding. Religion is man's own concern; but it is society's and

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

even humanity's concern that he is ethical.

(f) About the three debts, we accept in practice that it is the duty of every man to be a useful member of society and to contribute to its future continuity by having children; and instead of regarding the duty as enabling the spirits of our ancestors in heaven to continue in the blessed life, we regard it as a contribution to society. Similarly, in order to be a useful member of society and contribute to its progress, it is the duty of every person to educate himself, and to educate his children so long as they are not able to educate themselves. In this way, we accept two of the debts, though interpreting and justifying them in our own way. The conception thus interpreted agrees with the sociological and humanistic approaches also. Regarding the third debt, the debt to gods, it is difficult to justify it in this scientific age. This change in our attitude is due to our conception of society as limited to man and other living beings and our disbelief in the spirits of natural forces.

We are not confident about the validity of our laws if they are based on conceptions rooted in a religion that peoples the material world with spirits. We approach our study of human relationships from the side of sociology, psychology, biology etc. The present writer does not want to be understood as rejecting

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the usefulness of religion for ethics. Something will be said on the topic at the end. But we have to demand that our laws should not come into conflict with our studies in these sciences. If there is conflict either must be false. But as religion is based entirely on scripture, if we are asked to accept every statement it makes, our own alternative is to ignore it, as we have now no way of knowing its validity.

3. The classification of values into *artha*, *kāma*, *dharms* and *mokṣa* is also a gradation. It has importance and value even for the modern man. The first three concern every man, whether he believes in *mokṣa* or not. If he does not believe in *mokṣa*, then *dharma* has to be reinterpreted for him. He will not accept it as the action enjoined by the Veda, but as the action required by human and social needs and welfare. He will not accept also that the ethical codes should be based on scripture. However, we have to accept the inter-relationship between the first three values.

The problem of the relation between *dharma* and *mokṣa* is very complicated, and will be presented last.

4. Caste distinctions will no longer be accepted. And no one will be treated as an outcaste. Opinion against such distinctions is now too strong for them to continue for ever, though similar distinctions are still existent outside India in the name of colour. Throughout the world including India, a new system called class system is becoming strong. Even communist countries, the aim of which is to build a classless society, are not without a class system now. In the communist and capitalist countries, the classes are of different kinds, because power and wealth are obtained in different ways in the two systems. One

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

rather feels that the Indian caste system, which places the Brahmin with the ideals of poverty, learning and knowledge, and advice at the top of the social ladder is morally superior to the class system, which places the man with wealth and power at the top. The degeneration of the Brāhmiṇa caste, which is poor and powerless, cannot be so harmful to society as the degeneration of the wealthy and powerful class.,

But there is another point that is worth considering. The caste system was not the result of a theory hatched by some leading Aryan, but the result of spontaneous growth, for which justification was improvised by the *dharmaśāstras*. The great advantage of the system at the time of its formation was that it allowed all castes and sub-castes, which were generally different tribes, to co-exist in a comprehensive pattern of society, each following its own social forms like marriage and its own religious forms and gods and goddesses, and contributing professionally its best to the society as a whole. Thus caste-system was an embodiment of the principle of co-existence of tribes, cultures, sets of social forms, religions, all of which the Aryan thinkers re-interpreted as forms and sub-forms of one spiritual life, and made them suit the conditions of the time. Instead of thinking that there was only one way of right living, which was theirs, and destroying all others, which was done in the history of other religions, the Aryan-leaders of India allowed all cultures, except the too barbarous and cruel, to co-exist, giving each a place within the general pattern which they called the Aryan culture. The modern age can draw some inspiration from the ancients so far as the co-existence of religions and cultures go. Of course, one should not blindly accept everything of the past.

The criticism of caste system is that it prevented the groups from changing their professions and social and

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

religious forms. The principle which has to be evolved by modern thinkers for co-existence of differences should avoid this mistake of preventing all change and therefore progress of any culture or religion. This is as important as to allow each to continue in its own way.

VIII

Ethics and Mokṣa

Following the *dharmasāstras*, the English word "ethics" is used in this paper in its wide sense covering all forms of prescribed conduct, including the religious and secular. The word *dharma* in the *dharmasāstras* covers all.

The question of the relation between *karmayoga* and *mokṣa* may be thought by some to lie outside the scope of this paper; then they may treat this section as an appendix. But this is a problem which the *dharmasāstras* left unsolved, except saying that this *yoga* also leads to *mokṣa*. For instance, the Yoga of Patanjali has a definite description and theory of the state of *mokṣa*, the nature of the world, and the relation between the two. On the basis of this description and theory, it tells us how *mokṣa* can be attained by following the methods prescribed. But the *dharmasāstras* have given nothing of the kind. The Mīmāṁsā, from which they drew their inspiration, was not at first concerned at all about *mokṣa*; but later it said that performance of actions according to Vedic injunctions and in a spirit of non-attachment will bring *mok:a*. But we are not given enough information about the processes that intervene between the performance of such actions and the state of *mokṣa*.

In this section only a few of the points that need consideration can be mentioned, as they are too many to permit the inclusion of all. And these points also will be mentioned in their relevance to the problem of the relation between ethics and *mokṣa*.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

1. *Mokṣa* is a spiritual ideal. It is to be inwardly realized, not outwardly. It is said to be the original perfect state of the Ātman, and that is the most inward being of man.

2. Ethics is concerned with *dharma*. It is not necessary to refer to all the meanings of the word *dharma* for our purpose. They are many. Here we are concerned with the meaning in which the word is used in the *dharmasāstras*, which are based on the Mīmāṁsā. For Jaimini, the author of the *Mīmāṁsāsūtras*, it is action according to the injunctions of the Veda. The *dharmasāstras* added actions according to the injunctions of the *smṛtis*, well-established customs and one's own satisfactions. If we generalise, we may say that it is action according to some injunction, and in cases in which specific injunctions are not present, according to one's desires. In any case, it is action, which is concerned with reality outward to man.

3. Now, while *mokṣa* is concerned with the inwardness of man, *dharma* is concerned with his outwardness. Man's conscious being has two directions, inwardness and outwardness. *Mokṣa* is concerned with the former, and *dharma* with the latter. *Mok:a* is the realisation of complete inwardness, which is differently understood by the schools, and which the *dharmasāstras* do not explain at length. *Dharma* is the realisation of perfect outwardness as embodied in social relationships.

The problem for us is to understand how perfection in the realisation of outwardness can lead to perfection in the realisation of inwardness. The former is attained through action, and the latter through cessation of all action. Now, we are not concerned with the answers given by the Vedāntic schools, which do not give *karmayoga* a place equal to that of *jñānayoga* or *bhaktiyoga*. We want the answer from the *karmayogins* themselves, but we do not find one which is satisfactory and adequate. If it is

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

said that *karma* ceases to have effects after knowledge of the Ātman is attained, then it is tantamount to saying that *jñānayoga* is primary and *karmayoga* secondary. But this is not consistent with the Mīmāṁsa position. Moreover, the modern man wants to justify the necessity of ethical action for every one, and so has to take up the thread of the argument of the Mīmāmsā and develop it further.

The development requires that (1) the perfection of outwardness is identical with the perfection of inwardness, (2) both of them have objective validity and inwardness is not merely subjective, and (3) both of them have universal validity. The perfection of inwardness is not private to the individual, but is a state of existence common to all, and perfection of outwardness, which is the attainment of complete *dharma*, is identical with it and is also a state common to all. An additional requirement then follows, namely, (4) that the perfection of inwardness is best attained through action (*karma*), through which perfection of outwardness is attained.

4. From the standpoint of *mokṣa* then, ethics is to be an inwardising discipline. From the standpoint of sociology and humanism, ethics is a discipline meant for social and human welfare. Both society and the individual are objective facts, and the criteria of social and individual welfare are objectively available. But the criterion of true inwardness, which is not merely subjective and imaginary, is not so easily available. Man's own subjective and imaginary states may be mistaken for true inwardness.

For attaining inwardness, there should be no other way than to be ethical, and go through ethical activity. Here can be the necessity for ethics in true spiritual realisation. And here are two presuppositions : (1) ethics is an inwardising agency; (2) it alone confers objectivity on inwardness, and makes it true. In the words of modern existentialists, which are very apt here, the inwardness

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

attained through activity alone can be truly "authentic" or genuine, because it coincides with the objectivity involved in practical activity. There is only one way of testing the authenticity of man's true inwardness, and that is his activity. Otherwise, as he alone can know it, he may be mistaken. Others cannot enter his mind.

5. Thus only can the necessity of ethics for spirituality be established. But there is the necessity of religion for ethics also. Man is a reflective animal; and he reflects through and on his experience. He wants justification of ethical laws, proofs for their validity. We have seen that a stage is reached in the moral development of the individual when he is prepared to go, in the very name ethics and justice, againt established laws, and flout social approval and praise. Then what can be the criterion of his activity?

Established laws are violated either secretly or boldly and openly. Those who violate laws in a cowardly fashion are the small men, who accept the law but disobey it stealthily. The other kind are the outlaws and reformers. Openly and boldly they go against the law. That is why people treat them as heroes. But in the outlaw, transgression is motivated by his ego, activated by egoistic motives. He becomes an outlaw through personal considerations. But the reformer, religious, social or political, is activated by impersonal or universal considerations. Egoism is absent in the reformer, but present in the outlaw.

It is here that religion, understood as spirituality, is necessary for ethics. Religion demands the surrender of the ego, its negation through universalisation. This is what is wanted also in those men who are social, political and legal reformers. All of them should put the question to themselves, "Am I motivated in fighting for this reform by any selfish egoistic interest?" They should be able to get from their head and heart the answer "No".

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

It is not the success of their fight that is the criterion of their morality, but the negation of their ego behind their activity. Political reforms may be introduced for perpetuating a man or party in power; and social reforms may be introduced to legalise one's activity, which otherwise will be illegal and even immoral. All these acts are unethical. At the highest level of ethical perfection, self-surrender, negation or cancellation of the ego, is the only criterion. And again, this can be applied only by every man to himself alone. Application of this criterion is necessary whether the leader is an atheist or believes in the Universal Spirit. Here, at this juncture, one can appreciate the modern existentialist criterion that "sincerity to oneself" is the primary criterion of morality.

This way of approaching the problem should reconcile the Mīmāṁsā with the Vedānta. For the Mīmāṁsā, realisation of the Ātman is not even a *dharma*; it is not a *codanā* (injunction) to do *karma* (action), without which there can be no *dharma*. Its value is subsidiary, because one who performs *dharma* should know what he is, that he is the agent etc., of the *karma*. So this is taken for granted, just as the Vedānta takes for granted that one who attempts realisation of the Ātman is already ethically disciplined and has realised *dharma*, if not in this life, at least in the past. The basic difference between the two schools lies here : the Mīmāṁsā understands the Ātman not only as a plurality, but also as an active agent, and therefore as the ego; but the Vedānta understands the ego as different from the Ātman.[31] But if ethics at its highest stages requires man to transcend his ego's particularlity, annul it, and rise to the level of universality, we have to

[32] There are differences between the Vedāntins again, into which one cannot enter here. They can be discussed only in a book of considerable size.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

accept the distinction, and say that his cancellation of the ego is necessary for ethics in its highest stages.

Then religion is necessary for ethics, and ethics is an agency for true and objective inwardisation of man's conscious being. Then from the spiritual standpoint, all ethical actions, not only at the highest level, but also at lower levels, are graded attempts at universalising the ego and so at inwardising man's being.

6. At the highest level therefore a great deal of self-analysis and care are needed to test the authenticity of the universality of one's ethical consciousness and sincerity of one's motives. This may be called ethical psychoanalysis, performed not on others but on oneself. It is here that anxiety has ethical value. It is anxiety not only about one's motives, but also about the authenticity of the universality of one's consciousness. About authenticity, there may be another mistake, which also is a source of anxiety. So far as one's knowledge goes, its universality may be authentic; but because of man's finitude and ignorance, it may not be truly universal and not truly authentic. The leader may sincerily think that the law he is introducing will certainly promote social welfare, like the Christian missionaries to whom McDougall refers; but he might have miscalculated. But we cannot treat him as unethical for that reason. Gandhi admitted his "Himaliyan blunders", which are sincere miscalculations. At the highest level therefore authenticity, sincerity, and inner motives become more important than external consequences, because ethics is approaching spiritual inwardness more consciously.

7. Because of this inwardness and the negative criterion involved, religion cannot supply positive content to ethical laws. The source of ethical laws are social institutions, human relationships and nature. The positive content of laws is to be derived from their study.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

But for one who frames the laws and inter-relates them, and for one who applies them, the negative criterion also is necessary. There can be no syllogistic deduction of ethical laws from the nature of the Universal Spirit, which is acknowledged to be beyond all description by almost all religions. What is beyond description, beyond the reach of mind and speech, cannot constitute the major premise of any syllogism.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

DR. RADHAKRISHNAN AND IDEALISM.

By Dr. P. Nagaraja Rao

Among the contemporary interpreters and exemplars of India's eternal ancient cultural ideas and philosophic wisdom, harmonised with the best in modern thought, professor Radhakrishnan stands second only to Gandhiji and Tagore. He is the most renowned representative philosopher of India. He has in all some thirty volumes to his credit. They are partly interpretative and partly constructive. His two volumes on Indian Philosophy are the most authentic and liberal interpretation of the history of Indian Philosophical ideas and systems. We get a very concise account of his constructive thought in his Hibbert Lectures *An Idealist view of life*.

He is our best speaker today. Dr. Joad gives us a graphic account of the impression he made on the western audience as a speaker some twenty years ago in his book *Counter attack from the East, The Philosophy of Radhakrishnan*.[1] He is the most gifted of our Philosophical writers. In every speech and page we see the undiminished vigour of his thought, the arresting originality, and the amazing sweep and range of ideas. As an expositor he has the genius to explain clearly the most abstract and difficult problems in Philosophy and metaphysics in the most lucid manner. He has made "righteousness readable." The distinguishing characteristics of his dynamic Idealism are a deep spiritual note, a catholic outlook, a quick appreciation of the eternal values of all cultures and religion in the history of human thought and an abiding confident optimism as to the future

[1] *Counter attack from the East*, by Dr. C. E. M. Joad Published in 1933. George Allen and Unwin Indian edition 1952. Hind Kitabs Ltd. Bombay, Rs. 4-12-0. pp. 228.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of human civilisation. Radhakrishnan's idealism shows influences of Śaṅkara, Hegel, Plato and the doctrine of emergent evolution. In the construction and exposition of his system he has been alive to the criticisms of the philosophical concepts by modern physics and biology. His idealism in some aspects differs from Śaṅkara and other western parallel. It is upaniṣadic idealism in its comprehensiveness. He accepts the monistic and theistic stands of the upaniṣads and does not subordinate one to the other.[2]

The central philosophical category in his idealism is the primacy of the spirit, and its manifestation in Matter, life, mind and self. The Spirit is not a homogeneous, non-composite entity like the Brahman of Śaṅkara. It is not the substance of Hegal. It is dynamic energy not immobility. It is something real in itself and by itself "we know it, we cannot explain it. It is felt everywhere though seen nowhere. It is not the Physical body or the vital organism, the mind or the will, but something which underlies them and sustains them. It is the basis and background of our being, the universality that cannot be reduced to this or to that formula.[3]"

The spirit with its characteristics, 'creativity, order, change and progress, is present in all the levels of existence in an ascending series, each representing a higher level than its former. It is the presence of the Spirit that is responsible for the energence of Matter into life, life into consciousness and consciousness to self-consciousness. The development of evolution is not merely continuous but also marks the emergence of new levels. Man is not naturally selected but spiritually elected. Reality is a general unity or continuity running through the different levels. The Spirit is not only immanent but also transcendent.[4]

[2] *Reign of Religion in Contemporary Philosophy*, Chap. 13.
[3] *An Idealist View of Life*, p. 205.
[4] See *Taittirīya upaniṣad* Chap. III.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The Spirit is the Absolute. It has infinite possibilities present in it. The one actual manifestation of it is the world. The *Absolute* is not exhausted by it. Other aspects of the Absolute are *God* and *Souls*. Creation is a free act. The Absolute is in no way dependent on the world. It cannot add or take away anything from the Absolute. It is a one-sided type of causation. "We cannot say the world follows from the nature of the absolute even as the conclusion of the syllogism follows from the premises, as Spinoza would have us believe. The Absolute is the ground of the world only in the sense that the possibility of the Absolute is the logical prius of the world. The world would not be but for this possibility in the Absolute[5]." Here we see the strong influence of Śaṅkara's *vivartavāda* in Radhakrishnan's Idealism.

God is the Absolute viewed from the cosmic context. It is the absolute in the emperic dress. God does not assure himself by watching from the universe the drama of life. He is organic with the world and endures as long as the world lasts. Time, God and the world are coeval. The world is relatively real. There is no dualism of God and the world in his system. God is not the mere appearance of the Absolute, but is the very Absolute in world context. When all the souls attain the conscious realisation of the unity with the *Spirit*, *God* and the world lapse into the Absolute.

The human self is conceived by Radhakrishnan as an organised whole and not as a fallen creature born in sin. Man and Spirit are akin to each other. Man and spirit are consubstantial. By ceremonial purity and ethical perfection man acquires the necessary merit for spiritual realisation. But spiritual experience is realised fully in religious intuition.

[5] *Contemporary Indian Philosophy*, p. 282. Here we see that Whitehead influences also on his thought.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The concept of intuition is central to Radhakrishnan's Idealism. Intuition is wisdom transcent, it is different from intellectual knowledge, yet not discontinuous with it. It is not contra-intellectual but trans-intellectual. It is not an instinct. "It is not a shadowy sentiment or pathological fancy fit for cranks and dancing darvishes.[6]" It is not fancy or make be lieve, but a *bonafide* discovery of Reality. It is the response of the whole man to reality. Intellect, emotion and will are fragmentary aspects and their total is intuition. The great scientific inventions, literary productions, artistic achievements and moral reforms are touched by the Spirit and rooted in intuition.[7] We discover by intuition and explain by Logic Spiritual intuition is another name for mystical experience.

Radhakrishnan affirms that the future religion of the world is the religion of the mystics. He calls it the *Spiritual religion* and its two characteristics are it is *scientific* and *humanistic*. In his "*Eastern Religons and Western Thoughts*" he gives the most glorious account of the perennial philosophy of the mystics and their history in the east and the west in some 150 pages. His massive erudition, theological scholarship, and thorough documentation of the facts and theories of mysticism leaves one supremely satisfied. He sums up there the role and characteristics of mysticism. They do not admit of being summarised.

He regards that religion to day has to face science on one front and Humanism on the other. The Religion of the mystics of the Upaniṣads and *Gītā* does permit us to fly from social agonies. In his Kamala Lectures on *Religion and Society*, he has set forth how religion should spread the gospel of humanism and eliminate the gap between irresponsible wealth and human misery. It should not seek to explain social injustice in terms of

[6] *Contemporary Indian Philosophy*, p. 269.

[7] *An Idealist View of Life* Chapters IV and V.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

God's will. After some 18 months stay in Russia as our ambassador at Moscow, he declared in one of his recent speeches that if religion fails to stress the humanist element; "militant atheism will be the alternative to dishonest religion." "Religion has no secrets which absolves us from living." It is not *quiescent* but *combative*. It starts with the individual but it must end in a fellowship. When the mystics refer to the kingdom of God, they do not mean this country or that continent, they mean the *world-community*. Radhakrishnan feels that the original pure Hinduism had so many good elements in it which we could follow. He suggests that all political ills, economic confusions and psychical anxieties of our age can be set right by the power of the Spirit. He writes "what we require is not professions and programmes but the power of the spirit in the hearts of men, a power which will help us to discipline our passions of greed and selfishness and orga nise the world which is at one with us in desire"[8]

Dr. Radhakrishnan's interpretation of Buddhism reconciles it with Advaita Vedānta. He has consistently maintained in his British Academy Lecture on Gautama the Buddha and other writings that Buddhism is not nihilism and Buddha is no agnostic. He could by no possible means have preached an arid rationalism to his six century B.C. pupils and enjoyed such spiritual popularity. To regard Buddha a rationalist and an agnostic is to mistake his stature. Radhakrishnan's faithful and free English translations of The *Bhagavad Gītā* and *The Dhammapada*, the representative religious classics of the two systems, give us a clear idea of the unity of their moral and spiritual outlook.

Radhakrishnan's idealism gives us a balanced and true picture of the relation between the individual and society.

[8] *Eastern Religions and Western Thought*, pp. 33-34.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Two very different conceptions of human life are struggling for the mastery of the world. Extreme individualism on the one hand regards society as a means for the individual. Collectivisms of East and West do not come for the individual but aim at producing an efficient society and not the splendid individuals with power and freedom to pursue their aims. Radhakrishnan states that the individual and society, each considered apart from the other, is an empty abstraction. The real individual needs society to grow to his best stature. Society and the individuals are not antithetical principles. They are inseparable.

Radhakrishnan blue-print i.e. his Report on university education sets forth the integral view of education, of the whole man. The chapter on religious education in the report sums up his conception of religion and its influence on education. In his role as India's ambassador at Moscow, he interpreted India's mind to Russia and also Russia's five points to us. He has been invited to deliver the celebrated Gifford lectures in which I am sure he will give us a complete picture of his philosophy of life and the metaphysics underlying it. In the famous Library of *Living Philosophers series*, edited by Paul Arthur Schilipp, a volume is devoted to the philosophy of Radhakrishnan. He takes his right place in that series of the great philosophers of our age which includes Whitehead, Moore, Santayana, Einstein and Dewey Prof Hinmann in his presidential address at International Philosophical Congress, America, 1921 mentioned Radhakrishnan as the representative idealist along with Bosanqueut. His influence on Indian thought and education is of the foremost importance. He represents the best in the West and East. The need of an age is such men, but they are all too few.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

"A SUGGESTION FOR A BALLET—*ABHIJÑĀNA-ŚĀKUNTALAM*."

By Dr. J. K. BALBIR

"Le geste est un acte, quand la parole n'est que l'annonce de l'acte. . . . La création dramatique véritable c'est la réprésentation. . . . Le geste a ce rôle captiale de traduire le mouvement même de l'être, en décá de la conscience qu'en a l'individu de son propre personnage."[1]

—Paul André Lesort.

THE majority of extant dramas may give an impression that the Sanskrit Drama is more the work of a poet-dramatist rather than that of the metteur-en-scène, that it is more to appreciate the beauty of composition and imagery than to witness the presentation in a theatre hall. But the impression may not be generally correct, for the *Kuṭṭanīmata* gives an account of the performance of the gay comedy *Ratnāvalī* of Harṣa, and though incomplete, the description makes it clear that it was played according to the stage directions still extant in the printed text[2]. It is, however, possible that the use of elaborate poetic verses in Sanskrit with a mixture of Prākrits and complex dramaturgical composition was rather to restrict its public to the èlite only, who with their cultural background could understand and experience the *Rasa* of the play[3]. Only the trained eye will reap the maximum of pleasure

[1] "Gesture is an act, whereas speech is only an announcement of the act. . . . Performance alone is the real dramatic creation. . . . To translate the movement of the soul itself of the human being, even beyond the consciousness that the individual has of his own personality, is the significant rôle of the Gesture." Translation by the author of the paper.

[2] A. B. Keith : *The Sanskrit Drama*, p. 368; based on a statement by S. Lévi : see below.

[3] S. Lévi : *Le théâtre indien*, p. 367 ff.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

from a performance. It is with this view indeed that Bharata laid down qualifications for the audience.[4] Ignorant and barbaric persons should not be admitted to the representation.[5] And no dramatic presentation at the stage is possible without *Abhinaya*: Bharata states that there are four kinds of *Abhinaya* viz. *Āṅgika* (Gestures), *Vācika* (Words), *Āhārya* (Dress & Make-up) and *Sāttvika* (Temperament).[6]

But the ballet transcends the language expressions and draws on the tradition of a particular region. As such it can be instrumental in forging cultural relations and good will in other areas of the rest of the world, being itself "the greatest shop-window for a nation's art" (Haskell). With our long tradition of dance, music and drama, and the details of *Abhinaya* given in the *Nāṭyaśāstra* and *Abhinaya Darpaṇa*,[7] and lying hidden in manuscripts like the *Bharatārṇava*, the *Nāṭyasarvasvadīpikā* and the *Bharatasāstragrantha*, it is possible for us to help in the renaissance of a ballet. This is necessary because "more and more people are finding calm in this gentle art of ballet", and we may add that it is so not only in the West, but in our country as well.

The story of Śakuntalā is very well known in India as well as abroad, and with that background, we have, therefore, to consider if the immortal play based on this story could not satisfy the cultured audience if presented as a ballet.

Bharata says that only after the *abhinaya*, a poet-dramatist receives celebrity in the world.[8] After a study of the

---

[4] *Nāṭyaśāstra*(N.Ś.) 27. 50-62, Kashi Sanskrit Series (KSS). See "Sanskrit Drama and the Spectator" by the author, in the Journal of Research, Agra University (Letters).

[5] S. M. Tagore: *The eight Rasas*, p. 61.

[6] NŚ. 8. 9 (The English terminology is according to Dr. M. M. Ghosh, *translation of the Nāṭyaśastra*, Calcutta, 1951) see *Abhinaya Darpaṇa* (A.D. 38—41).

[7] Edited by M. M. Ghosh.

[8] *NŚ.* 26.121 (*KSS*).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Abhijñānaśākuntalam, it appears that Kālidāsa wrote this play having in mind the stage: the stage-manager says, "*apūrvam nāṭakam prayoge'dhikriyatām*". Furthermore, Kālidāsa is sensitive to the success of his play, for he has made the stage-manager say : "Until the satisfaction of the experts, I do not consider the knowledge of acting to be perfect."[9] Indeed Bharata stated that "the production of a drama is wholly meant for attaining the success (*siddhi*) in it."[10] And unless there is a living contact between the story and the stage, the former cannot evoke the admiration that we have known to be accorded to the great artist that Kālidāsa was.

If the *Śāk.* is, in truth, stage-worthy, we can be justified in suggesting that with all the stage directions and references—direct and indirect—to *abhinaya*—Histrionic representation, given by the poet, it can be also performed as a ballet. In the *Śāk.*, no less than thirteen times does he give stage directions to let the initiated spectator know the position and the description of the characters in the play. Sometimes, he would describe the positions and then add "*yathokta-vyāpāraḥ tiṣṭhati*"[11], or he would describe an action and say "*tathā karoti*"[12]. At times, he seems to help the metteur-en-scène regarding the movements of certain acts, viz., *kalaśam āvarjayati*[13], *puruṣam parimuktabandhanam karoti*[14], and *cūtāṁkuram pātayitum icchati*[15]. The position of Mārica with Aditi is given in the stage direction "*adityā sārdhamāsanastho mārīcaḥ*[16]. The king Duṣyanta tries to kiss Śakuntalā but she "acts" so as to avoid it.[17]

---

[9] āk. 1. 2. [10] *NŚ* 27.1.

[11] References to the *Abhijñānaśākuntalam* (*Śāk.*) are to Nirnaya Sagar Edition, 1947. See pages 26, 57, 89, 100, 128, 241, 254.

[12] *Śāk.* pp. 27, 88, 210, 239.

[13] P. 32. [14] P. 186. [15] P. 199. [16] P. 256.

[17] P. 111.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Actually about thirty direct references point to *abhinaya* : *arthavegam nirūpya*[18], *sarasandhānam naṭayati*[19], *rathavegam rūpayati*[20], *nimittam sūcayan*[21], *nipuṇam nirūpya*[22], *vṛkṣasecanam rūpayati*[23], *bhramarabādhām rūpayati*[24], *śṛṅgāralajjām rūpayati*[25], *madana-bādhām nirūpya*[26], *samsparśam rūpayitvā*[27], *sābhilāṣam nirvarṇya*[28], (*nalinipatre nakhair nikṣiptavarṇam rūpayitvā*)[29], *śakuntalā mukham pariharati naṭyena*[30], *kusumāvacayam naṭyantyau sakhyau*[31], *padântare skhalitam nirūpya*[32], *puspoccayam rūpayati*[33], *priyamvadā nāṭyena sumanaso gṛhṇāti*[34], *nāṭyena prasādhayatah*[35], *śakuntalā vridām rūpayati*[36], *nāṭyena alamkurutah*[37], *kokilaravam sūcayitva*[38], *gatibhaṇgam rūpayitvā*[39], *adhikārakhedam nirūpya*[40], *nimittam sūcayitvā*[41], *bhītināṭatikena*[42] *nāṭyenāvatīrya sthitā*[43], *sāvadhānam nirūpya dṛṣtvā*[44], *rathādhirohaṇam nāṭayati*[45], *nāṭyenāvatīrṇau*[46], *nimittam sūcayitvā*[47].

In order to devise a ballet, we can take the above as the basis, and look for other references within the text to be translated by way of histrionic representation following the advice of the dramaturgical texts, and setting them to *appropriate* music. Bharata devotes about seven chapters[48] to the histrionic representation alone, one full chapter (23) to the costumes and make-up, and another chapter (26) to the representation of particular objects and ideas. Likewise, the *Abhinayadarpaṇa*, the *Saṅgītaratnākara* etc. among the printed texts, and manuscripts like the *Nāṭyālocana*[49] and others mentioned before, may pro-

[18] P. 18. [19] P. 19, [20] P. 23. [21] P. 24.
[22] P. 25, [23] P. 27. [24] P. 33, [25] P. 40,
[26] P. 85, [27] P. 87, [28] P. 89, [29] P. 100,
[30] P. 111. [31] P. 115. [32] P. 119. [33] P. 119.
[34] P. 127. [35] P. 129. [36] P. 131, [37] P. 132.
[38] P. 135. [39] P. 139. [40] P. 157. [41] P. 161.
[42] P. 178, 182 [43] P. 189. [44] P. 214. [45] P. 229.
[46] P. 237. [47] P. 240. [48] Chapters 8—14.

[49] See my article entitled "*Nāṭyālocana of Trilocanāditya*" (a manuscript in the Sarasvati Bhavan Library, Varanasi). Actes du XXIe Congrés International des Orientalistes, Paris, 1948, p. 192ff.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

vide us with the necessary guidance for our suggested ballet.

According to Bharata, "dramatic performance in its entirety relates to the six limbs including the major and the minor ones such as head, hands, lips, breast, sides and feet;. . . and the (six) minor limbs (upānga) are eyes, eyebrows, nose, lower lip and chin."[50] And the details of "gaits" are also important.[51] It is said that "under the head of Sāttvika are described the physical states, which are deemed appropriate to feelings and emotions while the Āṅgika prescribes the physical movements which express most effectively both psychic states and physical movements."[52] And thus, different situations can be rendered by means of various expressions.

We remember that the *Abhijñānaśākuntalam* opens with the king riding in a chariot and following an antelope; we are told of the stopping of the chariot and later[53] of Sānumati entering by an aerial carriage. And Bharata states that "the Gait of a person riding a chariot should consist of simple (*cūrṇa*) steps. From the *Samapāda*[54] posture, he is to make a mimicry of the (sic) being carried in a chariot and with the one (hand he is to take up) the bow and with the other the pole (of the chariot). And his charioteer is to remain busy with the whip and the reins and the draught animals according to the class (of the vehicle) should be represented differently. And with quick and simple steps he is to enter the stage."[55] As for the celes-

[50] *NŚ*. 8. 12-13 (Translation by M. M. Ghosh).

[51] *NŚ*. 13. "Abhinavagupta says : 'The Gait is to be prescribed with a view to the person, sentiment, situation, place and occasion." (M. M.Ghosh, *NŚ*. trans. p. 213, fn.1).

[52] A. B. Keith : *op. cit.* p. 368.

[53] *Śāk*. p. 188.

[54] "Samapāda—the two feet close together. . . ." (*NŚ*. 11.14 KSS).

[55] *NŚ*. 13.88—92 (Translation by M. M. Ghosh).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

tial car, it is said, that "the Gait of one in a celestial car should be made like that of one riding a chariot,"[56] or "the Gait of a character moving through the sky is to include the aerial *Cāris*."[57] It is also said that "one who is about to mount (these vehicles) is to hold his body up and with opposite of this (motion) one is to make one's discent (from them)."[58] The "gait" of the child Bharata of our play "will be according to his will and no *sausṭhava* (sic) and (fixed) measurement will be required."[59] It is noteworthy that the Gait of the Jester has merited a long description in the NŚ.,[60] where his gait is to be like lame men, cripples, and dwarfs, consisting of simple laughable steps with feet raised high (and put forward). And his Gait will relate to (three) kinds of laughter : laughter due to limbs, due to words, and due to the costume and make-up. Of these, the ugly and big teeth, baldness, hunch on the back, lameness and distorted face will be objects of laughter due to limbs. When one walks like a crane looking up and looking down and with wide strides, this too becomes an object of laughter due to limbs." In the ballet, naturally we shall have to leave out the laughter caused by his words.

The Chapter on Gaits is of vital importance as will be evident from the foregoing extract. And we need not cite the Gaits mentioned in NŚ. fit for the king, the *kañcukī*, the ladies, ascetics, and other characters, and in accordance with the different Sentiments evoked in our play. Suffice it to point out that the stage-direction in

[56] *Ibid.*

[57] *Ibid.*, 13.92. For aerial cāris, see *NŚ.* 11.11—13 & 11.30—48. *KSS.* (corresponding to NŚ. II. 10—12 & 11. 29—49-M. M. Ghosh).

[58] *NŚ.* 13. 92 (Ghosh) cf. Sāk. p. 159, 229 for mounting and p. 189, 237 for descending from a chariot.

[59] *NŚ.* 13. 186-187 (Ghosh).

[60] *NŚ.* 13. 136—144 (KSS), corresponding to Ghosh's Translation, NŚ. 13.137—146.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

regard to the *śara-sandhānam nāṭayati*, could be effectively represented in accordance with NŚ, where it is stated that "there are four acts relating to the bow, viz, preparing (*parimārjana*), taking an arrow (*ādāna*), *taking an aim* (*sandhāna*), and shooting (*mokṣa*),"[61] and the appropriate gestures and postures can be used.

While women are walking and speaking, their posture (*sthāna*) is said to be of three kinds : "*Āyata*, when the right foot will be *sama*, the left foot obliquely placed, and the left waist raised; *Avahittha*, when the left foot will be *sama*, and the right foot obliquely placed and the left waist raised up; and *Asvakrānta*, when one foot is raised and the other is resting on its forepart and ready for the *sūci*[62] or the *āviddha cari*."[63] It is this last posture that is "to be assumed in taking hold of the branch of a tree, plucking a cluster (of flowers) or in the taking of rest by .... women for any purposes."[64] Obviously in the setting of the ashram and elsewhere, as planned by our poet-lover of nature, the heroine with her two female friends will have quite some occasions to be shown in this posture along with the specified movements of the hands, when they collect flowers[65] or when one of the two maid-servants holds the mango-sprout.[66] In the sixth act, Sānumati takes leave of the king and goes away with a movement of the foot called *udbhrāntaka*, which will be the same as *bāhyabhramarikā* according to the *Saṅgītasudhānidhi*, cited by Rāghavabhaṭṭa.[67]

[61] *NŚ*. 11. 92-93 (Tr. by M. M. Ghosh).

[62] *NŚ*. 11.33—A *kuñcita* foot thrown up and brought above the knee of the other foot, and then its fall on its fore part is called *sūci cāri*; see M. M. Ghosh, tr. of *NŚ*. p. 200.

[63] *NŚ*. 13. 159-168. (Tr. Ghosh).

[64] *Ibid.*, 169.

[65] Śāk. p. 115, 117, 119, 127.

[66] *Ibid.* p. 191.

[67] P. 223.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

There is a direct reference to a movement of the hand in our play, i.e. *kapotahasta*.[68] This is the technical name for the usual salute when the palms are joined, and Rāghavabhaṭṭa cites the *Saṅgītaratnākara's* definition; it is used either to 'salute, or while talking to elders.' *NŚ*.[69] also defines the movement and states the usage. Like this, in the progress of the story, many incidents will have to be represented with the movements of the hands. For instance, they will have to be inferred from the action of the ascetic boys prohibiting the king from attacking the hermitage deer,[70] which is actually indicated later[71] by a stage-direction : (*hastamudyamya*); or from the blessings offered when the king withdrew his arrow, and accepts the blessings, with a movement of the head. The ascetics greet the king in his court when they accompany Śakuntalā.[72] We can as well say that Gautamī uses the movement of the hands to sprinkle water over the head of Śakuntalā when the latter is burning with love, though Gautamī thinks, it is due to heat of the season.[73] And above all, for the curse on Śakuntalā, Durvāsas can be shown as using his hands. References to the *Janāntika*[74] are to be found as many as nine[75] times, and this stage convention necessitates the usage of the *Tripatākāhasta*—the movement of the hand in the form of a flag with three fingers.[76] Similarly, the stage direction of intently listening to (*karṇam dattvā*), or just listening (*ākarṇya*) which figures no less than twelve times[77] suggests the movement of hands.

---

[68] *Śāk.* p. 191. [69] 9·124—126 KSS. [70] p. 20

[71] p. 21 [72] p. 164. [73] P. 112.

[74] See my article on "*The Conception of Conventions of Speech in Sanskrit Dramaturgists*"—Proceedings & transactions of the All India Oriental Conference, Thirteenth Session, Nagpur University, 1946, p. 192-193.

[75] *Śāk.* p. 38, 40, 64, 90, 95, 136, 141, 221, 228.

[76] *NŚ.* 9. 26-31 *KSS.*

[77] *Śak.* p. 25, 52, 77, 84, 128, 136, 172, 180, 195, 223, 240, 241.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Appropriate movements of the eyes will be indicated by stage directions in the play : viz., *sadṛṣṭikṣepam*[78] or *snigdhādṛṣṭi* or other references like *avalōkya*[79] or the throbbing of the eye.[80] For this also it will be worthwhile to seek guidance from the *NŚ*[81] which gives the thirty six varieties of glances expressing the sentiments, the dominant states, the transitory states, as also the different kinds of gestures of the eyeballs, of the eyelids, and eyebrows and mentions some additional Glances.

It is, however, to be acknowledged that while presenting a ballet of the famous play, we cannot isolate the movements of the different parts of the body of an actor portraying a certain character. And the whole body must move to depict a certain feeling or a reaction to it. We may therefore, now cite two instances of *composite movements* from Rāghavabhaṭṭa which may suggest such and similar action for other incidents of the story of Śakuntalā. The commentator is explaining the stage direction, *bhramarabādhām rūpayati*, and states that the representation of this is to be done with the movement of the head called '*vidhūta*', with the lip quivering, and the hand movement called '*patākā*' with the palm showing extrovert and stuck to the mouth.[82] Then the technical terms are defined with quotations which are not from the NS, though in essence they are not different from Bharata. Thus the *vidhūta* movement is described as quick and oblique, and its usage is given as on the occasions of an attack of cold, fever, or terror; it is said that the lip quivers in cases of suffering terror, cold and anger; and in the *patākā* hand, the fingers are extended and close one against another and the thumb

---

[78] *Śāk.* p. 106, 134, 224, 247.
[79] *Ibid.*, p. 25, 89.
[80] *ibid.*, p. 161.
[81] 8. 38—125.
[82] See *Rāghavabhaṭṭa* on *Śāk.* p. 34-35 (NSP. Edition).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

is bent. Then again, another stage-direction, *vṛkṣasecanam rūpayati*, is explained.[83] Its representation is to be done with the movement of the hands in *padmakosa* and *nalinipākṣakosa*, taking them to the region of shoulder with the head in the *avadhūta* movement, by bending the body slightly. Again the technical terms are defined, though this time they pertain only to the movement of the hands, for the bent movement of the head is known to be called "*avadhūta*";[84] the above-mentioned movements of the hands are defined as the turned down and separated and *svastika* the *Śukatuṇḍa* hands ['the two *arāla* hands upturned and held together at the wrists will form the *svaṣtika* hands[85] (*samyuta-hasta*); and in the *arāla* hand,[86] the forefinger is curved like a bow, the thumb also curved and the remaining fingers separated and turned upwards'; whereas in the *Śukatuṇḍa* hand' the ring finger (third finger) of the *arāla* hand is bent.[87]]

It is obvious that the suggested ballet cannot be staged without a proper analysis and delineation of sentiments (*rasas*) or emotional states. For Bharata said : "no sense issues (from drama) without a Sentiment"[88], or again "No play in its production can have one Sentiment only."[89] The primary *rasa* in our drama is *Śṛṇgāra*—in all its facets, *pūrvānurāga*, *sambhoga* and *vipralambha*. Therefore, as far as the representation of pure feelings is considered, we shall have to have recourse to the definitions and usages for expression mentioned by Bharata in chapters six and seven of the NŚ; though he reverts to the subject in chapters twenty four and twenty six, in the former is treated the Basic Representation (*sāmānyābhinaya*), and in the

[83] *Ibid.*, p. 27.
[84] *NŚ.* 8. 28. *KSS.*
[85] *NŚ.* 9. 134 (Ghosh).
[86] *NŚ.* 9. 46—52 (ibid).
[87] *NŚ.* 9. 53-54 (ibid).
[88] *NŚ.* 6.32 (KSS).
[89] *NŚ.* 7.118 (Ghosh).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

latter the Special Representation (*Citrābhinaya*). Evidently these two kinds do not figure under the four kinds of *abhinaya* generally mentioned. And Abhinavagupta[90] has been in difficulty in explaining the sense or the derivation of the term *Sāmānyābhinaya* without giving any "convincing explanation." From the explanation given by Bharata himself,[91] "the Basic Representation is that which is made *simultaneously* by the head, the face, the feet, the thighs, the shanks, the belly, and the waist." It will be seen, therefore, that it corresponds to what we have called "*composite movements*" above. That clarifies the reason for Bharata to revert to such movements in later chapters after having given the specific movements of the different parts of the body. Consequently, we need now to refer to situations in our play which evoke feelings, or even to feelings themselves which direct the movement of limbs.

We have stated that *Śṛṅgāra* is the main Sentiment of our play. But there is a blending of other Sentiments also: for instance, but for the *adbhuta*[92] in the *nirvahaṇa sandhi*, the drama would have ended otherwise. We also find a happy combination of *karuṇa* in the play. And if other Sentiments are accessory, it is only necessary to represent them according to the School of Bharata.

Śṛṅgāra (Erotic Sentiment) is suggested by *smitam* (smile) and *bhrūvikṣepa*, movement of the eyebrow.[93] As for *smita*, the female companions of Śakuntalā cleverly tease her sometimes with a cunning smile,[94] sometimes with a naughty laugh.[95] As for Hāsya (Comic Sentiment) the *Vidūṣaka* is there to provide it and his presence with the

---

[90] *Abhinavabhāratī* in a transcription from the Lucknow University Library, pp. 1518—24, corresponding to BORI ms. pp. 334-36.

[91] *NŚ.* 24. 72 Ghosh.

[92] P. 180, 237, 248.

[93] *NŚ.* 6.

[94] *Śāk.* P. 36, 44.

[95] *Ibid.*, P. 28, 49, 119.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

king gives occasions for its representation.[96] The Superintendent of Police laughs at the fisherman,[97] the king at the cleverness of the fair-sex,[98] and the child Bharata at the ascetic woman.[99] It is to be noted that most of the speeches by the king start with a smile, sometimes with a sarcastic one on himself[100] and Mātali starts to speak with a smile on three occasions.[101] Such smiles could be rendered in accordiance with the instructions in *NŚ*.[102] *Krodha* (Furious Sentiment) figures when Śakuntalā is angry with the king at his repudiation of her in the court;[103] or the king is furious when the *Vidūṣaka* cries for help at his neck bent backwards, and himself being bent "in three places like a sugar-cane".[104] *Bhaya* (Fear) in general and from having done something against royal laws (*nṛpāparādha*),[105] can be represented according to *NŚ*;[106] *bhayānaka* (terrible Sentiment) will be seen in instances of the frightened deer being followed by Duṣyanta and others and may be depicted according to *NŚ*.[107] Pathetic (*Karuṇa*) indeed is the condition of Śakuntalā when she reaches the court of Duṣyanta with a longing to meet him. After repudiation, and on seeing his ring, the king is also repentent and is reminded of his love. These poignant situations evoke expressions proper to the Pathetic Sentiment, like falling of tears.[108] This *sāttvikabhāva* is due to charm and shall therefore fall under the category of *ārtijam ruditam* accoring to *NŚ*.[109] Other *anubhāvas*—consequents, like change of colour, drooping limbs, and being out of breath, have also found place in the more famous descriptions in our play.

---

[96] *Śāk.* p. 62, 70, 80, 82, 199, 216. [97] P. 183.
[98] P. 172. [99] P. 242.
[100] P. 58, 59, 151. [101] P. 22, 230, 255.
[102] 6.54[a]–56 KSS. [103] P. 175, 178, [104] P. 225.
[105] *Śāk.* P. 178, 182, 192. [106] 26, 57, KSS. [107] 6.72 KSS.
[108] *Aérupāta*, P. 129, 139, 140, 176, 180, 216.
[109] 7, 12, KSS.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Of the thirtythree transitory states (*vyabhicāribhāvas*), indications can be found to no less than twenty and it is possible to represent them according to *NŚ*. 7 and *NṢ*. 11·53. *Nirveda*, or discourgement;[110] *glāni* or weakness in Vidūṣaka being hungry, thirsty and tired; *Śaṅkā* or apprehension due to the guilt of the fisherman finding the royal ring, and in Śakuntalā when her right eye throbs;[111] *asūyā* or envy;[112] *śrama* or weariness;[11] and *ālasya* or indolence in the case of Vidūṣaka; *dainya* or depression, and *cintā* or anxiety[114] in the condition of the king; *smṛiti* or recollection in Śakuntala when she is reminded of the days gone-by; *vrīdā* or shame, at times, *śṛṅgāralujjā*,[115] and *vrīḍā* in the king;[116] *harṣa* or joy[117] *āvega* or agitation (in mounting the chariot) in the king going to help Indra and we have examples of agitation with confusion and haste,[118] *viṣāda* or despair;[111] *utsukatā* or impatience in Śakuntalā; *garva* or arrogance in the king; *vibodha* or awakening in the disciple entrusted with the work of keeping watch;[120] *āmarṣa* or indignation; *avahittham* or dissimulation and *ugratā* or cruelty on the part of the policemen questioning the fisherman; and *vitarka* or deliberation in Śakuntalā in the first scene; and such other feelings, are all to be found in our play. Bharata has given an elaborate treatment to this topic in the seventh chapter of his NŚ and we may seek help there for the representation of these. The stage direction *saharṣam*,[121] and *saroṣam*[121] and

---

[110] *Śāk*. P. 152, 197.

[111] Cf. *NŚ*. 24.253, where it is said : "Personal omens indicating occurrence favourable to women will occur to their left (side) while omens in case of all undesirable happenings will take place on their right. (Tr. Ghosh).

[112] P. 176. 187. [113] P. 157

[114] P. 82, 97, 99, 169, 180.

[115] P. 40, 42, 131, 133, 103, 109. [116] P. 89.

[117] P. 80, 94, 98, 102, 190, 249.

[118] P. 20, 33, 37, 53, 222. [119] P. 89, 167, 172. [120] P. 121.

[121] P. 80, 94, 98, 102, 190, 244. [122] P. 44, 47 etc·

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of agony prevailing in Act. V and Act VII might be depicted according to Nāṭya Śāstra[123] respectively.

Evidently, the physical states, and the representation of the psychic states in a ballet has to be accompanied by the appropriate dress and make-up, a subject that has been developed under the heading of the *Āhāryābhinaya*, for which Bharata devotes one whole chapter.[124] The treatment can be found in other texts, particularly in the manuscripts mentioned above. Mātṛgupta is said to classify *Rasas* from an angle different from the traditional; he mentions three rasas : *Vācika Rasa*, *Nepathya Rasa* and *Svābhāvika Rasa*. Of these, "dialogues, verses, sentences and words, which are in accordance with the Sentiment and full of embellishments produce the *Vācika Rasa*; garlands, ornaments and dress which are in accordance with action, figure, age, caste and are proper for the time and place, produce the *Nepathya Rasa*; and that produced by beauty, exuberant youth, steadiness and patience and other qualities is the *Svābhāvika Rasa*."[125] Thus we know that even if there was difference of opinion about the number of rasas, both Bharata and Mātṛgupta were conscious of the importance of what the latter termed the *Nepathya Rasa*. Bharata mentions four elements of Āhāryābhinaya, and two of the acknowledged[126] authorities agree to their being *puṣṭa* or model-work, *alaṅkāra* or decoration, *aṅgaracanā* or painting of the limbs, and *sañjīva* or living creatures. For a few items in our suggested ballet, we might have to procure some model-work; as for decorations, we know

---

[123] *NŚ*. 26. 49, 51, and 54 (KSS). [124] *NŚ*. 23.

[125] Rāghavabhaṭṭa on *Śāk*. p. 7 quotes Mātṛgupta (*NSP*. Edition).

[126] *Nāṭyālocana* op. cit. Foll. 4b-6a; and *Nartakanirṇaya* (extract) quoted by S. Lévi : *Le théâtre indien*, p. 386.

[127] P. 97.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of the ornaments for the king, such as the fateful ring; other ornaments which he hands over to the charioteer before proceeding to the ashram, and the golden bracelet which "slips down from the wrist."[127] Under 'decoration', we have to deal not only with the ornaments but also with dress and flower garlands etc. There are regulations for dress. Thus while repenting and longing the king should wear sober dress.[128] The ascetics, as has been often said, wear bark garments, Vidūṣaka should be in tattered clothes or in at least such clothes as provoke laughter, the Chamberlain in a long white robe going down to the ankle,[129] and the *yavanīs*, either in the dress proper to their race or those of the maid-servants attending on the king. We know also that Śakuntalā herself is wearing a bark-garment, because even with that, she "was all the more attractive; what indeed is not a decoration for a charming figure?"[130] As for painting the limbs, an elaborate introduction precedes the actual usage of different colours, not only in the Bharata's NŚ., but also in the manuscript *Nāṭyālocana*, and the citation made from this work by Raghavabhaṭṭa,[131] is to be found in this manuscript. Basing ourselves on these instructions,[132] we could make use of the modern techniques of make-up for different characters staging the ballet. All that appears as living on the stage is Sañjīva, and this is a reference to the entrance of animals. Though such presentation on the stage may not have been possible in the theatre halls of yore, but could be profitably produced in this era of big and revolving stages, and the epoch of the famous ballets like the Swan-lake. And as a practical advice to the producer, Bharata says that

---

[128] P. 196, 251.

[129] *NŚ.* 23. 116-117 (Tr. By M.M Ghosh).

[130] P. 28.

[131] Rāghavabhaṭṭa on *Śāk.* P. 7. Cr. *Nāṭyālocana* Foll. 4b.

[132] *NŚ.* 68-145 (Tr. by M. M. Ghosh).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

upakaraṇas or other accessories may be used,[133] and only proper light substitutes for things which we see in life[134] may be used, otherwise by weight of ornaments, and arms, histrionic representation is liable to suffer.[135]

Bharata devotes one chapter to the Pictorial Representation of particular objects and ideas.[136] Such examples as the presentation of the morning[137] of the ponds of water,[138] the sun and the desire to avoid its heat[139] and the summer season in which the play has been set, omens, other than those concerned with the bodily movement of the eye or the arm, and others can be improvised on the basis of the instructions given in this chapter by Bharata.

An attempt has been made in the foregoing to show that the theme of the famous play and its celebrity, the copious stage directions, the universal appeal of the situations through which the story passes, and above all, the presiding Sentiment are of such irresistable nature, that a ballet of this tender comedy set in the midst of nature, of courtly life and divine intervention can be a greater cementing force in the cultural relations that exist between our motherland and the countries of the outside world. Its authenticity can be guaranteed if the guidance is sought in the existing texts notably the Nāṭyaśāstra and other texts on dramaturgy, dance and music. If it has been pointed out above that at many a place such texts can be our guide, as far as, at least, the histrionic representation is concerned, it is not intended that a modern enthusiast of ballet should not apply modern technique where it can be of use. It is to be admitted that suitable music has to be found or composed to accompany, but our tradition

---

[133] *NŚ.* 23. 187.
[134] *ibid.* 191. [135] *NŚ.* 23, 207 ff. [136] *NŚ.* 26 on *Citrābhinaya*
[137] P. 121, [138] P. 135, [139] P. 87, 121.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of music and dance is so rich that it should not be difficult to be able to do so. It is, therefore, for the present only a suggestion for the consideration of experts of dance who have practised this art of ballet. If language be a barrier for understanding and appreciating our culture by those who do not belong to it, let ballet—this sublime language of Gestures—step in to take to fare off lands the message of our country! [140]

---

[140] This is a recast of a paper of the same title, read before the Classical Sanskrit Literature section of the 17th Session of the All India Oriental Conference, held in Ahmedabad, 1953. This paper was later discussed with the noted Bharata Nāṭyam danseuse Madame Mṛṇālinī Sārābhāi at her residence. She was appreciative of the suggestion, and her opinion is all the more valuable as she has held very successfully many shows abroad, and at home.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

SOME ASPECTS OF ADMINISTRATION AND SOCIETY IN ORISSA UNDER MARATHAS.

By Dr. Bhabani Charan Ray

Orissa under the Marathas was divided into two political divisions, one of which was distinguished by the name of Garjat and the other by that of Mughalbandi. These united possessions were bounded by sea on the east, the Maratha province of Chhatisgarh on the west, the Chilka lake and Ganjam district on the south and the districts of Jaleswar and Midnapur and the province of Birbhum on the north[1]; more than one third of the country was covered with jungles.[2]

The Garjat was held by 24 tributary chieftains[3]. The Raja of Khurda was the descendant of the royal family of Orissa. He was most powerful of all the chiefs. He continued to exercise the regal privilege of conferring titles on the inhabitants of Mughalbandi and Garjat countries which was never objected to by the Marathas. It is said that no title granted by the Maratha Government was considered to confer any distinction in Orissa until confirmed by the Raja of Khurda.[4] Nearly the whole of Khurda which from the days of its rule under the native princes was parcelled out into jagirs, continued so during the Maratha Government.

[1] *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations* 1st. March, 1804, No. 41.

[2] *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations*, 12 April, 1804, No. 13.

[3] They were the possessors of "Khurda, Kanika with Kirwa and Koel Dip, Nikhuria, Dashapalla with Mohanpur, Khandapara, Narasingpur, Dhenkanal, Ranapur, Bunagur, Talcher, Baramba, Mayurbhanj, Nilgiri, Angul, Hindol, Athgarh, Marichpur, Harishpur, Bishenpur, Kujang and Pattia ; *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations*, 1st March, 1804 No. 42 A.

[4] *Board's collections* Vol. 586, No. 14189, p. 1.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The holders of the jagir known as jagirdars were bound by the terms of their tenure to perform certain services about the person and the court of the Raja. They were required to pay a light quit-rent in kauris denominated Tanki or provide certain amount of grains, cloth etc., for the table, wardrobe or household expenditure. A very numerous and important class of the jagirdars who were of course, the hereditary chiefs of the military of the country were Dalabeheras. Next subordinate to them were Dalais. Every estate they possessed had a principal garh or fortress of brick, stone or mud to which was attached a band of paiks, a native hereditary militia. These paiks were trained to the use of arms, such as bows, arrows, swords and also matchlock: they were always ready to follow the command of their hereditary chiefs.[5]

The Paiks held lands from the jagirdars on lowest terms; in ordinary times they appear to have been employed in agricultural labour as common raiyats.[6]

More or less similar type of feudal government, however liable to variation in details from local peculiarities existed in all other feudatory states of Orissa.

These tributary chiefs were intermediate superiors between the Maratha Government and the tenants of the soil; they were paying a stipulated light quit-rent either in money or in kind. While a smaller state like Nilgiri paid an annual tribute of Rs. 30,000,[7] a comparatively bigger state like Mayurbhanj was paying a tribute of Rs. 6,000.[8] No tribute was paid by the Raja of

---

[5] *Board's collections* Vol. 586, No. 14189, pp. 88-95; Ibid Vol. 587, No. 14190, pp. 291-300.

[6] *Ibid.*

[7] *Early European travellers in Nagpur territories*, p. 6.

[8] *Selections from official letters and records relating to the history of Mayurbhanj*. Vol. I, Letter No. 241.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Dashapalla in consideration of the Raja supplying free of cost all the timber annually required for the Jagannath cars at Puri.[9] It appears that there was perhaps no definite principle for collecting tribute from the feudatory chiefs.

The Maratha Government acted as an umpire in case of boundary disputes between two chieftains. In 1775 A. D. Padmanabha Deva Birabal Mangaraj Mahapatra was the ruler of Baramba. His state was invaded by the Raja of Narasinghpur; two important forts of Kharod and Ratapat fell into his hands. The Raja of Baramba in his distress appealed to the Maratha Government which settled the boundary disputes between the contesting parties by restoring Kharod and Ratapat to the Raja of Baramba. Another example may be given here. Once there arose a dispute for the possession of Jormuha between the Raja of Angul and the Raja of Dashapalla. Raghuji Bhonsla was intimated of this matter; he settled the dispute by granting a sanad for the contested place in favour of the Raja of Dashapalla.[10]

The Maratha government seldom interfered in the internal administration of the feudatory chiefs. But in case of lunacy or inabiliy to rule, a chief was occasionally replaced by another suitable person chosen from the same family. Birakishore Deva, the Raja of Khurda, went mad[11] and beheaded his two sons, Jagannath Rao and Balabhadra Rao. In view of such violence committed by the Raja, the Maratha government deposed him from the gaddi (throne), confined him in the fort of Barabati and raised Divyasinha Deva, son of Jagannath Rao to the throne.[12]

---

[9] *Orissa Tributary States Bengal gazetteer*, p. 159.

[10] *Ibid*, pp. 129-30, 159.

[11] A. Mahanty (ed) *Madalapanji* (Prachi Edition), p. 79.

[12] *Board's collections*, Vol. 585, No. 14185, p. 250; A. Mahanty (ed), *Madalapanji*, p. 18.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Being secure in their forts, most of which were surrounded by dense jungles and confident of their strength to resist any attack, many of the feudatory chiefs were often irregular in payment of tribute or occasionally showed spirit of insubordination to the supreme government in Orissa. During the Mughal rule, particularly in the beginning of the reign of Aurangazeb most of the tributory chiefs of Orissa refused to pay tribute and even declared war against Khan-i-Dauran, the Governor of Orissa. The Mughal Governor took the trouble of leading a series of campaigns to suppress the chiefs most important of whom were the Raja of Khurda, Mayurbhanj, Keonjhar, Narasinghpur and Nilgiri.[13] Such instances were not rare during the Maratha rule. During the time of the dismissal of Shiv Bhatt Sathe (in 1764) from the subahdari of Orissa, the Raja of Dhenkanal murdered Buli Khan, an adopted son of Shiv Bhatt and seized his horses and effects. At the same time the Raja of Nilgiri with another chief plundered the inhabitants of some part of Balasore. Bhaskar Pandit as faujdar of Balasore fell into arrears; he was asked by the Governor of Orissa to make payment. The Raja of Nilgiri offered Bhaskar Pandit protection, and also took the latter away with his effects.[14]

In the middle of 1769 Jai Narain, the Raja of Dhenkanal wrote to Mahammad Riza Khan, naib nazim of Bengal appointed by the British, "His country has been plundered by the Marathas. Sambhaji Ganesh, who is staying at Jajpur has rebelled against Raja Januji. Consequently the Raja's people have come from the Deccan to summon him to Nagpur. The whole country from Balasore to Cuttack is undefended and Sambhuji has

---

[13] J. Sarkar, *Studies in Mughal India* (Cal. 1919), pp. 205-14.

[14] *C. P. C.* Vol. II, No. 2484.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

design to loot it. Should a letter of encouragement be sent to the writer, he will stay in his country with a satisfied heart. Sends to Murshidabad his brother who will relate all particulars to the Khan.[15]" In 1781 the Raja stopped the payment of tribute and rebelled against the Maratha Government. Chimna Bapu with a large force marched to suppress the rebellion.[16]

During the rule of Sheo Bhatt Sathe, the Maratha Governor of Orissa, Narayan Deo, the Zamindar of Kimedi, a descendant of the royal family of Orissa, put his claim to the throne of Khurda and invaded it. Birakishore Deva, the Raja of Khurda, in his distress, sought the help of the Marathas which was granted to him on condition of a payment of one lakh of rupees.[17] The Raja of Kimedi was driven out of Khurda. But Birakishore Deva was unable to pay off the money bargained for; he first evaded the payment and afterwards was forced to surrender to the Marathas, the parganas of Lembai, Rahang, Purusottam Chattar, i.e., the country lying between the Daya river, the Chilka lake and the sea together with the tribute of fourteen khandaits of the hills subject to his control.[18] Thus took place the dismemberment of the territory of Khurda. Even the management of the temple of Jagannath, a privilege which was so long enjoyed by the Raja from a very ancient time was taken away from his hands to be placed under the Maratha government; the Raja was allowed only a pension from the subahdars of Orissa. These matters so much annoyed the Raja that he was once attempting to obtain five hundred Telingas and provisions from the Chief of Ganjam and together with his own force to invade Puri. It was only on the representation

[15] *C. P. C.* Vol. II No. 1483.
[16] *Bengal Political Consultations* 29 January, 1781.
[17] *Bengal Political Consultations* 4 December, 1759.
[18] A. B. Mahanty (ed). *Madalapanji*, p. 79.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of Raja Ram Pandit, the Maratha Governor of Orissa to the Governor-General at Bengal that the chief of Ganjam was dissuaded to help the Raja's design, which ultimately met with a failure.[19]

The Raja of Mayurbhanj whose country extended over the northern border of Orissa was found occasionally creating disturbances either by instigating rebels against the Marathas or withholding tributes.[20] His disloyalty to the Maratha Government is evident from a letter written by G. Vansittart, an English Officer at Midnapur to the Governor in Bengal, which said that Damodar Bhanj, the Raja of Mayurbhanj "is desirous of shaking off the yoke of the Morattas and becoming a dependent of the English and that his country is so advantageously situated that with a very little assistance from us he would at any time be able to prevent the Morattas from entering into Bengal from the southward.[21]" On 28 February, 1769 Vansittart in another letter to the Governor says "If authentic intelligence (about Marathae invasion) should hereafter arrive.....would you choose that I should enter into a negotiation with th Mohrbunge Raja and engage our protection for his support? I have reason to believe that he would be glad of such an opportunity to shake off the Moratta yoke and the position of this country would in case of Moratta troubles render it extremely convenient to us."[22]

The Raja of Kujang was habituated to plundering vessels wrecked on the coast; he thus acquired vast wealth and was little paying any attention to the orders of

---

[19] *C. P. C.* Vol. V, No. 1224.

[20] *Selections from official letters.* . . . Mayurbhanj, Vol. I letter No. 7

[21] *Ibid letter* No. 20.

[22] *Ibid* letter No. 26.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the Maratha Subahdar of Orissa to refrain from such practice.[23]

Briefly speaking the Rajas of Khurda, Mayurbhanj, Keonjhar, Kujang, Kanika, Dhenkanal, Talcher, Hindol and Angul were troublesome while the rest of the feudatory states were either under full control or more submissive than the others.[24]

Mughalbandi comprised the plain and open part of the country which extended from the Subarnarekha to the border of Khurda and was actually in possession of Government as the royal domain and paid a regular assessment.[25] It was the policy of the Maratha government to destroy as far as practicable the smaller garhs owned by the zamindars in this part if they created any trouble at all.[26]

Mughalbandi was divided into 150 parganas under the management of 32 Amils. Each pargana was generally subdivided into two, three, four or more of mahals or allotments.[27]

The Amil or the Revenue Commissioner was responsible for the revenue assessed in his division entrusted to his charge. Under him were a number of hereditary

---

[23] *C. P. C.* Vol. V. No. 314; *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations* 12 April 1804, No. 13.

[24] *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations* 12 April 1804, No. 13.

[25] *Do*.....1st March, 1804, No. 41.

[26] *Board's Collections*, Vol. 586, No. 14189, p. 96.

[27] *Bengal Revenue Consultations*, 1 August, 1822, No. 5, 15 Oct., 1821 Stirling to Government. A. Stirling was an assisant to the Commissioners for affairs at Cuttack, soon after its conquest by the British. He later on served as Secretary to the Commissioners at Cuttack till the year 1822j when he left the province to take charge of the Persian Department at the Presidency. He had access to all state papers delivered to the British by Gopal Pandit and Narayan Rao Mahashay, two Maratha officers; he ably helped the Commissioner who submitted the first report on the Marathha administration to the authority at Bengal. He submitted the minutes to the government which were published as Stirling's Minutes in 1882.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

revenue collectors who were generally termed as Chaudhuries, Kanungoes, or Talukdars, each in charge of a taluka or subdivision.[28]

The Talukdars collected revenue from the raiyats of Pahikasht villages and through the Muqaddams from the Muqaddamic ones. They were required to keep the raiyats happy, prosperous and contended. In case of oppression over them, they were punished. For example Magun Chaudhuri, who, owing to his oppressive conduct caused the raiyats to abscond, was removed from office; another man named Narayan Chhotaray was given the office of zamindari of pargana Culguri with Kuthmul.[29]

In return of the service they rendered to the State, the Amils as well as the Talukdars were given rent-free lands known as Nankar as remuneration and were allowed on adjustment of accounts certain perquisites and deduction of account on expense of collection.[30] For example the Chaudhuris and Kanungoes i.e. Talukdars of Pargana Jhankar with Sadar jama, sicca rupees 9,293 enjoyed the deduction of 5,000 kahans (kauris) as zamindari kharch or Rusum from a sanad granted by Mania Bapu uncle of Raghuji Bhonsla.[31]

The Muqaddams also enjoyed some hereditary right of office and received a portion of land as Nankar known as Pitrali or patrimonial property.[32]

The Marathas respected neither zamindari nor Muqaddami tenures when it was considered suitable for them to collect direct from the cultivators of the soil. During the Governorship of Rajaram Pandit many hereditary Chaudhuris and Kanungoes i.e. Talukdars of Mughalbandi were set aside and rents were collected direct from

[28] *Ibid*;
[29] *Ibid.*
[30] *Board's Collections*, vol. 585, No. 14189, p. 300.
[31] A. *Stirling. An account* of *Orissa proper*, Appendix p. XXXVIII.
[32] *Board's Collections*, vol. 586, No. 14189, p. 300.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the raiats or through the heads of the villages.[33] For example the Raja of Patia-Sarangagarh had pargana Saibir (Sadar Jama Rs. 13,900) as a zamindari by the minister of Akbar; he was dispossessed of it and was allowed a pension and certain rent-free villages for the purpose of collecting revenue by the Marathas from the heads of the villages.[34]

It is said that the Maratha landholders scarcely had a proprietory rights in their estates. The right which was generally recognized by the Maratha Government was that the legal course of descent was seldom altered and interrupted; every transfer of land was attended with difficulties and expense. The legal heir could not obtain the estate of his ancestors without paying a fine. But this was neither certain in account nor regulated by any fixed principles. A fine was exacted from every transfer of property whether it came up from the operation of law or from the act of the landholders; this formed the part of the revenue of the government.[36]

A settlement known as Hustabood settlement was yearly made; the amount accruing therefrom was duly reported to the Government. The demand of the government was based on the amount of land actually under cultivation.[37]

The gross collection of the land revenue of Orissa of the last twelve years of the Maratha rule including that from the tributary states shows that the revenue of the last four years was higher than some preceding years rising as nearly as 15,00,000 rupees of sorts.[38] It is

[33] *Ibid.*

[34] A. *Stirling, An Account of Orissa Proper Appendix.* p. XI.

[35] *Ibid*, p. 93.

[36] *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations* 29 December, 1803, No. 45.

[37] *Board's collectins*, vol. 586, No. 14189, p. 300.

[38] *Board's collections* Vol. 586, No. 14189, pp. 182-3.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

difficult to give any satisfactory reason for such an increase. One point which may go for a little augmentation of the whole revenue was an increase in the revenue of the Parganas, Pataspur, Kamardachaur, and Bhograi, during this time under a peculiar circumstance. The zamindars of these parganas were exacting money from the landholders on various pretences, who paid their revenue through them. That amount was more than that the zamindars paid to the officers of the government. The landholders in a body went to Cuttack. They represented to the Subahdar of Orissa that the zamindars, estates were capable of paying a larger revenue than ever received from them; they were willing to pay to the government more than the government had so far received from them through the zamindars. The Subahdar was satisfied that the lands would very well bear the increase; so he passed an order for an increase of sicca Rs. 20,000 in the revenue to be paid to the government in the presence of both the parties.[39]

Stirling has estimated the land revenue of the province at 15,00,000 of sorts. But if we take the average of the last twelve years gross collection it comes to about 13,90,000 rupees of sorts only.[40]

The country being watered by a large number of rivers was occasionally subject to violent innundations which resulted in crop failure leading to scarcity and famine.[41] The Government constructed embankments at those places where banks were specially low in order to guard against spill of the rivers during flood. One of them constructed at the mouth of river Subarnarekha

[39] *Bengal Secret and Political consultations* 29 Dec., 1804, No. 45.

[40] *Board's collections, vol.* 586, No. 1489, pp. 182-3; *Asiatic Researches* vol. XV pp. 215-17; *Bengal Revenue consultations* 17 July 1818 No. 15, 13 May 1818, Ewer to government (Appendix).

[41] *C. P. C.* Vol. VIII, No. 1018.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

did immense good to the people.[42] But the measures taken were not adequate to ward off such calamities from the country. During the outbreak of a famine in 1769-70 rice was so dear that it was to be had at two seers per rupee. In 1182 Amali (1775 A. D.) another dreadful scarcity of grain was experienced at Cuttack. Rice was hardly to be purchased in the bazar of Cuttack at 10 pans (Kauris) for Cuttack seer. In the mufassal paddy rose as high as 12 pans per gaun, Kulthi to 12-2, and Mandia 1—4. Considering its destructive effect a remission of seven lakhs of rupees was granted in the revenue of that year.[43] It was a general practice with the Government, to grant deduction of revenue from the raiyats and so also from the zamindars, in the event of sudden innundation, excessive rain, drought or other calamities.[44] The Government also made provisions for giving Takavi advances to the cultivators.[45]

Besides land revenue, the pilgrim tax was adding to the source of income of the country. There were only two inlets to the town and the temple of Jagannath and those were on the high road that passed through the province from the north to the south, of India. The southern inlet was close to the town while the northern one was within a distance of less than a mile. The Maratha Government appointed some officers and guards where the tax was collected. The amount of collection annually made from the pilgrims at these outlets estimated from $2\frac{1}{2}$ to 3 lakhs of rupees.[46]

[42] *Bengal District Gazetteer*, Balasore (Cal. 1907), p. iii.
[43] A. *Stirling—An account of Orissa Proper* p. 93.
[44] *Board's collections*, vol. 26, No. 14187, p. 24.
[45] *Fifth Report from the Select Committee on the affairs of E.I. Company* (1812), p. 435.
[46] *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations*—1st. March, 1804, No. 16; In Orme's Manuscripts, the fees collected by the Marathas from the pilgrims have been stated to be three lakhs; Orme's MSS. India Vol. 18, p. 5120.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

In the pre-Maratha period weaving industries flourished in various parts of the country, most important of which were at Hariharpur, Balasore and Sore. At Hariharpur alone about three thousand weavers were engaged in manufacturing cloth of all sorts which was exported to the foreign countries.[47] Calicoes of Balasore and Sore were much appreciated particularly by the merchants of England and France. This profitable trade which brought a good deal of money to the country had met its gradual decline during Maratha rule chiefly because of the decline of the English, Dutch and Danish factories which were patronising the weaving industries for their business purpose. Yet the weavers as a class continued their business and made good profits.[48]

Paddy was profusely cultivated and cheaply available to be exported to Bengal[49] and in larger quantities towards Madras through the small ports of Golrah, Harishpur, Bishenpur and Manikpatna at Chilka.[50]

Salt was manufactured in plenty along the sea coast of Orissa; it was available very cheaply at four and a half maunds per Arcot rupee at the place of manufacture.[51] The amount of salt exported to Berar was three lakh maunds per annum.[52] The whole amount of salt exported to Bengal is not known. The British Company was in the habit of importing salt from Orissa at the average rate

---

[47] Wilson, *Early Annals of the English in Bengal* London 1895), Vol. I, p. 15.

[48] *Early European Travellers in Nagpur territories*, pp 22-53.

[49] J. Long—*Selections fron unpublished Records*, p. 538.

[50] *Board's collections*, vol. 587, No. 14190, p. 193; Orme MSS India, Vol. XV, p. 1123.

[51] *Bengal Revenue Consultations*, 17 July, 1818, No. 15, 13 May, 1818 Ewer to Governmedt.

[52] *Bengal Civil Judicial consultations*, 5 Sept., 1805, No. 26, Encl. 4 May, 1804, Govt. to Mulville and Harcourt. Add MSS 13811, p. 57, no date. August 1885, Melville and Harcourt to Government.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of 68,269 maunds per annum during a period of ten years prior to the British conquest.[53] From a statement made by Raja Ram Pandit, the Maratha Governor of Orissa, it appears that the income of the Maratha Government from the salt sold in Bengal amounted to two lakhs of rupees per annum.[54]

A considerable trade existed between Cuttack and regions west of Orissa. Contillo (Collo) was an important centre of trade. Merchants of Berar and inland parts of India (Hindustan) brought cotton and other goods to this place where they met the traders of the coast. After the sale of their commodities while returning they carried with them salt manufactured in the Auranga in the Chilka.[55] The duty upon salt alone exported from the Auranga in the Chilka lake into the Western regions amounted to Rs. 4,500/- in Kauris.[56] The extensiveness of the above trade may be understood from the following example.[57]

Sambhu Bharti was a Mahajan of Cuttack who had Kothis (salt golas) in different parts of Khurda Raja's territory and stood security to pay Khurda-Raja's peshcash to Maratha Government to 10,000 rupees on condition of being permitted to carry on his commerce duty-free.

The following information is available to form an idea of the total revenue of the state. According to Foster's account, Cuttack province produced 17 lakhs of rupees out of which 7 lakhs were deducted for military

---

[53] *Bengal Salt and Opium consultations* 26 Dec., 1817, No. 3, 9 Decm. 1817, Board of Trade to Government.

[54] *C. P. C.* Vol. VI, No. 1242.

[55] *Early European Travellers in Nagpur Territories*, p. 21.

[56] *Bengal Revenue Consultations*, 17 July, 1818, No. 15, 13 May, 1818, Ewer to Government.

[57] *Ibid*

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

expenses at Cuttack and the rest was sent to the Nagpur treasury.[58] Rennel (in 1793 A. D.) says "the sum of his (Mudoji's) revenue is variously stated. Some have reckoned his part of Berar (Nagpur territories) at 84 lakhs of rupees per annum and Cuttack at 24 etc.[59] Leckie says "he (Rajaram, the Maratha governor of Orissa) pays the Raja of Nagpur ten lakhs of rupees out of the collections which is estimated at 22 lakhs including what is sent from Balasore.[60]" In a letter on 29 December 1780 Rajaram Pandit writes to Beniram Pandit "the army requires for its maintenance four lakhs rupees a month, at this rate the expense of six months amount to 25 (sicca lakhs) where as the collections of Cuttack for the whole year do not exceed 20 lakhs.[61] According to Orme's MSS. the whole revenue of the country amounted from 20 lakhs to 25 lakhs rupees.[62]

Foster's account shows the lowest figure while the statements of Rennell, Leckie and Orme's MSS. put the collections at a higher rate. The statement made by Rajaram Pandit perhaps tends to show the normal income of the country. In view of the conflicting opinions given by various authorities the only thing which can be generalised is that while the normal income of the country did not exceed 20 lakhs of rupees, at times, the amount rose to the maximum amount of 25 lakhs of rupees at the time of prosperity.

In the absence of suitable bridges over the rivers for effectually opening a communication and intercourse between one part of the country with the other, the general improvements of roads and ferries received the special

[58] *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations* 2 *May*, 1788 Appendix.
[59] J. Rennel, *Memoir of a map of Hindustan*, pp. i-xxxi.
[60] *Early European Travellers in Eighteenth Century*, p 55.
[61] *C. P. C.* Vol. V, No. 2069.
[62] Orme's *India MSS* Vol. 18, p. 5119.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

attention of the Maratha Government. The Marathas granted jagir for the support of ferries most important of which were at the rivers Mahanadi and Kathjuri. The land granted for maintenance of the Mahanadi ferry amounted to 12 battis or 240 bighas while the grant for the support of the Kathjuri ferry was 10 battis or 200 bighas. The persons who accepted the grants were bound to keep boats for the public purpose; such boats were provided by the owners themselves. The troops, the public officers and stores were crossed without toll but the grantees enjoyed the liberty of accepting reasonable toll for the carriage of other men and cattle. E. Watson, Judge of Circuit Court says, "Under the grants thus assigned by the Maratha Government, the ferries flourished by far the best "I ever saw in any part of India, they were decked and capable of carrying several elephants, carriages and palanquins together they must have been built at a considerable cost and kept up at a very great expense. All the purpose of a ferry as a common high way amply and fully assured under this arrangement." If the grantees did not discharge their duties to the satisfaction of the public, the only punishment which was inflicted on them was to confiscate some of the lands secured by them.[63]

The Subahdar of the province was at the head of both civil and military administration with his headquarter at Cuttack. Under him was a Kiladar in the charge of the fort of Barabati with a reserve which composed of musketeers, horse and foot. The number of the force stationed at the fort of Barabati was not same at all times. By the time Lackie travelled through the country the force consisted of 1000 Maratha and 150 Sikh horsemen and 500 irregular foot.[64] From the informa-

[63] *Board's collections* No. 14178, pp. 239-241.
[64] *Early European Travellers in the Nagpur territories*, p. 2.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

tion given by an Englishman who visited Cuttack in the latter part of the eighteenth century the garrison composed of 300 musketeers and 20 or 30 horse.[65]

Under the control of the Subahdar there were a number of military stations each under the charge of a faujdar with some horse and foot. There were some chaukis under him; each of them consisted of a thanadar with some men. Garrisons were placed in some parts of the country one of them was in charge of a faujdar commanding the fort of Aurangabad.[66] A party of thirty six horse and five hundred foot was usually stationed at Balasore. A strong Maratha station at Fulwar ghat guarded the entrance of the town of Balasore. Some other important military stations that may be mentioned here were at Sore, Padmapur and Jajpur on the southern side of the river Brahmani.[67] According to Forster the number of cavalry stationed in Orissa amounted to 2,000.[68] It appears that when the British attacked Orissa the military strength was increased. 1000 matchlock men at the command of a Maratha chief were stationed at Guzar Ghat, Narasinghpur, Ramachandrapur and Kathipur in Mayurbhanj. One detachment consisting of 3,000 cavalry and infantry, under the command of Balaji took post on the north bank of the Mahanadi to fight against the British. A force of about 5,000 infantry marched towards Manikpatna for the same purpose[69].

---

[65] *Orme India MSS* Vol. 18, p. 5119. This is an information given by an Englishman who visited Cuttack in the latter part of the 16th century; the name is not mentioded in MSS.

[66] *Early European Travellers in the Nagpur territories*, pp. 3, 14.

[67] *Early European Travellers in Nagpur Territories*, pp. 4, 8-12.

[68] *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations* 2 May, 1788-Appendix.

[69] *Add MSS* 13609, pp. 43-5 (a report from Budgaban Naik Kotwal of the Company's factory at Balasore, no date; *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations* 1 March, 1804, No. 26, Encl. 24 September, 1803, Ferguson to Government.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The faujdar enjoyed both military and civil authority. He looked to the general order and discipline of his division, watched the movements of the strangers, supervised trade and collection of duties on grains and other commodities on the way.[70] Particularly the faujdar of Balasore exercised his power over a large area, collected revenue from the tributary states of Nilgiri together with the annual tribute of Mayurbhanj, remitted it to Cuttack.[71] He controlled the disturbances in the frontier;[72] he suppressed the rebellion in the neighbouring feudatory states.[73]

The faujdars were given lands as their remuneration.[74] The sanads granted to the zamindars required them to attend the faujdars with the contingent of paiks on all occasions for subduing refractory subjects.[75]

The Amil was empowered to investigate and try both civil and criminal cases. Minor cases were settled by the zamindar in his revenue jurisdiction or when referred to by the Amil. The popular mode of disposing of cases was to refer them to arbitration. Harcourt the British Commissioner of Cuttack observed "even in felonies as in civil disputes all was arranged by compromise." The arbitration court or Panchayat generally consisted of five members chosen by the parties themselves or by the officer to whom the matter was referred. More heinous crimes were brought before the Subahdar of Cuttack.[76]

---

[70] *C.P.C* Vol. I, No. 827; Translations of Pesian letters received 1792, No. 303; Translations of Persian letters issued 1792, No. 312.

[71] *Early European Travellers in Nagpur territories*, p. 22.

[72] *C.P.C.* Vol. VI, No. 556.

[73] *C. P. C.* Vol. I, No. 1763.

[74] *Early European travellers in Nagpur territories.*

[75] A Stirling, *An account of Orissa proper appendix* p. XI.

[76] *Bengal Criminal Judicial Consultations* L. P. 28 April, 1818, No. 37, February, 1818 Ewer to Government; Add. MSS. 13610, p. 228, 22 March, 1805, Harcourt to Shawe.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

There was no distinction between civil and criminal cases. Proceedings were simple. Ewer wrote "all proceedings were summary, no written deposition taken and no form of trial observed." He was of opinion that the Oriya could "make his complaint heard without a prospect of incurring a loss neither of time and money." Justice was available quickly. Ewer also thought that under the Maratha government "Heinous offences were exceedingly rare."[77]

Generally the time-honoured customs were followed in determining the nature of punishment. A person committing a petty offence like stealing firewood was often punished with a small fine.[78] For serious offences the offender was generally imprisoned or mutilated.[79] In default of human evidence the Panchayat sometimes resorted to trial by ordeal like holding a red-hot iron or putting the hand in boiling ghee.[80]

---

[77] *Beng. Cr. Jud. Consultations* L. P. 28, Apr. 1818, No. 37, 27 Feb. 1818 Ewer to Govt.

[78] *Bengal Revenue Consultations January-April*, 1791 pp. 626-7 (Resolution of Government).

[79] C. P. C. Vol. V. No. 1977.

[80] *Bengal Revenue Consultations*—January-April, 1791, pp. 626-7 (Resolutions of Governmedt).

A person was once accused of theft and brought under confinement by the zamindars of Dhi Bhograi. As he insisted on his innocence an ordeal was arranged in presence of a panchayat in the following manner.

The accused was brought to a place where the Thakur (God) was situated; an axe having weight of five seers was made red hot in fire and seven leaves of Pipal tree together with seven threads of silk were tied to it. The iron smith took it up with his tongs and placed it on the hand of the accused; in front were drawn seven lines on the ground at the termination of which was placed a sheaf of grass. The accused then took the axe in his hand, walked over the seven lines and threw it on the grass according to the instruction of some Brahmins.

The Ordeal of ghee was performed in the following way. Ghee was put to flame; when it was too hot a ring was placed in it which the accused was to take out in his hand. If his hand did not burn he was declared not guilty. All the above ordeals were to be performed according to *Śāstras* (Scripture).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The Amil was responsible to the government for maintaining law and order in his revenue jurisdiction. The zamindars or other revenue officers exercised police powers under the Amil. The Khandaits were responsible for maintaining law and order under the zamindars. One of their chief duties was to seize offenders and produce them before the zamindar. Under the Khandait were a number of chaukidars.[81]

During the Muslim period the worship of Lord Jagannath could not be performed with security, because of the occasional raid of the Muslims over Hindu gods. The priests of the temple of Jagannath often removed the idol of Jagannath to a place of safety very often towards south in fear of its being dishonoured in the hands of the Muslims.[82] But the Marathas, being Hindus, were much interested in encouraging the worship of Hindu gods. The government established a charity amounting to 20,000 kahans of kauris (about Rs. 6,000) to be paid annually which was known as anna-chhatra. The money was paid chiefly to the following types of persons by monthly instalments.

Some amount was given to the Brahmins who were in charge of 32 Thakurs or idols and to look to the Puja ceremonies and their other functions. Certain amount was spent for persons most of whom were old widows while the rest was expended for giving cooked provisions and cloth to the poor travellers.[83] Money[84] was also

---

[81] *Bengal Revenue Consultations*, Aug. 1822, 15 Oct., 1821. Stirling to Government.

[82] J. Sarkar, *Studies of Aurangzeb's reign* p. 247; Reyaz (Eng. Trans.) p. 303; A. B. Mahanty (ed) *Madalapanji*, pp. 65-7, 76.

[83] *Letter Dt.* 28.2.1847 from Gouldesburg. Commissioner at Cuttack to the Secretary, Govt. of Bengal, regarding history of Anna-chhatra fund file No. 606, D 28.47 in the Record Room of Board of Revenue, Cuttack, Orisssa.

[84] *Ibid.*

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

granted to Muslim mosques for their maintenance. Kadam Rasul alone was given a monthly grant of about Rs. 75/-.

Brahmins were sometimes given lands as rewards and Gosains were occasionally given money for pilgrimage. When Motiger Summer and other Gosains came to Cuttack in the rains in 1784 for the performance of religious ceremony at the temple of Jagannath they were given one lakh of rupees in charity by Rajaram Pandit, the Governor of Orissa, by the instruction of Mundoji Bhonsla to that purpose.[85]

Particularly the worship of Jagannath and the management of the temple received the special attention of the Maratha Government. In order to add to the prosperity of this religious institution every encouragement was shown to the pilgrims intending to visit the temple by readily issuing passports for their purpose and often requesting the Government of other States to issue the same for the interest of the pilgrims.[86] As a result, pilgrims from all parts of India particularly from Bengal, Banaras, Rajputna and Central Province came in large number to visit Jagannath.[87] Assignment of lands by religious people to Jagannath was common. For example in 1773 A. D. Raja Raj Narain, Zamindar of Kashijora in Midnapur alone assigned 960 bighas of land in the village of Purusottampur for Bhog (offering) to Jagannath in the name of Govinda Das a representative of Mahant (head of a religious order) Sukdeo Das of the temple of Jagannath.[88] Another example may be given

---

[85] *C. P. C.* Vol. VII, No. 38.

[86] *C. P. C.* Vol. VII, Nos. 371, 861.

[87] *C. P. C.* Vol. IV, Nos. 1094, 1104, 1224, 1367, 1395, 1475, 1591.

Vol. V Nos. 10, 604, 1247, 1386;

Vol. VI No. 927, Vol. VII, Nos. 188, 189.

[88] *C. P. C* Vol. VII, No. 1428; Vol. VIII, No. 142.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

here. Bhonsla Raja and his family and Raja of Khurda and his family assigned the annual assessment of certain villages, which amounted to the large sum of 148373 K. 9 P. 8g (in Kauris) to provide Jagannath with Bhog.[89]

Brahmachari Goswain, a Maratha guru got prepared one statue of goddess Lakshmi in gold and another statue of Narayan Deva in silver. He placed the former on the left side of Jagannath on the throne; the latter was kept in the southern chamber. The temple was white-washed; many presents were made to Jagannath.[90] Offerings of an elephant, cloths and jewels to Jagannath were also made by Chimnaji Sau during his visit to Puri.[91]

Formerly the Raja of Khurda was the Superintendent of the temple of Jagannath. He was removed from this office during the rule of Sheo Bhatt Sathe. Then the temple was brought under the direct administration of the Marathas. A person was appointed on behalf of the Government for the management of land rents attached to the temple and for the general superintendence of receipts and disbursements. He also acted as the controlling authority regarding the regular discharge of the respective duties of the officers attached to the temple.[92]

Whatever offerings were given within the walls of the temple by the pilgrims to the priests and officers of the temple were utilised for the expenses of it along with the rents derived from the lands attached to the temple itself. At the annual celebration of two particular festi-

---

[89] *Letter*, Dt. 10 June, 1805 from C. Grome, Collector, Jagannath Revenue Department to Thomas Fortesque, Secretary to the Commissioner of affairs of Cuttack, Vol. II, Issue II 1805—Orissa National Department to Thomas Fortesque, Secretary to the Commissioner of affairs of Cuttack, Vol. II, Issue II 1805—Orissa National Archives, Bhubaneswar, Orissa.

[90] A. B. Mahanty (ed), *Madalapanji*, p. 81.

[91] *C. P. C.* Vol. V, No. 1950.

[92] *Bengal Secret and Political Consultations* 1 March, 1804, No. 16; F. 20

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

vals the extra expense met by the Government amounted to 30 to 40 thousand rupees annually.[93]

All persons working in the temple of Jagannath were the servants of the Maratha Government; all disputes in respect of duties of the Sewaks were to be referred to that Government for final decision. The offices of the Sewaks were ordinarily hereditary. But sometimes some of the offices of the Sewaks could be purchased by payment to the Government. For example, Gopabandhu Mahapatra once went to the Raja of Nagpur from the Court of Raja Birakishore Deva of Khurda. He purchased in the temple of Jagannath the office of Chhatisa Niyoga Nāik; so he was awarded a state palanquin with golden pots, one pair of shawls, turbans, an ornamented umbrella, chauri, fan of peacock's feather and two torches to be used in the procession.[94]

The Maratha government was not in favour of effecting any change in the time-honoured custom of the worship of Lord Jagannath. Once an attempt was made under the leadership of Lakshman Nath Krishna Goswami who was addicted with the dogmatic views of Śankaracharya to place one idol on the jewelled throne of Lord Jagannath. In consequence of the dispute arising between the Vaiṣṇava-panthis and Śaṅkaracārya-panthis, the saint and the chief of the order of Śrīkṣetra stopped worshipping Jagannath. He sent a Vaishnava to Raja of Nagpur to launch a protest. As a result, Lakshmana Nath Krishna Goswami was warned not to introduce anything new and that he should pay due regard to the old practice and create confidence in the head of the order, so that he would continue the worship of Jagannath.[95]

---

[93] *Ibid.*

[94] *P. R. letter* No. 1 from Chhatisa Niyog Nayak family at Puri.

[95] *Letter* No. 245 (*A document preserved in Orissa National Archives*),

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Puri, as a seat of the temple of Jagannath long saw the rise of a number of religious institutions or monastic houses which were known as Mathas. The object of establishing these Mathas was to feed the beggars and ascetics and to give religious instructions to their disciples. So they received generally encouragement from the Maratha Government, either by occasional grant of lands or some privileges. The abot of Sri Ram Das or Dakhin Parusa Math was the guru (preceptor) of the Maratha governors of Orissa; they made rich endowments to this Math. Another Math known as Uttar Parusa Math was granted an estate, Kodhar rent-free by Raghuji Bhonsla; the revenue of the estate was to be devoted to the expenses of Mohan Bhog of Jagannath.[96] Braja Deva Goswami a preacher of Chaitanya cult had a Math at Puri; he was exempted from paying any tax for all the goods he brought from the Garjats for the religious purpose.[97] The government also took interest in assisting some heads of the Maths for recovering money and property belonging to Jagannath, which were left outside the country.[98]

With the advent of the Marathas in the country a new type of nobility developed. That class of people rose into prominence owing to the grace and favour of the Maratha Subahdar. They strengthened the hold of the Maratha Government over this country.

Rich men or the people of higher status used horses and mares for dignity and fashion to cover distance at an age when there were no modern vehicles. People on horseback were looked with respect by the people of lower

---

[96] *Bengal District Gazetteer, Puri*, Vol. XIII (Cal. 1908), pp. 122, 270.

[97] *Journal of Kalinga Historical Research Society*, Vol. I, Sept. 19 No. 2, pp. 139-42.

[98] *Translations of Persian letters received* 1794, No. 153.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

status. The higher class people who had some property or power were generally allowed to enjoy some exclusive rights over the others in the state. One of them was the use of palanquin; only big Maratha officers, kings and zamindars were authorised to use palanquin while the people of lower status were forbidden to do so.[99]

It was a general custom in the country that if a person desired an interview with a superior officer or a person of very high status, he should not approach him empty-handed. He had to make presents as befitting the status or rank of the person interviewed. Such presents were known as Nazarana. If a respected foreigner had to interview a Maratha Officer exchange of presents was also not uncommon. All the Subahdars of Orissa who went to Nagpur had to make presents to the Raja. Similarly all the people in Orissa who interviewed the Subahdar had to make like presents. Such practices were also not unknown in the feudatory states of Orissa where the kings interviewed were formally offered presents.[100]

Generally the hosts entertained their guests at their house by requesting them to seat on the mat spread for that purpose; but in case of rich ones they were seated on cloth spread on a carpet.[101] It was a usual practice that the guests were offered pan and attar as soon as they took their seats. In the like manner after the ceremony of the distribution of pan and attar was over the company broke up.[102]

Hunting was a favourite pastime with the higher section of the people. Orissa was considered as a natural zoological garden for its rich store of various animals.

[99] *C. P. C.* Vol. V. Nos. 1977, 2070.
[100] *C. P. C.* Vol. VIII, No. 620.
[101] *Early English travellers in Nagpur territories*, p. 56.
[102] *Ibid*; C. P. C. Vol. VIII, No. 630; C. P. C. Vol. V, No. 1977.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Sometimes there was demand from the neighbouring states for supply of some animals like lion.[103]

Pan was commonly chewed by the people; people of higher status smoked tobacco[104] ; opium was also taken by many.[105]

Music and dance received patronage from the kings and rich people. Dancing boys appeared in the public to show their performances in royal ceremonies. Dancing girls also amused the kings and nobles by their dancing performances. Most of the songs sung by the dancing boys or girls related to the achievements of Vishnu in his several incarnations.[106]

There were story-tellers who could amuse the people by their interesting stories.[107]

People believed in supersitions. If a man suffered from fever occasionally five or six men held the patient in a sitting posture while the doctor spoke some enchanted words blowing in his face at each period. Sometimes people aggravated his rage by holding a burning horse's hoof so that all the smoke went up his nostrils.[108]

At Bhadrak weary pilgrims going to sleep in the mango groves woke up frequently stark-naked owing to an intoxicating preparation put into their noses in order to make them senseless for taking away everything from them. Such thing was generally attributed to some supernatural power.[109]

Due examination of documents including the religious grants reveals that three types of languages were

---

[103] Vol. V. No. 1978.

[104] *Early European travellers in Nagpur territories*, p. 13.

[105] *Ibid* p. 5; H. R. Ghosal,—Economic transaction in Bengal Residency, p. 127.

[106] *Early European travellers in Nagpur territories*, pp. 39-40.

[107] *Ibid*, p. 13.

[108] *Ibid*, p. 41.

[109] *Ibid*, p. 10.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

used in them. Both Persian and Maratha languages were used in Court and Public offices. Most of the records found in the Orissa Government Archives or in private custody of some old families of Orissa are written either in Persian or in Marathi or in both. Others are of trilingual character bearing Marathi, Persian and Oriya.

People used commonly quill pen and ink prepared locally to write chiefly on conuntry-made papers.[110]

The time-honoured practice of writing on bundle of palm leaves with the iron pen continued during the Maratha period. Paper was hardly used by the common man for his purpose. It was considered that palm leaves would last longer than the papers written over. So poems composed, translations made from Sanskrit works, account kept, were recorded in the palm leaves. While voluminous works appear to have been written on palm leaves during the Maratha period, yet palm leaves received scant regard from the Maratha Government to be used for official purposes.[111]

---

[110] G. B. Toynbee, *A sketch of the History of Orissa*, p. 70.
[111] *Ibid.*

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ON THE IMPORT OF A PAURĀṆIC VERSE

By Dr. Viman Chandra Bhattacharyya

The verse in question runs thus :

Eka āsīd yajurvedas tam caturdhā vyakalpayat /
cāturhotram abhūd yasmins tena yajñam athākarot //[1]

The verse means that there was one Veda—the *Yajurveda*. It was divided into fourfold in accordance with the fourfold priestly duties and by that (he) performed Yajña.

This is a counterblast to the inveterate belief that the *Ṛgveda* is the original Veda[2] and the *Yajurveda* appears late in the field by way of liturgical compilation. On the other hand, the facts that from a study of the metres and some sporadical instances of misrepresentation based on the *Ṛkprātiśākhya* it has been proved by scholars that the text-tradition of the *Ṛgveda* was undergoing through ages a process of steady stablilization which, when complete at a comparatively late date was put to writing only at a much later period at the hands of the final redactors[3] and that a number of *i*-stems and *u*-stems of Indo-European antiquity have been retained only in the *Ṛgveda*,[4] establish its antiquity over the other Vedas beyond question. We, therefore, face a curious contradiction and hence the scope of this article.

---

[1] *Viṣṇu Purāṇa*, 3.3.11.

[2] Griffith, *Hymns of the Atharvaveda*, preface, p. 2.

[3] *The History and Culture of the Indian People*, Vol. 1, Ch. XVI, pp. 336—7.

[4] *Ibid.*, p. 338. Ghosh has discussed the *i*-stems and *u*-stems in his *Linguistic Introduction to Sanskrit*, pp. 131—2.

Ludwig (*Der Rigveda*, Band III, p. 92), however, holds that some texts of the *Sāmaveda* have retained their original archaic forms much more closely than their corresponding ṛk-parallelisms. It should be noted that this theory of Ludwig has been severely criticized by Oldenberg (*Prolegomena*, pp. 288ff.)

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The religious rites prescribed in the Purāṇas are of Gṛhya character and they do not require the three Śrauta fires for their accomplishment. Elsewhere,[5] I have discussed that the Vedic Yajñadharma, for some obvious reasons and inherent drawbacks, gradually recedes back or is relegated to a subsidiary position in the new social set up of the Purāṇa period when religion emerges in a new garb differing from its pre-Purāṇic counterpart in point of domesticity. The *Viṣṇu Purāṇa*[6] gives us a story according to which the household (Gārhapatya) fire is the original one and the introduction of the other two is made by Aila Purūravas at a much later epoch and I observed in my last article that 'by the introduction of the aforesaid myth (and by declaring that the *Yajurveda* is the original Veda) the authors of the Purāṇas were able to convince the society that the Gṛhya rituals preceded their Śrauta counterparts in the evolution of ritual history and, therefore, a relegation, if not rejection, of the latter would only mean a go back to a practice sanctified by both originality and antiquity.'[7] The *Vāyu Purāṇa*[8] reads :

asvatthād araṇiṁ kṛtvā mathitvāgniṁ yathāvidhi /
mathitvāgniṁ tridhā kṛtvā hy ayajat sa narādhipaḥ//
eko'gniḥ pūrvamāsīd vai ailas trīṁstānakalpayat ///

In the light of the aforesaid myth it becomes impossible to deny a chronological priority of those mantras in the *Ṛgveda* that are originally composed even in that age for being used in domestic rites.[9] We can reasonably conjecture that the Vedic Aryans develop at their

[5] See my article 'Paurāṇic Tradition—Is it Vedic ?' (Journal of the G. N. Jha Research Institute., Vol., XV pp. 109—33).

[6] 4.6.35—46. Comp. *eko'gnir ādāvabhavat ailena tv atra manvantare tretā pravartitā-ibid.*

[7] My article referred to in f. n. 5, (p. 132.)

[8] 91.46—7.

[9] Keith, *Religion and Philosophy of the Veda* (H. O. S., vol., 31), p. 256.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

religious commencements elaborate system of domestic rites before working up a highly complex structure of Śrauta ceremonials. Such a conjecture involves the admission of the existence of a Gṛhya literature even before the Brāhmaṇas which view we are scarcely qualified to accept without bringing forward a theory of wholesale destruction to explain the disappearence of this Gṛhya literature preceding the Brāhmaṇas. Nor is there convincing proof at our disposal to state with confidence why the agencies of destruction should have singled out this particular branch of literature. On the contrary, circumstancial evidence does not permit us to declare convincingly that systematised treatises on Gṛhya rituals in the pre-Brāhmaṇa period were waning. The Sūtra literature, as a class, is composed in mnemonic catchwords, highly artificial and enigmatic, and this peculiar style is generally held to have been necessitated, with all probability, by an urge to devise means for easily memorizing the entire exposition of the intricate Vedic rituals in an age when teaching being mainly oral, the intricacies of Vedic ritual tradition demand a transmission from teacher to student and from generation to generation as well with meticulous care.[10] An overnight appearence of Gṛhya Sūtras without a hypothesis of a literary background representing, in phases, the traditional expositions of Gṛhya rituals, remain logically inexplicable. In other words, Saṁhitā> Brāhmaṇa > Śrauta Sūtras in the Śrauta field should logically correspond to a like order in the Gṛhya field too.

[10] Comp. tataś ca coditānām karmaṇāṁ sukhāvabodhāya bhagavān baudhāyanaḥ kalpam akalpayat yato brāhmaṇānāṁ ānantyaṁ duravabodhatayā. . . . ato na taiḥ sukhaṁ karmāvabodha iti kalpasūtrāṇīmāni pratiniyata-śākhāntarāṇy aṅgīcakruḥ pūrvācāryāḥ kalpasya vaiśadya-lāghava-kārtsnya-prakaraṇaśuddhyādibhiḥ prakarṣair yuktasya—Sāyaṇa's commentary on the *Baudhāyana Sūtras*.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

If it be held that the division of the Veda into the distinct collections (Saṁhitās) is needed by the growing complexties of rituals and that this is done to facilitate the performance of the respective duties of the four chief priests, it must be admitted after due consideration of the aforesaid Aila-Purūravas-myth that the *Yajurveda* referred to in the *Viṣṇu Purāṇa*[11] is the Veda for the Gṛhya rituals and is the earliest forerunner of the whole Vedic literature we possess to-day.

The story of Aila Purūravas introducing three fires in place of one, stripped of the Purāṇic grafts and overgrowths, simply means that Gṛhya rites around the domestic hearth (Gārhapatya Agni) prevail first and the development of a complicated and elaborate ritual of 'Triad of Fires' (the Vaitānika or Śrauta sacrificial ceremonial)[12] is only a late introduction., According to the *Rāmāyaṇa*, Purūravas Aila is the son of a ruler migrating from Bahli in Central Asia to mid-India. According to *Matsya Purāṇa*,[13] Ilāvṛta Varṣa in Central Asia is the realm of the parent of Purūravas. Roychoudhury holds that Bahli refers 'doubtless to Balkh or Bactria in the Oxus valley.'[14]

Burrow says[15] that 'Aryan invasion took place in successive phases, and not in one simultaneous movement.' It may not therefore be an improbable conjecture that use of three fires in sacrificial ceremonial makes its headway in Indian soil along with the advent of a later party of invading Aryans coming from the Oxus valley of which Aila Purūravas happens to be a leader-member, and before

[11] 3.3.11. [12] VII. 103. 21-2. [13] 12.14ff.

[14] *Political History of Ancient India*, (sixth ed.) p. 25, f.n. 17. See also *IHQ*, 1933, p. 37—39.

[15] *The Sanskrit Language*, p. 31.

[16] 'One Veda' is referred to in many other passages : *vedaś caiko caturdhā tu vyasyate dvāparādiṣu—Matsya Purāṇa*, 144. 11; *sa vedam ekaṁ bahudhā vibhajiṣyati te sutaḥ—ibid.*, 14.16; also *Viṣṇu Purāṇa*, 3.2.56—7.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

this, performance of Gṛhya rituals is the normal practice with the Indo-Aryans. It may allowably be regarded that the 'One Veda' of which the Purāṇas speak is[16] the Veda that prevailed in the then Indo-Aryan society as a basic guide-book of Gṛhya ceremonies before the Śrauta rituals were introduced by Aila Purūravas. We may assume a hypothetical name for this Veda and call it 'Gṛhya Yajurveda'[17] for the purpose of our discussion. Even when the ceremonial structure is transformed to the Śrauta pattern by Aila Purūravas, let us further assume, a section of the people cannot adapt to this new system wrought overnight and, continues, as before, maintaining only one fire—the Domestic hearth. Or, in other words, this section still remains loyal to the *Gṛhya Yajurveda*.[18] The Purāṇas refer to a class of brāhmaṇas known as Ekāgni.[19] This reference may be taken as a corroboraion of our hypothesis of the *Gṛhya Yajurveda*. It means that even during the Purāṇas a class of brāhmaṇas exists outside the fold of the Śrauta cult. The *Gṛhya Yajurveda* seems to retain its hold on its followers since the earliest period to so great an extent that even its strong rival—the Śrauta ritual system—cannot drive it to extinction.

Now, if the existence of Ekāgni brāhmaṇas be admitted, a Vedic basis for their creed cannot possibly be denied to them. Which and where is that Veda ?—is a moot point to decide. We can bring our hypothetical *Gṛhya Yajurveda* to our rescue at this point probably with satisfaction.

[17] Comp. *gṛhasthopaniṣat purāṇī—Matsya Purāṇa*, 40.3.

[18] In the *Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa*, 62.45f. We are told that the Vaidik Dharma procedes the Saṁhitā Dharma. As the compilation of the three Saṁhitās is made with a view to the Śrauta ritual, the latter evidently stands for the Yajñadharma and its predecessor—Vaidik Dharma —most probably stands for the hoary Gṛhya cult conducted according to the *Gṛhya Yajurveda* of which the Purāṇas speak as the 'One Veda'.

[19] Comp. *agnīṣomayamābhyāṁ tu kuryād āpyāyanaṁ budhaḥ, dakṣiṇāgnau pratīte vā ya ekāgnir dvijottamaḥ—Matsya Purāṇa* 16.33 ; and
ekāgner eka eva syān nirvāpo darvikā tathā—ibid., 16.40.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

It is no wonder that with their growing supremacy as the highest caste of the Āryan society, the brāhmaṇas, at one time, drape a glittering mantle of Śrauta ritual with a corresponding monstrous literature—the three Vedas—around the phantoms of the Gṛhya ritual system which gradually becomes moribund and ultimately extinct under the pressure of the intruder cult. In fact, the Purāṇas believe not only in a dangerous tampering in the body of the Vedas but also in its reshuffling in all climes and all ages.[20] This is particularly true of the *Yajurveda* which being tampered and reshuffled at different hands assumes three different names—Śyāmāyanī, Ālambī and Āruṇī—in the northern, eastern and the central part of the country respectively.[21] Hint of the wrong method pursued by Śākalya in course of his splitting up of the Vedic mantras into their constituent Pada-units is also dropped.[22]

It should be noted that the Purāṇas sometimes speak of the pauruṣeyatva of the Vedas. K. Nilakantaśāstrin produces evidence from the Purāṇas to this effect. He draws attention particularly to two passages of the *Vāyu Purāṇa* in this connection.[23] The *Vāyu Purāṇa* which by virtue of the nature of its contents is generally regarded as a genuine Mahāpurāṇa[24] says that sacrifice was instituted at the beginning of the Tretā age[25] and originally a Yajña

[20] Comp. *pratimanvantaraṃ caiva śrutir anyā vidhīyate—Matsya Purāṇa*, 145.58. The *Brahmāṇḍa purāṇa* tells that mantras grow again and again due to the transitoriness of the Devas (67.78).

[21] *Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa*, 66.23 and 67. 8—9. This chapter gives a fairly long list of the different sages and the prodigious number of Saṁhitās composed by each of them.

[22] In the *Brahmāṇḍa Purāṇa*, it has been told that Śākalya called Padavittama or Vādakartā dies of his being defeated by Yājñavalkya in a controversy with the latter (Chapter. 66).

[23] Indian Historical Congress, Lahore, 1940, pp. 77—79.

[24] S. B. Choudhury, *Journal of the Bihar and Orissa Research Society*, Patna, XV, pp. 183—194. Comp. Pargiter, *Ancient Indian Historical Tradition*, p. 24; Pusalkar. *Journal of the Univ. of Bombay*, X, pp. 148—155.

[25] *Vāyu Purāṇa*, 57.61, 86f.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

was Ahiṁsātmaka.[26] These two views of the Purāṇas—the Vedas are human compositions and the Yajña is ahiṁsātmaka—deserve serious attention. The first one is only a natural corrollary of the Purāṇas believing in the reshuffling of the Veda in successive stages and the second corroborating a chronological priority of the Gṛhya ritul.

A dim corroboration might come also from another direction. In the *Matsya Purāṇa*, Manu asks Janārdana to tell him the history of his predecessors.[27] Therefrom we learn that the Manu of the *Matsya Purāṇa* is the seventh Manu belonging to the Vaivasvata Manvantara.[28] A list of all the Manvantaras with their corresponding Devatā and Ṛṣis is given in this chapter. There we are told that in the era of the Auttami Manu the gods are named Bhāvanā and Auttami Manu gives birth to ten sons, the first two being Īṣa and Ūrja.[29] In the Manvantara immediately following—the Tāmasa Manvantara—the gods are styled Sādhya.[30] In the *Ṛgveda*[31] performance of Yajña as the first institution is connected with the Sādhya gods whom the *Matsya Purāṇa* places in the Tāmasa Manvantara. The first mantra of the *Vājasaneyi Saṁhitā*, on the other hand, opens with the two names Īṣa[32] and Ūrja who are the sons of the Auttami Manu preceding the Sādhya gods by one Manvantara. The retention of the two names in the very first mantra of the *Vājasaneyi Saṁhitā*, the Veda for the ritualists, may not be fortuitious.

---

[26] *Ibid.*, 57. 97f; Comp. Pargiter, *Ancient Indian Historical Tradition*, p. 315. Comp. *adhvara iti yajñanāma dhvaratir hiṃsākarmā tatpratiṣedhaḥ—Nirukta*, 1·8.

[27] *Pūrveṣāṁ caritam brūhi manūnāṁ madhusūdana—Matsya Purāṇa.*, 9.1.

[28] The Sāvarṇya Manvantara, the eighth in the order, is referred to as a future era : *sāvarṇyasya pravakṣyāmi manor bhāvi tathāntaram—ibid.* 9.31.

[29] *Ibid.*, 9.11—13.

[30] *ibid.*, 9.16.

[31] 1.164.50.

[32] As opposed to Īṣa in the *Matsya Purāṇa*.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The *Vāyu Purāṇa*[33] says that a group of gods called Jayā is created from the mouth of Brahman and their bodies are made of mantras (Mantraśarīrāḥ). Two gods belonging to this *Jayā*-group are named Darśa and Pūrṇamāsa. This probably hints at the fact that these two Iṣṭis are original Gṛhya rites and that is why they form the model of all the Pākayajñas of the Gṛhya cult. The illuminating remarks of Apte may be quoted in this connection. He says, 'The truth seems to be that though the Gṛhya (or domestic) worship was earlier, its elaboration through the multiplication of ritual acts and rubrication of Mantras is later than the development of the Śrauta (or public worship of the Fires, as is confirmed by the fact that as a class, Gṛhyasūtras are later than the Śrautasūtras. This is of course, true in a general way and in individual cases, the borrowing from the one to the other will have to be carefully established. The points of contact between the two cults are numerous. For example, all ritualistic acts like purifying, cleansing, pouring, washing, atoning for sins, uniting, girding, casting off, anointing, placing, gazing etc. have similar contexts and Mantra-rubrics in both the Śrauta and Gṛhya cults as Dr. Pillai has shown. The Darśapūrṇamāsa becomes the model for the Pākayajña of the Gṛhya rites. The Madhuparka ceremony is so appropriate and essential to both the types of contexts, that its original character—whether Śrauta or Gṛhya—cannot now be determined. Some common items like the Praṇītāpraṇayana (the ritual act for carrying forward the praṇītā waters), the very stereotyped Jaya, Abhyātana and Rāṣṭrabhṛt oblations and the very important Dīkṣā and Tānunaptra ceremonies seem to have been copied in the Gṛhya ceremonial from the Śrauta. On the other hand, simple ritual acts like 'rinsing the mouth with water' or 'entering

[33] 66.4-7.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

one's house' seem to be borrowals from the Gṛhya sphere".[34] The above excerpt shows the place of the Darśa and the Pūrṇamāsa Iṣṭis in the field of Hindu religious rites—Śrauta as well as Gṛhya—and may speak for my thesis that they are the earliest ritual forerunners in the entire domain of sacrificial ceremonial. In the expression *iṣṭimaya ṛṅmayo yajurmayaḥ sāmamayo'tharvamayaḥ*, the *Viṣṇu Purāṇa*[35] gives the Iṣṭis a distinct position over the four Saṁhitās revealing thereby that originally the Iṣṭis are rooted above the extant Saṁhitās. The *Brahmāṇda Purāṇa*[36] tells that an eternal place can be attained by performing the Darśa and the Pūrṇamāsa Iṣṭis :

darśaṁ ca pūrṇamāsaṁ ca ye yajanti dvijātayaḥ/
na teṣāṁ punarāvṛttir brahmalokāt kadācana//

while, on the other hand, the *Viṣṇu Purāṇa* declares[37] that merits accruing through the performance of Śrauta sacrifice is transitory.

To sum up, the Purāṇas believe in the Pauruṣeyatva of the Vedas, that is, of the extant Saṁhitās which, according to them, are late compositions only after the Śrauta cult (the cult of three Fires) is introduced, and not of the *Yajurveda* of which the extant Saṁhitās are offshoots. This *Yajurveda* is not the same now known under this appellation. From a passage of the *Matsya Purāṇa* we learn that Aila Purūravas was a Mantravādin and a Kṣatriya as well.[38] This information combined with the fact that he was also the introducer of the (system of Śrauta ritual to be accomplished with) three Fires leads us to the one and only con-

[34] *Dr. C. Kunhan Raja Presentation Volume* (The Adyar Library) Madras, 1946), p. 240.

[35] 4.1.10 [36] 20. 7. [37] 2.14.23.

[38] *Manur vaivasvataś caiva aile rājā purūravāḥ*
kṣatriyāṇāṁ varā hy ete vijñeyā mantravādinaḥ
Matsya Purāṇa, 145. 115—16.
Pargiter, *Ancient Indian Historical Tradition*, p. 10.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

clusion that the system of Śrauta ritual round which brahmanical legerdemain and craftsmanship have worked up monstrous literatures through centuries, has been the momentous contribution of a Kṣatriya. It is strange that the enormous Vedic literature remains notoriously silent about so great an information. Just as a similar deleberate suppression of information by observing a 'conspiracy of silence' as Pargiter calls it, is found in the non-mention of Vyāsa as the compiler of the Vedas for fear of fatally impairing the sacrosanctity and unassailability of the Vedas, so here also, a fact of the greatest moment has been passed over by the upholders of the Brahmanic tradition for fear of losing the very ground on which the orthodox theory that the Vedic mantras are originally composed for being applied to Śrauta ceremonies stand.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

THE CRITICAL AND COMPARATIVE STUDY OF INDIAN AESTHETICS

By Sri H. L. Sharma

(Continued from Vol. XVI, Pts. 1-2 p. 244.

V. Beauty As Fitness

1. *The Meaning of Fitness (Aucitya).*

In what has preceded we considered beauty in art as a simple neucleus, such as emotion, form or ornament. Kṣemendra proposes a theory in which they are organised into a unity as elements. The central[1] organising principle is 'fitness' of each element with the rest and the whole. The fitness of each element with the whole is aucitya. Now aucitya[2] is a positive and pervasive quality from which each element derives its meaning and claim to belong to the artistic whole. No Rasa[3] or ornament or collocation is beautiful in itself and by itself. It is beautiful because, and to the extent to which it fits with the whole. A Rasa, if it is out of place somewhere, will only mar the beauty-effect[4]. An ornament decorates the artistic form, and an excellence (गुण) raises it above dull monotony of the commonplace only when it combines with the whole suitably. When the artist, either by means of a word, patch of colour, line or mass or musical tune, suggests an eternal verity, it brings the work in harmony with the soul by strengthening[5] our consciousness of truth in it. This is so with each element aspiring to affect us artistically.

The view as stated above arises from a deeper consideration. A work of art has to affect and stimulate the whole man, and not a part. It must, therefore, contain

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

not only the sensible or emotional elements but also the intelligible, even intellectual and real elements, such as meaning (अर्थ), description of historical events and the like[6]. A large number of non-aesthetic elements are converted by the power of aucitya into a rich source of beauty-experience. This view may be named as the Composite Theory of Beauty. Kṣemendra insists that each element—and there are many elements in a work of art—*goes beyond itself* in a harmonious whole, and richly contributes towards the totality of aesthetic effect. Even a red vermilion mark on the forehead of a woman, fitly placed, is not only beautiful in itself but beautifies the whole[7]. Similarly, a refractary[8] element may produce a negative effect by not obeying the law of propriety. An element thus goes beyond itself positively or negatively either by intensifying or spoiling the intended impression, as the case may be.

We are now very close to grasping the meaning of *aucitya*. In so far as an element *goes beyond itself and contributes towards the total effect*, the part becomes an active participant in a community. An element must live, but not for itself. Kṣemendra thus defines aucitya as the quality of being fit (ucita), which means, when one is Sādṛsa[9] to another. Sādṛsa means con-similar, whereform we may conclude that the elements may be said to be fit to one another when they are inspired by the same purpose. The purpose in our context is only artistic. When the elements move towards effecting an artistic fulfilment, they are fit if, and to the extent to which, they are imbued with a 'community-sense'. The result of a fit combination is harmony (हृदय संवाद) and its opposite is dis-harmony (हृदय विसंवाद). In this Kṣemendra betrays that the final test of beauty is the subjective effect on the aesthetically alive soul.

Kṣemendra is the poet-philosopher gifted with lively beauty-sense. In another[10] place he gives a proof of it

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

by bringing out psychological and aesthetic value of each metre in poetry. Metre as the powerful emotionalizing agent is an element in literary art. Its fitness with central theme, motif and emotional tempo is important. About Upajāti[11] metre he tells us that it enters our ears and mind with its thin end of unaccented syllables. If its opening is made a thick end by accenting the syllables, it pains the ear. Totaka[12] is another metre which, by its swift movement and measured rhythm, makes our heart dance. Mālini[13] is at its best if its second half contains compounded words; it becomes dull and flat in its effect if its first half contains them. Even a man not versed in the art will feel pain, which he cannot describe in words, hearing the discordance like that of the Vina thrown out of tune.[14] Kṣemendra thus indicates the psychological texture of each metre, and, in the next chapter, discusses the fitness of each as the vehicle of aesthetic charm.

The *Composite Theory of Art*, as we may name the *theory of aucitya*, can be extended much beyond Literature. It applies to all Compositions, and, objectively all arts are various forms of compositions. The elements in an art are not strewn over irrationally, but they are gathered up in a living whole. Something must pervade them all like their moving spirit; something must create a sense of harmonious 'togetherness'. And this is their mutual fitness.

VI. The Principle of Sonus

1. *The Advent of Dhvani.*

The discovery of Dhvani[1] may be regarded as a 'crisis' in the development of Indian Aesthetics. It summed up, and went beyond, both the views of art-quality regarding it as positive mutual fitness (aucitya) and as negative deviation from the commonplace (Vakrokti). It necessitated re-thinking and re-defining of all art-elements, vir-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

tually creating a need for revaluation, by raising several fundamental issues which it successfully tackled. These issues were :

(i) How is it that a work of art is an inexhaustible source of aesthetic charm and newness ?

(ii) In artistic enjoyment, transcendence of art-experience is as essential as its immanence in the sensible material. What psycho-aesthetics lies behind this transcendence—immanence of art-experience ? In the formulation of the Principle of Sonus, there was a search for the most natural idiom of art-creation and recreation, and a comprehensive point of view. In what follows we intend to formulate the main issues and the solution which it suggested.

At the outset, Ānanda, the author of Dhvani, states that essence of poetic art consists of two elements,[2] viz., primary and suggested meanings. The primary is the direct and immediate meaning of words which are the constituent materials of literary art. In other arts, graphic or auditory, colour, volume, line, movement, posture and tune, are the primary plastic material. Words in literature and colour etc., in non-literary arts are the sensuous basis in which art-quality is immanent. The artist directly deals with the sensible element and moulds it into a significant and symbolic form. The sensible element being his primary care and concern, the artist graces it with such qualities as excellences (गुण), embellishments (अलंकार) and configuration (बन्ध). The excellences, energy, sweetness and Felicity, are, as already noted, the modes of creative expression in art. They are internalized, but they also characterize the external lay-out of art and become index of the inward vision of beauty. So is the case with beautifying devices and gestalt processes common to all arts. The sensible element forms the body of art and so must possess the grace of it.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

"But that which raises the mind into the realms of ecstasy and spiritual existence is other than the sensible element." It is a super-individual quality transcending parts and yet lending them an ineffable charm. Abhinava tells us that this 'going[4] beyond' the sensible material or the primary meaning can be ordinary as we find in wit, humour etc. and poetic. The artistic function of suggestion is to create a state of Rasa, which has been defined as rhythmic and creative flow of life at higher planes of existence. Coomaraswamy has rendered it as 'overtone of meaning'. The fact of the matter is that Indian Aesthetics recognizes only the sonorous character, and not the pictorial, of art-experience. All art-experience is musical and rhythmic. Even in graphic and dynamic arts, the musical harmony is mentally realizable, if not actually audible, above the apparent element of art as an echoing voice. In fact the creator and critic of art being both living, moving spirits, cannot create or enjoy art without converting the immobile into mobile, visual harmony of form into musical rhythm of movement. Art-philosophy in India, therefore, named the highest form of aesthetic realization as dhvani or sound. Art-experience may be regarded as a continuum of blissful illuminations supervening over the presentational continuum of sensible elements.

These flashing[5] moments of rhythmic and creative state rise above the sensible elements as echoing resonance from a gong.[6] Beauty of a work of art is to be judged by how much it is able to bring about a rhythmic resonance of emotions and thought by the dynamo of its perceptible elements. The artist, in an extraordinary flash of beauty-impulse, invents a symbolic-form, which can raise and illumine the mind. Ananda[7] is emphatic that every form cannot do it. The original art-genius shows itself only in the invention of proper and powerful forms. The conscious[8] concern of the artist is the significant forms though they

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

emerge from the unconscious fulfilment of beauty-impulse. "It is like the man who, aiming at illumination, concentrates on preparing the wick of lamp." This unconscious fulfilment by a conscious process of sense-experience invests the objects with inexhaustible aesthetic charm. Ānanda with other art-philosophers insists on this character of beautiful objects that their charm never fades,[9] that their appeal is ever fresh and refreshing. Abhinava[10] reinforces the master by stating that "beauty of thea work of art like the love-frolic of beloved is unfathomable and knows no satiety by repetitions."

The unfathomable and infinite character of beauty in art is due to its power of affecting the conscious self by harmony of perceptible elements, and, more, its power of emotionalising the unconscious self by resonance of their musical rhythm. The conscious is only the finite organ of action and adjustment. The unconscious as the submerged bedrock of our life is infinite. Dhvani as the form of reverberation in the mind is the starting of movements in the infinite self, resulting in the boundless joy of beauty-experience. Its newness and thrill are not due to satisfaction of curiosity instinct, but they directly arise from the loosening of individuality bonds when the Infinite is stirred up to realise itself through the finite conscious self. Jagannātha[11] most explicitly defines Dhvani as a form of manifestation. It is when "the self tears off its finite covering. As the lamp lights up itself and all that is in its neighbourhood, so the self illumines itself and other causes of aesthetic experience. As aesthetic experience is coterminous with contemplation of the causes, so that when it is over, we do not experience the infinite core of our own existence."

There is thus, Jagannātha tells us, the ground for comparing aesthetic experience with mystic self-merger[12] in Samādhi state. "The joy there is not the ordinary joy

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of life, for it does not result from the psycho-organic apparatus." This explains how and why the rose of the artist goes beyond the natural rose of the botanist or the imitative rose of the pictorial painter. The artist's rose must work upon the conscious finite self, so that it rests in the realms of limitless spiritual bliss. This also explains why an excessively emotional art without affecting the deepest core and touching only the outer fringe of life is condemned as "sensational" and cheap. Patmore calls a purely emotional art 'an alluring harlot.' Indeed, the principle of Sonus answers a vexing problem of psycho-aesthetics, namely, the question of limit and justification of each art-element without excess or default. When any of the elements is glorified, as is done during the decadent ages, it only proves the weakening of the creative will.

2. *Aesthetic Paradox.*

Indian Aesthetics expresses the paradox[13] of aesthetic experience in a way of its own : Female beauty of breast is not appreciated either when it is too much concealed from view or when it is too much exposed to it. Beauty of a work of art reaches the pinnacle of perfection only when, like the maiden's breast, it is half-revealed and half-concealed. Art consists in revealment of the deep facets of internal or external nature. It is no art unless it illumines and articulates the inmost recesses of the soul or maps out the uncharted beauties of colour and form. Art has been defined as Expression, as efferent movement of the mind. And yet there is no art whatever when everything is brought over the surface, made patent and exposed to vulgar view. More art lies in concealment. The art of Realism, the pictorial art with its emphasis on 'representational literalness' falls flat in taste and exhausts its charm, because it conceals nothing from direct communication, leaves nothing for chewing over, and is too much simpli-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

fied for the exercise of our higher faculties. Thus we face the Paradox in art-experience between expression and impression, concealment and revealment of what is beautiful in art.

Incidentally we may say that it is so much like the Paradox of Inference in the realm of knowledge. Thought-movement is the act of rational creation when there is the passage from the old to the new. This passage is illumined by the light of Reason. Rational activity consists of the comprehension of implications. The conclusion in a reasoning is the rational illumination starting from the premises. In beauty-illumination of the mind, the unrevealed which is realizable in a state of contemplative self-merger is its novel and essential part. The perceptible elements revealed to our senses start the process. They are the patent part of our experience. The passage from the perceptible to the imperceptible is brightened by the flashing light of imagination. In Rasa-experience there is short-circuiting, so that the passage from one to the other is felt as immediate. In other forms of art-experience, it may be long. Sometimes the delayed starting of the beauty-thrill is welcomed as highly valuable as in experiencing the charm of a metaphor, noble thought or some other non-aesthetic constituent of art, for in that case sufficient time is allowed for chewing and contemplating. The passage should not be too long from the perceptible to the imperceptible. Indian Aesthetic thinkers are unanimous in holding that immediacy of beauty-illumination, which is the characteristic of Rasa-experience, is the supreme quality of art.

Jagannātha lays it down as the dictum[14] of aesthetic experience : "There is no primary meaning or the perceptible element in art which by itself, without being touched with even slight suggestiveness, can bring about beauty-thrill." At another place he teaches that aesthetic enjoyment consists in the sudden and swift revelation of a vast

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

wealth of suggestions, and not in making things too plain for the exercise of imagination.[15] Here it is pertinent to ask : Why is it that a large core of aesthetic meaning should be kept unrevealed, which the imagination of the enjoyer realizes in the moment of appreciation? Abhinava[16] clearly formulates the questions : "What ugliness would result if we disclose everything ? How do we enhance beauty-thrill by concealing something from open view."

Several answers to the above queries may be given, each correct as far as it goes.

1. One explanation is based on the conception of neural energy. Exercise and expenditure of energy stored in the neurones are pleasurable. The more complex, diffused and intense is the stimulation, the greater is the stir of joy in the mind. When everything is plain, the higher faculties of imagination are not exercised, and, hence the higher brain centres are not called into action. Concealment and suggestiveness in art, therefore, are checks to over-simplication. 2. Allied with this view is that of Vernon Lee,[17] who tells us that aesthetic perception differs from ordinary perception in being active rather than passive. We take pleasure by contemplating an aspect of thing, not that the object gives it to us. Active perception in the form of contemplation of form is a characeristic of visual art. Passively looked, a painting is an ordinary colour-work. To active contemplation, the same colour-work reveals a wide vista through suggestion. The colour-suggestions, sometimes, of such difficult but vital notions as Infinite Peace or Action, is the wealth hidden behind configuration or linear rhythm. Artistic joy is the sudden lightening up of vast subliminal treasures of those sublime and intense experiences, which discursive thinking singularly fails to realise. In sculpture we realise pulsation of life in marble; in music, we are face to face with the idea of eternity; and so on. Lee concludes that aesthetic joy is caused by activi-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ties of our own. We can thus hold that concealment in art is for the purpose of intensifying self-activity. If there is no unrevealed core, there is no chance for it. Hence naturalistic art falls flat and wearies the mind.

2. Yet a third answer we have already considered partly before. It is that if anything affects our conscious finite self, it touches only a fringe of our life. Art-joy is an immeasurable experience, resulting as it does from the subterraneous stirring. The concealed core of art is for the purpose of awakening the subliminal life. Rasa-experience is, according to Indian Aesthetics, the fulness[18] of blazing conscious activity, which appeals to the *whole* man. The Principle of Sonus lays emphasis on the inexpressible element in art, and not so much on the obvious and the patent. The purpose of aesthetic contemplation (carvaṇa) is to create rhythm in the unconscious depths of the soul.

3. Another answer clearly stated by Ānanda[19] is that in poetic art each word and its meaning go much beyond their immediate implication. In other arts also, the obvious constituent means more than meets the ear and the eye. The line, *e.g.* of face in a work of sculpture may speak of firmness of determination or other mental spiritual qualities. For whatever mysterious reasons a spiritual significance has come to be attached to the immediate and obvious contents of consciousness. Art banks upon, and builds its effectiveness with the help of, the spiritual suggestions of the perceptible qualities. Each word and meaning has an energy of awakening in us and starting a train of imagery. There is, as has been said, an extensive and intensive 'stimulation' of the entire psycho-somatic system, as there is the 'apperceptive stimulation' in the rational activity of the mind. In solution of a problem, there is a general stir and awakening of the 'apperception mass' in the mind, which is the real joy of thinking activity.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

In the same way, in artistic enjoyment there is a general emotional resonance, induced by the dynamo of a word, which is the essence of beauty-thrill. Ānanda[20] tells us that the beauty of art-creation is due to the fact that in no other way but that one the moving and resonant thrill can be brought about. If it could be achieved in some other way, there is no beauty in it. This is why what a word expresses in art is beautiful but what it does not express is still more charming.

4. We consider the last answer : "The concealed[21] core of beauty is its essence like shyness of a young maiden." Abhinava commenting on this holds that shyness of a young lady is born of her desire to conceal erotic surge within her. She feels within her a large experience, new, embarrassing and intense, to which she is not reconciled. "In her very efforts to conceal it she makes the most charming revealment." Her shyness adds grace to her beauty a thousand times. So is the case with art. The artist uses the same device. He uses a covering in order to intensify our emotional rapport, and leaves open the avenues for imaginative upbuilding of forms. It creates a vagueness so that we insert our self into art, and define its beauty in terms of our own aesthetic sensibility. A completely defined form, insulated within a hard crust, circumscribed by exact adjuncts, leaves no room in it for contemplation and self-merger, which is the main spring of beauty in art. Concealment in a work of art is done so that we may reveal ourselves in it, so that the self may flow out into it. This merger of the self in the object is the climax of art-feeling.

3. *Einfühlung and Soul-dynamics.*

We said : An artist leaves a good deal undefined in his art so that the onlooker may find an opportunity for 'filling in' the form with 'fire' and 'colour' by his own imaginative activity. The self-activity induced by objective

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

qualities of art sustains beauty-emotion, which, intensified by imagination, creates an 'oceanic feeling'. We feel tendency to merge, and become one with the object of beauty. But complete merger will be suicidal to the feeling itself. So there is a backward surge of life, as it were, in order to recover itself. There is thus continuous swing and surge in the vital stream, backward and forward, 'off-and-on beats' of a process that breathes joy in self-assertion and self-annihilation. Modern Psychology has discovered a primary pervasive function of human consciousness which seeks to explain this reiterative phenomenon of art-experience. Before we consider the philosophical and linguistic approach of our Aesthetics, we stay to take up the psycho-aesthetic view of Modern Psychology.

We may refer, in passing, to Freud and Jung who substantially agree on the point that the dynamics of human nature can be resolved into birth and death seeking tendencies. In beauty-experience both of them are satisfied without actually calling upon the organism to use its store of energy for fulfilment. Hence there is no exhaustion of nerves, resulting in repetitive perception. The contemplation of the beautiful is one way of sublimation of Libido, an escape from its incessant pleasure-seeking and consequent clash against the Reality-principle. Whatever its defects, which are serious and many, the theory confirms our introspective analysis of aesthetic consciousness.

In the main, it is the discovery and definition of Einfühlung or Infeeling which marks a definite advance in our understanding of the Beautiful. Wundt reduced the question to artistic perception of form. The perception of the Beautiful differs from ordinary perception in degrees of intensity or massiveness etc., not in kind so much. All perception involves memory.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

"Now memory, paradoxical as it may sound, practically implies *expectation* : the use of the past is to become that visionary thing we call the future. Hence, while we are measuring the extension and direction of one line, we are not only remembering the extent and direction of another previously measured line, but we are also expecting a similar act of meaurement of the next line; even as in "following a melody" we not only remember the preceding tone, but expect the succeeding ones. Such interplay of present, past and future is requisite in every kind of meaning, for every unit of thought; and among others, of the meaning, and thought which we contemplate under the name of shape. It is on account of this interplay of present, past and future that Wundt counts feelings of tension and relaxation among the elements of form-perception. And the mention of such feelings, i.e., rudiments of emotion, brings us to recognize that the remembering and foreseeing of our acts of measurements and orientation constitutes a microscopic psychological drama—shall we call it the drama of the Soul-molecules—whose first familiar examples are those two peculiarities of visible and audible shapes called Symmetry and Rhythm."[22]

Thus aesthetic perception is a complex presentative-representative mental process. Accumulated memories from past and associations in every nook and corner of the mind are awakened and applied and a forward-looking attitude is generated. The present moment which, in its 'presentational immediacy', is a bare form becomes a lively experience by the fusion of past and future into it. Or, as Bergson[23] would like to put it : The present is the peak-point of a tidal wave of conscious life trying to insert itself into Reality and has behind it all the pushing force of it emerging from the past and heading, breathless, towards the future. This task of articulating the present and perceptual datum by all the resources at mind's disposal at a time is due to the primary function of human consciousness, called Empathy or Infeeling. The self feels itself into the object. Thus when we look at the mountain-peak and feel it is 'rising', it is not the mountain actually rising, but our self which transfers its experience to the object.

107

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

"The rising of the mountain is an idea started by the awareness of our own lifting of our eyes etc., and it is an idea containing the awareness of that raising or lifting. But it is far more: The present and particular raising and lifting is merely the nucleus to which gravitates our remembrance of all similar acts of raising or rising which we have ever accomplished. And not only the thought of past rising but also the thought of future rising. All these risings, done by ourselves or watched in others, actually experienced or merely imagined, have long since united together in our mind, constituting a sort of composite photograph whence all differences are eliminated and wherein all similarities are fused and intensified the general idea of rising... It is this universally applicable notion of rising which is started in our mind by the awareness of the particular present acts of raising involved in our looking at the mountain, and it is this general idea of rising, i.e., of upward movement, which gets transferred to the mountain along with our own particular present activity of raising some part of us, and which thickens, enriches and marks that poor little thought of a definite raising with the interest, the emotional fulness gathered and stored up in its long manifold existence. What we are transferring (owing to that tendency to merge the activities of the perceiving subject with the qualities of the perceived object) from ourselves to the looked at shape of the mountain, is not merely the thought of rising, but the thought and emotion which have been long accumulated in our mind. And it is this complex mental process, by which we invest that inert mountain with the stored up and averaged and essential modes of our own activity. It is this process whereby we make the mountain raise itself, which is Einfühlung or Empathy."[24]

The conception of Empathy enlightens our introspection of soul-dynamics involved in aesthetic perception. There is a constant outflow and inflow of the mind, from and to, the beautiful object. Looking at a perfect statue, our attention is engaged by solidity and mass, which we realize, in a moment of contemplation, by a steady mental and muscular recall of the past experiences. Then the mind is engaged in realizing 'energy' and 'repose' of the figure. Next, the 'idea' embodied may capture the mind. The mind, again and again, returns to the object and feasts on it and goes back to its own place where it, sometimes

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

feels, sometimes thinks and always chews the cud and enjoys. In music also, there is the constant afferent and efferent movement of the mind, which is now ravished by pathos of a dying note, now enraptured by vital harmony and concordance, now turned to text of the song, now sublimated by its noble theme. In art-experience there is no satiety or exhaustion, because there is always a call upon new forms of cerebrations. The greater is the sustaining power in a work of art, the greater is its merit as a work of art. Vernon Lee writes about Michelangelo's work (an architecture with Adam and Eve figures) which never wearies but ever refreshes :

"Backwards and forwards the eye is driven by that living architecture, round and round in its search now for completion of visible pattern, now for symbolic and narrative meaning, and ever back to the tale of Creation so that the remote historic incident of the Ancestors, the tremendous and tremendously present lyric excitements and despair of the prophetic man and woman, the pagan suggestion of the athletic genü all unite like the simultaneous and consecutive harmonies of a titanic symphony, round the recurrent and dominant phrases of those central stories of how the universe and man were made. . . ."

In order that there may be backward and forward movement of sustained attention between the object and the mind, the artist mingles with his work non-aesthetic elements, such as theme, emotion, thought, events etc. He draws them into 'contemplation's orbit', and, to use a phrase of Ānanda, 'internalizes' them so that the scope and volume of aesthetic emotion are enlarged. This technique is employed by the artist to keep the beholder's attention inside the work of art while suggesting 'things beyond it.' There is first the centrifugal flow of the mind towards the object. It is exploratory in nature. During exploration the mind looks at the art-elements, their structure and arrangement. The emotion of wonder swells

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and returns enriched to the source. This is the centripetal movement. Both these alternate and sustain aesthetic contemplation. They are the virtual life-beats of art-experience.

The merit of the conception of Einfühlung is that it adequately explains the reiterative nature of art-experience, its massiveness and power for soothing and sublimating the mind. And more, it unravels a new form of art-activity, we may call Irradiation. It means that in art-experience there are sparkling flashes of beauty which illumine the different contents of our consciousness, broaden the horizon and make us see things which we never saw before and in a new light altogether.

Indian Aesthetics became distinctly conscious of the Principle of Einfühlung as Dhvani (Sonus) in Ānanda. Only his approach was philosophical and not psychological. But the conception is almost universal since the first exposition of Theory of Aesthetic Causation by Bharata. Vibhavas are the aesthetic causes, which evoke psycho-organic reverberation, an echoing of the whole personality. Rasa is beauty-emotion which organizes them into artistic unity, and, by a process of self-suffusion, transforms each element into its own quality. Ānanda[26] clarified the point further. He says that poet's wonderful language (Vāṇī) invests objects with new light, so that even things seen before become charming to our vision. Abhinava in Locana commentary explains that in poetic enjoyment the mind does not stay at one point and exhaust the charm in a single glance. The object of beauty, he teaches us, becomes an unfathomable source of joy and light. The infinite variety and unflagging charm of the beautiful objects in art are due to Dhvani function of aesthetic consciousness. In this respect alone, the creative artist excels the Creator.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

4. *The Vedānta Theory of Perception and Einfühlung.*

Philosophy saw speculative possibility of subject-object meeting in the same locus before Psychology, in the recent past, could evince that this meeting, even merger, was the primary and universal function of human consciousness without which perception could not take place. Schopeuhauer told us that

> "the union, or the apparent union, of the perceiving subject with the object may in certain cases almost nullify the subject-object antithesis in experience of beauty that is typical and profound."

The Vedānta takes a step farther and declares that the subject-object antithesis is only ad hoc to serve practical ends and not real at all. The separating wall between the subject and object does not exist *really*, and every act of perception proves its truth. Without outstepping the limits of our enquiry we shall show the bearing of this view on the nature of beauty-experience.

Indeed a sharp dualism cannot account for perception. The critical philosophy of Vedānta takes up the problem of perception both at metaphysical and psychological levels. At the metaphysical level, there are planes of existence, and relative to each plane there is a form of perception. At the empirical plane, sometimes there is preponderance of inertia (Tamas) in human nature.[27] The vision there is blurred, hesitant and vascilatting. At other times, the tendency to extroversion predominates. Under its duress, the mind is rivetted to the view of practical utility.[28] We see the world divided into so many things and do not catch the thread running through them all. We have true vision of things at the creative and manifestive (Sattva) level of existence.[29] It is then that we have appropriate attitude for Rasa-enjoyment. We overcome the meum-teum distinction. New horizons are flung open to view. We realize an unbroken

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

effulgence in all things about us. Viśvanātha[30] tells us that in that moment the soul becomes suffused over with Rasa-emotion induced by the object of beauty. Thus in beauty-experience we receive the object into our self as a part of the same undying and undivided brilliance.

The main contribution of Vedānta is towards psychology of perception. The percipient subject is as much fit to perceive as the object is fit to be perceived, for they are two poles of the same creative spiritual energy. Perception is 'trans-subjective' process, which is also spiritual. Under the finetizing tendency, the objects and subjects are individuated, which otherwise are waves in the same ocean of creative spirituality. Hence, Vedānta regards the subject and object and their union in the moment of perception as equally spiritual. The objects scattered over the earth are all points of light, and are illuminated when the percipient subject comes to contact them.

"Just as water running out of the reservoir takes the shape of rectangular or triangular fields, so the mind, in trans-subjective process of perception, gets out of its subjectivity, goes to the object and in knowing it, it becomes the object."

The process of knowing it is the process of becoming it. The object is, as it were, spiritualized in being perceived as the subject is objectified in the act of perception. The subject and object can only be distinguished as the limiting poles of the bipolar process, and there can be no actual demarcation in the indivisible process.

In perception thus, according to Vedānta, we realise the unity[33] of subject and object, and their antithesis, if there is anything like it, is transcended. The subject feels (Fühlen) itself into (ein) the object. But practical and logical activities start soon after it and limit this tendency to merger. Vedanta distinguishes the first moment of pure

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

spiritual experience and the later one when individuation starts. Croce in our times has advocated a much similar view. In intuitive and first moment of our contact with Reality, we have a pure aesthetic experience. It is a child-like experience of wonder and beauty and is over before 'economic' and 'logical' points of view press forward. Einfuhlung therefore as the primary function of human mind is both a psychological and philosophical certainty. In beauty-experience, the logical[34] and economic view-points are at their lowest ebb. Consequently, therefore, the mind's absorption in its activities induced by the object's qualities is intense. There is the rhythmic beat of absoportion and recovery, forgetfulness and awakening, in aesthetic experience. This is due to the centrifugal and centripetal currents of attention started and sustained by the beautiful object.

5. *Dhvani as Function of Language.*

Historically the Principle of Dhvani was formulated from speculations in Grammar. The main question was : What is the relation between the intelligible meaning and audible sound of a word ? Indeed, there is no likeness between *sound* which consists, on the physical plane, of air-vibrations and, on physiological plane, of cerebrations in the auditory area of the brain, and *meaning* which is a form of spiritual illumination. How do we pass from one to the other when sound and its meaning are not commensurate, and possess different dimensions on different orders of existence ? Sound is measureable with foot-yard scale in terms of frequency and amplitude or in terms of intensity of cerebral and nerve action; while the meaning measured purely in mental terms is not conditioned by any of the above qualities. The second question is : At what stage of utterance of the word does its meaning spring up in the mind ? Suppose I utter the word,

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

'lotus'. It consists of distinct sounds. Shall I realise the meaning at the initial sound, medial or final, which will act as stimulus to the 'meaning consciousness'[35]? Even then there is no commensurability between stimulus and response.

The question discussed in mediaeval India with all the scholastic zeal and speculative niceties is fresh today. We select that part of its full treatment which bears on 'Dhvani'. As has already been said, we developed in India a conception of Language which is dynamic and centrifugal– meaning thereby that tendency towards articulation starts from the centre (not towards the centre), which is the self-luminous and undifferentiated mass of consciousness. A word when it comes to be pronounced has behind it not a single poor idea, but a mass of articulated consciousness, and perhaps, a larger mass of unarticulated self. Thus when we hear or pronounce a word, there is a sudden *detonation* in consciousness, much like when we apply a spark to some combustible material. Philosophers in India compared the articulation of meaning in mind to detonation, and, actually called it 'explosion' (Sphoṭa).

Of the doctrine of Sphota the part that concerns us is that in aesthetic experience in Literary Arts, the collocation of words serves the special purpose of awakening in us pleasant currents of thought and feeling. A poem, say a sonnet, may use such devices as Figure, theme, a noble idea, description of a scene etc., with a view to bringing about an explosion of meaning in the mind. The greater the range and massiveness of this explosion the greater is the profundity of Art and its capacity to produce beauty-thrill (camatkāra). We can feel the 'explosion' of meaning in our mind and throwing open of new horizons in life with detonation and flash. The literary thinkers adopted the Sphota theory of the Philosophy of Grammar

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

to explain the reaction of the mind to a work of art in the form of Dhvani.

We may remember that Sphoṭa is a common phenomenon in all cases where meaning of a sensible material is comprehended. The natural trend of consciousness in meaning is towards its complete integration, for when explosion takes place it cannot stop half-way. In artistic enjoyment, therefore, the response is many times more intense than the stimulus. In ordinary life the words and ideas behind them are instruments of action. Therefore if every word leads to explosion of consciousness, practice would be difficult and action delayed. Thus, we make the word succinct and handy by circumscribing it about, or, by inscribing it within, its primary meaning.

Literary Criticism in India divides the distance from the circumference to the centre into four stages. We regard the Primary meaning or the instrumental import of a word as the circumference, while its aesthetic import as the centre. It is a dynamic matrix of beauty which radiates charm along radial lines all round. Before we define the central meaning, which is the centre of aesthetic irradiation, the sun of artistic delight, we shall take up its other forms.

The first form is the primary meaning known as Abhidha. It has been defined in various ways. It is regarded as the obvious or traditional meaning of a word. A word with its primary and immediate import is a social product. It is both the vehicle of thought and instrument of action[36]. As a social phenomenon, a word has some convention behind it. According to Mammaṭa, Abhidhā[37] is the conventional meaning of a word. A word though it indicates a particular object, yet goes much beyond it to the universal class-essence. It is this universal[38] implication of the word which defines its immediate and exact meaning. It is obvious that this sort of meaning, indis-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

pensable for life and science because of its concise and clear connotation, is, for the same reason, not of any poetic value.

Abhidhā cannot convey deep and delicate shades of meaning. In art we avoid literalness that would result if we rely on Abhidhā only. Implication is the secondary meaning of a word. It is Lakṣaṇā, the implied meaning rather than the defined one. There is some joy and beauty felt in implicative import of a word, as there is a little release to imagination from its bondage of the perceptual plane. When we say, 'Camel is ship of the desert', we can neither understand nor enjoy the meaning if we are not able to rise above the literal plane of understanding. The condition is similar in painting if we see nothing beyond colour in it, and in music if we hear nothing beyond notes and numbers. In the same way we enjoy the immense meaning in, "architecture is frozen music", by understanding the implied meaning of the word 'frozen'.

Indian theorists have framed distinct questions: How and why do we get to the back of Abhidhā and grasp the implicative import?

There is one condition laid down as sine qua non of Lakṣaṇā. That is, sometimes the literal meaning does not go far and returns to its poor self by being contradicted.[39] In the examples above, the literal meanings of 'ship' and 'frozen' are absurd. The mind first automatically starts towards their immediate sense but bounds back as if repelled by a sense of absurdity in search of a new meaning. The discovery of new meaning, from aesthetic point of view, is full of imaginative charm. It has been called the tail[40] of Abhidhā, as it comes after Abhidhā exhausts itself in conveying the immediate and primary meaning. It is mediate meaning and results from reflection. We may also note in passing that nowhere

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

has Lakṣaṇa been regarded as a finished product, but always a dynamic process.[41] The whole approach seems to be activist in nature, where 'meaning' of a word is only a form of activity of the mind. In apprehending the meaning of a word, the mind naturally grows towards its primary, conventional and customary sense. Meeting an obstruction in collating the sense to its present context, the mind moves on a higher plane of growth and grasps a *new* meaning which is its implication.

It goes without saying that the new meaning cannot be absolutely new, or, unattached to its primary sense. It should be old and new at the same time, and from aesthetic point of view, full of thrill. As has been already hinted, there should be a definable relation or reference[42] between them. At this stage, Indian Aesthetics develops its theory of Associationism. Five Laws of Association[43] have been formulated explicitly, which explain the passage from the old to the new meaning. (1) The first is the *Law of contiguity*. For example, we say: The hamlet is in the Gaṅgā. In fact a hamlet cannot be in the Gaṅgā, but it can be so *near* it as to be thought to be in it. Hence *in* the Gaṅgā, therefore, means *on* the bank of it because of its *nearness* to the Gaṅgā. The mind thus apprehends a new meaning spatially contiguous to the old, when the latter fails to carry us far. There is no example to indicate the relation of contiguity in time.

(2) The second is the *Law of Similarity*. Its example is: The ploughman[44] is bullock. The example is like that of Carlyle who said the members of Parliament were 'talking asses.' The charm in this assertion might have been zero if the members in question were actually 'asses'. Not actually asses, they behave no better. The new meaning here is discovered by a similarity of behaviour, and perhaps, mental equipment. As has been already pointed

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

out, the use of metaphoric language is derived from the *Law of Similarity*.

(3) The third is the *Law of Concomitance*.[45] Two things may be said to be concomitant if they go together as cause and effect, part and whole, possession and possessor etc. When we say : the spears are entering (the gates of a city etc.), we actually mean that men with spears are doing so. When we assert : Milk is life, we mean milk is conducive to life, and so on.

(4) The fourth is the *Law of Contrast*.[46] In statements of irony and taunts, the tone or emphasis of our voice puts an opposite complexion on the textual meaning.

(5) The last is the *Law of Function*.[47] When we declare : We do not require Churchills to manage the world affairs, we give to the word 'Churchill' its functional meaning.

Lakṣaṇā or Implication has its several other forms. As it is not to our purpose, we shall not enter the troubled sea of scholastic wrangling here. Suffice it to say that the primary sense of a word is its spear-point; at its back lies the wide and penetrating meaning—we call implication. This is the source of metaphoric language, and the secret of charm in the journalistic style of our times.

We have a third function of language known as Tātparya[48] (Purport) advocated mainly by Mīmāṁsā, in particular, by the Kumārila School. According to this School, each word has its individual meaning, but in order to actively participate in a sentence, it should have a context-meaning besides. Tātparya is the meaning of the whole sentence, which is not connoted by each word in its individual capacity. It may be called the total or contextual meaning as against the individual or textual meaning of a word. The difference between Abhidhā and Tātparya is that the former gives the *common* and *conventional*[49] meaning to *individual* components in a sentence; the latter

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

signifies the *specific* and *total* meaning of the *whole* sentence. Tātparya is the knowledge of relation, under which we subsume each word. Here, a new function has to be postulated because this School of Philosophy accepts a dogma,[50] that is, once a word completes its circuit in signifying a sense, it goes no further to signify another sense. To specify the same dogma, it further says that Abhidhā goes as far as signifying a general adjectival sense, and goes no further to indicate the relational and specific sense of a word in context.

Now the author of Dhvani (Vyañjanā) and the advocates of the Dhvani school assure us on logical and other grounds that none of these functions is capable of conveying the 'poetic meaning' of a sentence. Let us examine the logic of rejecting Abhidhā, Lakṣaṇā and Tātparya as functions of artistic communication in Literature, as that would go a long way in understanding the fourth function, Vyañjanā.

Viśvanātha[51] holds that when each of the three functions exhausts itself in conveying its respective meaning, we accept the fourth in order to communicate Rasa and other artistic qualities. Abhidhā is the obvious meaning and patent content of a word. Whatever is obvious has no charm for us. The artistic meaning of a word, say, Gaṅgā, is purity, holiness, her cool sandy banks, clear current of rippling water, her shady fruit-laden trees and so on, all at one stroke, and more, the emotional rapport produced by her sight and those thousands of associations which have made her holy in our eyes and grand as a phenomenon of Nature. In a scientific treatment or practical context, the word 'Gaṅgā' may mean a stream of water in the Northern India, but in a suitable poetic context, the aesthetic causes (Vibhāvas) are so arranged that they call up to the mind a large panoramic meaning. Unless this is done, there is no Dhvani or echoing of the personality. 119

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

How this is done is explained by means of Empathy. Vibhavas start in us and sustain lively currents, both mental and neural, of sweet experiences of the past which bear on the present emotional experience and orientate the mind to a vast vista of future. Thus, the emotional meaning indicated by Abhidhā becomes overshadowed by the dynamic sense created by the process of Empathy.

Thus Abhidhā fails to create an enriched beauty-sense because of its restricted capacity. Rasa or aesthetic experience does not fall within the ambit of it, in the same way as the aesthetic meaning of a colour is not covered by its perceptual meaning. Even Lakṣaṇā cannot do it, for, though it rises a little above the dry-as-dust factual plane and puts the mind on a track to discover a 'new' meaning, the new meaning itself is too weak to start empathic currents in the mind. Moreover, the new meaning is also restricted, bound as it is by the laws of Association as stated above. Viśvanātha refutes Tātparya also as insufficient to convey the full artistic sense. The champions of Tātparya function plead that we should not confine its activity to conveying single sense. In support they cite the pragmatic[53] theory of Mīmāṁsā, which holds that a word is an instrument of purpose. A sentence that conveys a sense, whether scriptural or non-scriptural, must lead to action and fulfilment of purpose. The use of words in poetry aims only at realization of bliss, and, therefore, a word cannot stop till the end is realised : *A word is what it does.*

The main point of the reply given is the same old dogma, that is, a word cannot be trusted to hold several offices at the same time. A word is not multi-functional, and so it winds itself up as soon as it has performed its single office. Tātparya subsumes the words in a sentence under one sense, but the sense is only literal and not poetic. In a painting, Tātparya is the subject matter which can

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

be expressed in the words of a dictionary. This enables us to understand, correlate and unify several aspects and parts on the canvas meaningfully. If we are told that a certain dance performance is named '*Rādhā-Kṛṣṇa*' or '*Bakāsura-Vadha*', as the case may be, we are in this way intellectually prepared to understand the performance better. This naming in order to subsume the whole performance under a single notion is its Tātparya. But that is too cold to yield any aesthetic meaning of a dance or painting to us.

Thus a clear case for a fourth function is made out. In going from the sensible and patent content of a word etc. to the enjoyable aesthetic meaning, we are moving on a different plane of spiritual existence. Viśvanātha dealing his *coup d' etat* to the reactionary school lays down his reasons for positing Vyañjanā as the fourth function. A linguist,[54] versed in the deep lore of grammar etc., fails to enjoy beauty-sense in a poem, which sends a man of culture and taste into a rapturous state. This indicates, according to Viśvanātha, that there is a fundamental difference of outlook and mental condition for appreciation of beauty in a work of art. Indeed, a serious student of colour chemistry will see only colour patches where the artist may feel a rush of emotions and thoughts, 'too deep for tears' sometimes.

Another point is that there is no commensurability between the visible content of art and the meaning behind it: Almost the meaning is immeasureable and its charm inexhaustible. With the deepening of outlook in art, what happens is that even "one impulse from vernal wood may teach you more of man, of moral evil and of good than all the sages can." The painter's 'vernal wood' is infinitely more inspiring than the one we see on land. Vyañjanā is the opening up of a stream of impulses which 'confuse our heads and comfort our souls.'

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The receptive power, Viśvanātha tells us, is conditioned by the purity of creative genius we possess. A mere utterance of a word falls flat on the insensitive ear. He gives other reasons also which we leave out in the interest of simplicity. The conclusion of this school of thinkers is that the meaning that moves us to the very depths of our life, brightens even the distant horizons of our soul as in a flash and builds us a new visionary future for the moment, cannot be the ordinary meaning of a word. It is the extraordinary function of the word, or for the matter of that, of any sensible element in a work of art, that we call Dhvani.

6. *Reactions against Dhvani School.*

It is a long way from the perceptible to the imperceptible in Art. The way is by no means easy. It requires a genuine act of creation on the part of the artist to embody the supersensible through the sensible and to relish it through a process of rapturous self-forgetfulness. Many an unfortunate being, bound by the necessity of psycho-organic make-up, fails to pass beyond the primary sense-datum in a work of art. A Vedic Ṛk[55] poetically expresses the idea of such a failure. "A man looks at Vāk (language) and yet he may not see it; he listens to it, but he may not hear it. She, like loveful well-clad lady, reveals her body to her lover." Modern Psychology explains the power and process of revealment by its hypothesis of Einfuhlung. The power indeed is more mysterious than what Empirical Psychology can explain. It is the gift of appreciating 'the heard melodies' which are sweet, and yet a greater gift of appreciating 'the unheard melodies' which are sweeter. We have also discussed India's viewpoint in this connection which is philosophical-cum-linguistic. The main point of the view is that the tendency to merger, and thereby to transcend the limits of empirical

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

existence, is derived from original unity of subject and object.

The advent of Dhvani School raised some weak reactions which died out for want of a following. Mahima Bhaṭṭa[56] did not relish the mystic character of Dhvani and reacted by assimilating it to more familiar process of inference (Anumiti). He admits that there must be movement of the mind in aesthetic experience as it is in a process of reasoning : We pass from 'premises' to 'conclusion.' The poet or the artist also lays down the premises in the form of Vibhāvas etc. and leaves the conclusion to be drawn by the enjoyer. The conclusion here is Rasa-experience. Each Rasa has its own set of causes and conditions. There is a relation of invariable concomitance (Vyāpti) between them. Mahima thus, subsumes Dhvani under the general process of Inference, and brings aesthetic experience in line with rational experience by turning down the innovation of Ānanda.

Mahima is aware of his weak stand, it seems, for he regards Dhvani only as a special form of inference and not quite inference. Dhvani is poetic inference (Kavyānumiti). Mahima's critics pointed out to him that Dhvani, in the sense of logical inference, is fallacious. The only element of truth in his position is that, as in inference, so in aesthetic experience, the mind grows to new realizations of beauty and delight. Both the activities, rational and emotional, are on par in their creative moments, one flashed by the vision of truth and the other by beauty. But the difference is also important : It is the difference between cognition and emotion. In one the mind grows to new understanding; in the other, new emotional currents are started. This difference, we hold, Mahima ignored in likening Dhvani to inferential process.

But the main objection to Mahima's thesis of Poetic inference is anticipated by Ānanda. The mental activity

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

we call inference is founded on the primary and defined meanings or notions. A notion is an intellectual growth and its effectiveness in reasoning depends on its accuracy and definiteness. The meaning of a notion must be 'uni-sign', that is, indicating a single sense on a clearly defined track. The opposite is true in art. The sensible material must be not only full of meanings, but must be a mine of meanings. It should be 'pluri-sign', covering many tracks in the mind. The primary meaning on which discursive thinking depends is, Ānanda says,[57] limited and fixed (Niyata), while the poetic meaning is unlimited and wonderful (Aniyata, Vicitra). It is so because the meaning in art is áupādhika[58] and not autpattika. Meaning is said to be aupādhika when it arises from associations and suggestion. In the course of experience, the primary meaning which forms the nucleus is enriched with the wealth of suggested meaning under varying conditions. The meaning under those conditions (upādhi) becomes 'pluri-sign' and creates a halo of suggestions about it. The very vagueness and breadth of poetic meaning become the reasons of its enjoyability.

Ānanda asks a pertinent question[59] at this stage: If the poetic meaning is so vague and undefined, what good on earth will it do to examine its form? Having nothing definite to convey, anything can be imagined into it, Abhinava says—commenting on it. The reply given is: It is its vagueness[60] that distinguishes the poetic meaning from the primary meaning. Both of them differ in form and function.[61] While the primary meaning has its 'own' meaning, the poetic meaning invariably goes beyond it. Even in music where the sounds are not articulate words, an artistic meáning is conveyed by the same process of Vyañjanā. The musical sounds are suggestive (Vyañjaka) in so far as they create a state of rhythm. The function of Dhvani is realised from vocal and non-vocal sounds, and

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

even from the movements and actions which are not verbal at all. The only point[62] is that by the way of Dhvani, things grow in artistic beauty.

Mammaṭa[63] sums up the conditions (upādhi) which enrich and divert the primary sense towards its poetic meaning. These are the sources of suggestions which initiate in the mind trains of imagery. We may remember here that these conditions are only external. The real working of Dhvani will depend on the aesthetic sensibility of the person enjoying it. They are, for instance, (1) the character and history of the person into whose mouth a statement is put. In a drama, a statement does not mean much in itself. But the statement becomes the mine of rich meanings as soon as we are put in mind the personality to which it is attributed. (2) Similarly, the history of the addressee which is a rich source of suggestiveness, (3) accent, (4) structure of a statement, (5) peculiarity of the primary content, (6) contiguity to some other meaning, (7) context, (8) time and (9) place are the sources of enrichment and re-direction of the mind from the perceptible datum to the enjoyable aesthetic meaning.

7. *Nature of Aesthetic Cognition.*

As is wont to be the case, the creative epoch of Dhvani was succeeded by a period of intense elaborative activity. From a mass of jumbled thought, however, a few luminous contributions stand out with a rare force of inventive boldness. They enlighten us on some intriguing problems of aesthetic experience, such as, aesthetic cognition and modus of artistic realization. We consider them below.

(a) *Śaṅkuka's Theory of Aesthetic Illusion.*

That a work of art differs from a real thing is obvious. The crux of the question is : How does it differ ? Śaṅkuka[64] takes the example of a dramatic performance which repre-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

sents the central problem of all arts. A Naṭa appears on the stage to play 'Rāma'. How is he able to create beauty-thrill by his appearance ? In the same way a painted horse is not the same thing as the real horse. Yet the 'painted horse' succeeds in creating beauty-experience which the real horse may not. At least the artist's horse should go beyond the Zoologist's. Yet the painter's horse is not real; it is not unreal either. We do not say : 'This Naṭa on the stage is Rāma', nor do we aver, 'He is not Rāma at all.' It is not doubtful even, for our mind is not assailed by doubt. It cannot be a consciousness of similarity, for what similarity can there be between the real Rāma and Rāma on the canvas or on the stage ? The question, therefore, is : What is it that we *cognize* on the canvas or the stage ?

Śaṅkuka says it is a wonderful illusion. We suffer it joyfully because[65] (i) we possess a poetic sense, (ii) and, because of the amazing execution of it by the artist. Like McDougall, Śaṅkuka also teaches that admiration for the artist's executive skill goes half way towards forming aesthetic experience. The horse on the canvas is only two-dimensional, but the painter succeeds in bringing about the 'cubic suggestion', and thereby creating illusion of a real horse. It is artificial, yet for the moment we happily believe it to be real. We allow ourselves to suffer from illusion in our blessed ignorance for the moment. Further, though there is an inferential movement in the mind in cognizing the work of art, yet, because it satisfies the conditions of beauty, we experience aesthetic thrill immediately. Also the Naṭa feels the semblance of Rāma's emotions; the spectator feels the art-emotion or Rasa through aesthetic contemplation.

Jagannātha refers to a School of thinkers who have a leaning towards Neo-Vedānta. We first comprehend[66] a relation of love between Śakuntalā and Duṣyanta in the poet's or the dramatist's creations through the functioning

126

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

of Dhvani. Then through the power of emotional tendency sublimated into aesthetic responsiveness, we superimpose the erotic urge of Duṣyanta on our benighted self for the time being, thus giving rise to a mysterious state of illusion, as it happens when we mistake conch-shell for a piece of silver. Aesthetic experience results, according to this view,[67] from a particular illusory state of the mind. Before Rasa[68] state is generated, we identify our own erotic desire with that of the persons represented to us by the artist. The process of identification has been called Sādhāraṇī-karaṇa. The mind acts in default here, for identification has been regarded as doṣa or defect.[69] It is no other than self-delusion. Like an illusion, it is inexplicable. For it is neither true nor false. When we mistake a rope for a snake, we do so by identification, which is other than false or true. The same mysterious illusion overpowers us in aesthetic experience.

The position as stated above arouses two touchy questions which it handles with signal failure :

1. How can an illusion bring about a state of joy?

2. If identification is the way of art-enjoyment, then should not the same process bring about grief in the presentation of unfortunate aspects of life? The first question[70] is answered by saying that even the rope-snake-illusion creates shudder and trembling in the first moment, the second, by an appeal to the inexplicable nature of poetic functioning. The enduring contribution of this school remains in the fact that aesthetic cognition is extraordinary experience, which Empirical Psychology cannot explain. The chief error of this position is : What it calls 'Illusion' (Bhrama) is the upbuilding process of aesthetic imagination. All ideational processes right up to intellection and reflection where we leave the sensuous element a little behind, there is an element of 'illusion'. Only the word is an unlucky misnomer. A real illusion, Śāradātanaya tells us,

127

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

in an aesthetic experience will linger into memory and will only spoil it.

(b) *Pragmatic Perception of Śāradātanaya.*

Śāradātanaya recounts all arguments of Śaṅkuka[71] against regarding aesthetic perception on par with ordinary perceptions to which the ordinary tests of true, false or doubtful can accrue. He does not agree to Śaṅkuka's theory of Illusion (*Citra-turaga theory*), as it does not resolve the question. Therefore, he proposes a pragmatic test of aesthetic perception. The creator's purpose in producing the work of art is the accrual of beauty-joy from it, and that of the critic is to enjoy the same. So long as an artist may be said to be creating beauty-joy and others enjoying it, the question of epistemological truth and falsity does not arise at all. A work of art does not possess these qualities of knowledge for that is not its aim. It should be true to its own standard of beauty-in-art in its own sphere. Hence, Śāradātanaya tells us that truth of a work of art is its beauty and the measure, how far it achieves it. We call this test pragmatic because, firstly, it is extra-rational, and, secondly, the norm here is set up as the achievement of aesthetic aim.

This application of pragmatism to art-creations is bold and original as it carves out a new career to perceptible element in art. Mere existential judgment about the obvious element in art does not go far at all. We can never get any way towards symbolism in art without subordinating, however consciously, the obvious and expressed to the inexpressible. This subordination is the essence of Dhvani principle. Pragmatism of Śāradātanya is direct corollary of Dhvani. The sensible element in art is what it does (Artha-Kriyā). And it *does* two things to play its role as an element :

1. It subordinates itself to aesthetic meaning.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

2. It brings about Rasa-enjoyment (Rasāsvāda). In doing its function it fulfils itself and becomes true, even without satisfying, or, in spite of, the logical and epistemological standards of truth.

(c) *Bhaṭṭanāyaka's Discovery of Bhāvaka and Bhoga Functions.*

Bhaṭṭanāyaka is he founder of *Bhukti School*[73] in Aesthetics. According to it, we apprehend direct and immediate meaning of the obvious content of art by Abhidhā. We see before us the actor and the actress in the guise of Rāma and Sītā. Now, actual Rāma and Sītā or their dramatis personae as such cannot bring about Rasa experience, the one set being too high above the level and immoral for enjoyment for the common men and the other too false for it. An aesthetic cause[74] should be other than false and within limits of decency and moral beliefs. A work of art must satisfy Reason and Moral Sense besides being beautiful. Our author rejects Śaṅkuka's suggestion that identification (Sādhāraṇya) is the source of art-joy. He thus comes to propose a new function peculiar to art only : It is known as Bhāvaka. This is a function of generalization. 'Sītā' does not remain the venerable consort of Rāma but, by means of Bhāvaka, is reduced to a generic sense of a loving and lovely devoted wife. 'Duṣyanta' and 'Śakuntalā' are no longer enjoyed in art as the great ancients. We are too much 'distanced' from them to be able to enjoy them as such. Nor can we enjoy them when the 'distance' is too little. Hence, before any artistic experience begins we reduce them to their universal and generic essence. Rather we reduce ourselves to pristine purity and become our true selves as God made us and not as we have made of ourselves, in the moment of aesthetic experience. Thus, by means of Bhāvaka[76], the obvious content indicated by Abhidhā is wonderfully transformed and aesthetic causes reduced to their universal form. But it does not end there.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Besides Abhidhā by which we apprehend the immediate data of art, and Bhāvaka by which we generalise, we have in us a spirit of enjoyment (Bhogakṛtva), a spirit by which we enter into an emotional rapport with objects outside. Bhaṭṭanāyaka[77] is emphatic in denying the likening of *Bohga* function to memory or any other form of knowledge., It is not even blind instinctual emotion. *Bhoga* is not the natural emotional reaction of man to his environment. It is that spirit of joy which overlooks petty gains and griefs of our small individual being, looks upon tragedies as divine enactments with a joyful calm, and comedies without a burst of hilarity. This happens, says Bhaṭṭanāyaka, because the mind in beauty-joy becomes shorn of Rajas and Tamas tendencies. As already indicated, Rajas is the principle of action and extroversion. Under its impulse we are our psychological selves interested in our narrow ends. Under the empire of Tamas, we go down to the animal plane, and feel dull and inert beings. With emergence of Sattva[78] in our nature, we return to the fountain of pure joy which is ours in our right as sparks of divine being. It is in this state of the mind that we look at objects of art. They are transfigured because we ourselves are transformed. The greatest catastrophes in art are reduced to flashing moments of new vision and delight. It is a treasureable 'oceanic' emotion.

(To be continued).

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

SURVEY AND CARTOGRAPHY IN THE ŚULVASŪTRAS

By MAYA PRASAD TRIPATHI, M.A.

So far both the oriental and occidental scholars of Indology have studied the Śulvasūtras and the science of Śulva* as an early treatise on Hindu Mathematics, chiefly on geometry. But as a matter of fact they are primarily the earliest systematic and codified treatises on Hindu survey and cartography which mark out a specific age and compilation of a long conventionally pre-existing scattered rules, regulations and literature on the two branches of the most practical learning. They were specifically composed in book-form for sacerdotal, liturgical and building purposes, There must have been much in common in the survey and cartography of the sulvas and those for the land revenue system, geopolitical or geographical purposes, and also there must have been much impact between them for the improvement of the two sciences irrespective of the fact in which domain they originated first, though the orthodox precision must nave started first in the realm of sacrificial constructions. And as such the Śulvasūtras necessitated and pre-supposed a knowledge of mathematics, though they themselves often treat of concise mathematical and geometrical postulates, theorems and methods. Śivadāsa (posterior to Sāyaṇa—1320-1380), commentator on the *Mānavaśulvasūtra* observes "The study of the Śulva should

* Etymologically the word "Śulva" is derived from the root "Śulv" or "Śulb" meaning to measure. Traditionally, however, it had come to have four meanings—(i) actual mensuration and its processes; (ii) the line or surface resulting from such measurement; (iii) a measure—the surveying or measuring instrument; and (iv) surveying or the art of measuring and concomitant cartography.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

be begun after having finished the science of mathematics, otherwise there cannot be a thorough knowledge of the Śulva." So it is only secondarily that they are or should be considered mathematical works. Similar is the case with the modern surveying and cartography also.

Different Śulvasūtras

Related to the different Vedic schools there are nine texts in all of the Śulvasūtras. Bibhutibhūṣaṇa Dutta[1] mentions seven—Baudhāyana, Āpastamba, Kātyāyana, Mānava, Maitrāyaṇa, Varāha and Vāḍhula. Louis Renou[2] names two more—Laugākṣī and Hiraṇyakeśī. In wide features the contents of the different Śulvasūtras are the same, except a few occasional innovations and expositions. The present investigation is mainly based on the most important and oldest ones, namely, Baudhāyana, Āpastamba and Kātyāyana Śulvasūtras, though here and there some references to others also would be found.

A word about the time of the Śulvasūtras. On the ground of external and internal evidences, the three most important ones—Baudhāyana, Āpastamba and Kātyāyana (Kātyāyanaśulva Pariśiṣṭa or Kātīyaśulva) can definitely be placed earlier than 400 B. C. and their chronological order is also the same as their enumeration in these lines. Baudhāyana śulvasūtra is the oldest one and belongs to C. 1000 B. C., though some scholars are prone to assign it a date of 2000 B.C.

The older Perspective

The history of the survey and cartography dilated in the Śulvaśūtras begins far back in the ages anterior to them. Oldenberg[3] has shown tnat the three most primitive *Vedis*

[1] *The Science of the Śulba*, p. 1.

[2] *Vedic India*, Table of Vedic Schools, pp. 50-51.

[3] Oldenberge, *Religion des Veda*, p. 348, n. 2; *S.B.E.*, Vol xxx., p. ix.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

—Gārhapatya, Āhavanīya and Dakśiṇāgni—are older than the Ṛgveda. They can safely be taken back to the era near about 3000 B. C. (on the right or the left of the same). There must have been only a small haitus of a few centuries between their age and that of Harappa and Mohenjodaro civilization. Since in the latter culture some sort of sacrificial system[4] prevailed and now consensus of opinions of majority of scholars has drifted to a positivity that there is a link between Harappa and Mohenjodaro civilization and the Vedic one. Rather there are very strong grounds to believe that in the former there was a definite element of the latter or the Aryans[5]. Hence from the point of view of the evidence of sacrificial system there appears to be a very undeniable ground to surmise that primitive survey work and plan drawing on the ground or stone or the like must have prevailed in 3000 B. C. by the latest.

Again, there is very close similarity between the town planning of Harappa and Mohenjodaro and the Vedic *Vedi* (altar) construction and the town planning of the *Mānasāra* (near about vitruvius era—25 B. C.[6]) and other Śilpaśastras. And it is established without any doubt the Indian Aryana town-planning as found in the Śilpaśāstras or gleaned from other sources was merely developed or modified patterns of *Vedi*-construction. E. B. Havell says[7] "The close connection of the geometrical system (denoted by the mystic figures Paramasayika, Swastika, Sarvatobhadra etc.) with the vedic scrificial lore, and the position of the master builder as a high priest or sacrificial expert, are in-

---

[4] *The Vedic Age* edited by Dr. R. C. Majumdar and Dr. A. D. Pusalkar, p. 186.

[5] *Ibid.* p. 195. New excavations at different places (e.g. Kauśāmbī and others) every day are corroborating further and further this averment.

[6] "*Architecture of the Mānasār*" by Dr. P. K. Acharya, Preface p. LIX.

[7] *History of the Aryan Rule* in India, p. 25.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

direct proof of the great antiquity of the Indian science of town planning". . . . "The laying out of the Indo-Aryan village is treated in the Śilpaśastras as tne preparation of sacrificial ground."[8] Binoda Bihari Dutta remarks further, "The plan of the towns and their dimensions were indentical with those of the geometrical figures, that had to be, and even now, drawn on the sacrificial altars. These figures suggested the plans and the names."[9]

This planning and plan-drawing presupposes and must have had some survey system and cartography. The sum and substance of the preceding paragraph implies that the modes of survey and cartography described in the śulvasūtras might have originated in the lap of Harappa and Mohenjodaro, or in the age prior to the Ṛgveda by the latest. And it must have been developed and cultivated assiduously and scrupulously in the period preceding to the compilation of priestly rules with contemporary additions and alterations or composition of the Śulvasūtras when they had assumed an "advanced form", if we say so with reference to the chronological perspective and other purposes of survey and cartography, for example land holding land revenue and road making and the like, where extreme religious rigidity was not required. Thus the *Vedis* were the earliest or at least one of the earliest necessity and impetus to the survey and cartography in India.

As already said the survey and cartography depicted in the śulvasūtras must be marked for its precision and advanced state, which must have influenced or from which were derived the principles and methods of survey and cartography prevailing in other spheres of individual or community life. This is supported by the followingevidences

---

[8] *Ibid.*, p. 25.

[9] *Town-planning in Ancient India*, p. 7.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

(i) There is clear mention of the field survey or field measurement in the *Ṛgveda.*[10]

(ii) In the *Rāmāyaṇa* (800 or 600 B.C.) we find mention of road building, road survey[11] and bridge construction[12] and town pattern---Padmaka (of the lotus shape), Swastika and Vardhamāna[13] resembling the *Vedis* in Padavinyāsa (division of the ground).

(iii) In the Kurudhamma Jātaka (c. 500 B.C.) we come across an anecdote emphasising exceptional accuracy in land survey.[14]

(iv) A monstrous barrage accross the Raivataka mountain was built in the 4th century B. C.[15]

(v) Kauṭilya's Arthaśāstra (c. 400 B. C.) definitely mentions land survey and points to mapmaking and cartography.[16]

(vi) Magasthenes also says that the Mauryan government had a very organised survey department and officials.[17]

Content Proper of the Śulvasūtras

In all survey and cartographic work determination of cardinal points is the primary thing. It cannot be said with certainty when Indians came to evolve methods for determining cardinal points. But this much is certain that Harappa and Mohenjodaro people[18] and the Ṛgvedic Aryans[19] knew very well methods for determining quarters.

---

[10] *Vedic Index by* Macdonell and Keith, vol. I, pp. 210-11.

[11] *The Rāmāyaṇa* II. 80. [12] *Ibid* VI. 22.58. [13] *Ibid.* V. 4. 7-8.

[14] *The Jātaka or the stories of the Buddha's Former birth*, edited by E. B. Cowell, Vol. II. p. 257.

[15] *Ancient Towns and Cities in Gujerat and Kathiawar* by Dr. A. S. Altekar, p. 22.

[16] Chap. XXXV, part I. समाहर्ता चतुर्धा जनपदं विभज्य etc.

[17] *The Age of Imperial Unity* edited by Dr. R. C. Majumdar and Dr. A. D. Pusalkar, p. 64.

[18] *The Vedic Age*, edited by as above, p. 169.

[19] *The Ṛgveda*, I, 95. 3.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

But during the Ṛgvedic age and afterwards for a very long period the sun was the chief medium for finding out the quarters. Perhaps this was the case with Harappa and Mohenjodaro people as well.

Kātyāyana gives the method of determining cardinal points from the sun.[20] The *Mānavaśulvasūtra* gives four methods of determining cardinal directions.[21] The Śulvasūtras speak of eight compass directions—the four main and the four sub-quarters as occasionally shown on the modern maps.

The first purpose of finding quarters was the orientation of all construction, building and drawing work. Perhaps Harappa and Mohenjodaro people had the practice of orientation towards the east or north, though this much is sure that their orientation was based on the correct compass directions. From the *Ṛgveda* onwards the orientation was always made towards the east,[22] it continued in India upto the age of Maratha cartography,[23] in spite of the wide uses of compasses everywhere in the world by that time. Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (not later than 1000 B.C.) gives the reason for it: "East is the gate of heaven."[24] The gods have their birth place in the east, and men in the west."[25] Similar reason is also advanced by the *Ṛgveda*.[26] The Śulvasūtras always stuck to it. *Tattirīya Saṁhitā*[27], for the first time, speaks of the fundamental line of survey and cartography called Prācī or Pṛṣṭhyā corresponding to the modern North-South line used for the same purposes.

---

[20] *KS*. Kandikā I, 2-3.

[21] The *Science of the Śulba*—Dutta, p. 5.

[22] Vide my paper "*Science of Geography in the Ṛgveda*" G. N. J. R. I. vol xvi, no 1-2 (Nov.-Feb. 1958-59).

[23] Vide my paper "*Solution of a Riddle or Maratha Maps*" Allahabad University "Studies in Humanities", Vol. II, 1958.

[24] *S.B.* Trans. J. Eggeling, p. xxi, part iv.

[25] *Ibid.*, vii, 4.2.40. [26] *The Ṛgveda*, vii. 99.2. [27] vi. 2.4.5.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

It is a curious similarity that Christians also had the same religious veneration for the east and the Christian maps between 700 and 1100 A.D. were oriented to the east.[28] The very term orientation points to the eastern quarter.

The above mode of eastern orientation was a natural development and most scientific in that age, when ancient Babylonians and Egyptians resorted to south west and northern orientation respectively. Later Romans and Arabs oriented their maps towards south.

Concept of Representation.—The *Vedi* construction and various methods of piling of bricks described in the Śulvasūtras had a concept of representation of the sky, atmosphere and earth, its various regions and the oceans. Though it is not mentioned in the Śūlvasūtras specifically, it is very clearly stated in the literature which forms the fountain source of those treatises, '*Vedi* is the representation of the earth' is first mentioned in the *Tattirīya*[29] *Saṁhitā* which is definitely older than the *Śatapathabrāhmaṇa.* Bibhutibhūṣaṇa Dutta has assigned it a date of 3000 B.C. This sort of idea is repeated several times in the *Śatapathabrāhmaṇa.* Representation of the various parts of the universe is given thus in detail, "The first three (bricks) are this (terrestrial) world, the second three the air, and the third (three) the sky, the fourth the eastern, the fifth the southern, the sixth the western, and the seventh the northern regions."[30] *Śatapathabrāhmaṇa*, ix. 1.2.3 and x. 5.4.1 unequivocally speaks of the shape and rotundity of the earth engirdled by ocean. XI.3.1.18-19 seem to refer to some sort of representation of rivers.

In this connection VII.5.1.2—10 of the *Śatapathabrāhmaṇa* are most important, as they influenced or at least

---

[28] *General Cartography* by Raisz, p. 25.

[29] *I.S.* II. 6.4.1; II. 6.4.2-3 says "The earth is of the size of the altar."

[30] *S.B.* Eggeling—viii. 5.3.5; vide viii. 5.2.12-13-15-16; ix.1.2. 11-19-20.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

brone analogy to the conception of the world map and its cartography all over the world for a very long interval. It says that the universe is of the form of a tortoise—the upper shell is the sky, lower one the earth, and what is between the shells is the atmosphere. Regarding this the Book of Ser Marco Polo translated and edited by Sir Henry Yule remarks, "It may be said with general truth that the world maps current upto the end of the 13th century A.D. had more analogy to the mythical cosmography of the Hindus than to anything properly geographical. Both, no doubt, were originally based on the main or real features. In the Hindu cosmography these genuine features are symmetrised as in a kaliedoscope; in the European Cartography these are squeezed together in a manner that one can only compare to a pig in brawn. Here and there some features strange, compressed and distorted is just recognisable. A splendid example of this kind of map is that famous one at Hereford, executed about A. D. 1275, of which a fascimile has lately been published. . . . ."[31] Again the above world map conception of Hindus wonderfully resembles in shape the mosaic map of Madaba.[32]

A word more about the brick like or rectilinear representation of the countries in the circular Hindu *Vedis* curiously enough in the earliest Chinese map of Pei Hsui[33] (224—273 A.D.) we have the same type of representation, and rotundity of the whole map is also the same as mentioned in one of the preceding paragraph (that is, that of a Hindu *Vedi*). Thinking in chronological channel, are we entitled to warrant any influence of Indian cartographical ideas on those of the Chinese, only further researches can ascertain the reality. From Yule's above work it would be further found that the Chinese plans of towns (6th century

[31] Vol. I, p. 132.

[32] *General Cartography* by Raisz, p. 25, table II.

[33] *Ibid.*, p. 12.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

A.D.) closely resembled the *padavinyāsa* (division of ground into squares and rectangles) of the Hindu town plans and were perhaps copied from the latter.[34]

Thus apart from the local mapping and survey and cartography for the administrative purposes of the country, the Indian Aryans of about 2000 B.C. or near about era had liturgically evolved some motion of the mapping or representing the entire earth, occasionally even including the sky and intermediate space. When the *Vedi* was of the form of a quadrilateral, or a square or a wheel, its divisions resembled the modern graticules of the Mercator and gnominic projections respectively. The figure of tortoise (also of one of the *Vedis*) in the later period served as a sort of projection for representing the whole of India. A diagram[35] of the same is appended (*Vide* page 478).

Concept of Scale.—In all sacrificial procedures, the shape of *Vedis* was fixed. Their sizes, however, on different occasions varied tremendously. This gave rise to a very accurate conception of similarity of figures. The latter naturally necessitated a knowledge of some sort of concept of scale. When the altar was enlarged Ekaśatavidha 101 fold), the new unit of measure became $\sqrt{14}$ times of the unit of the measure employed for the primitive fire-altar.[36] In other words, new Prakrama, Aratni, Pada, Yuga, Śamyā and or others (unit of length) equalled $\sqrt{14}$ times these for the primitive altar.[37] Measurement of administrative areas and revenue-

---

[34] *Trans of Book of ser Marco Polo*, vol II, p. 209.

[35] It is based on the *Swarodaya*, a work earlier than the *Bhāgawata* from the History Antiquities by M. Martin, Vol. II. p. 19. The idea of the Kūrma-Niveṣa (tortoise representation) is first found in the *SB* (vide Eng. Trans. of the same by J. Eggeling, vii. 5.1.2. and introduction, part II, p. xxviii.)

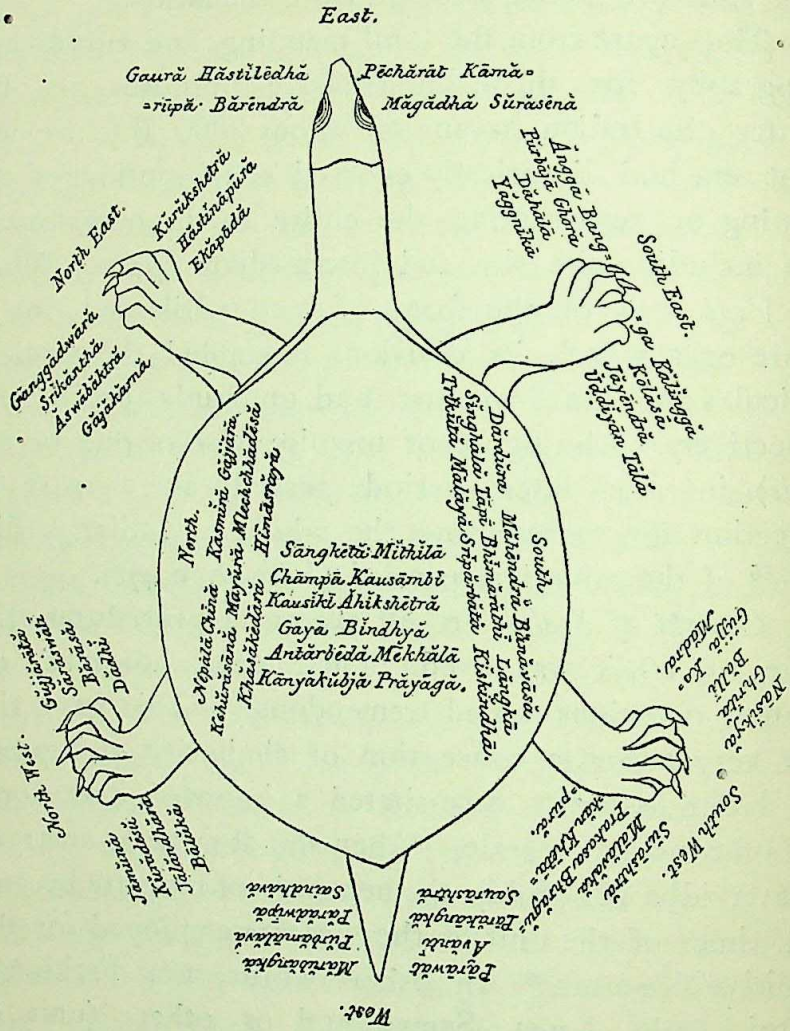
[36] *The Science of Śulva*, p. 160.

[37] *Vide B.S.S.* Chapṭ. I, Sūtra 18.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

lands and its representation on something must have also necessitated some sort of scale.



Division of Bhavatkhanda into 9 Kingdoms, according to the book called Swarodaya.

London 1838. W.H. Allen & Co. 7 Leadenhall St.
J. Netherclift Litheg.

The very fact that the entire earth could be represented in the form of *Vedi*, explicitly implied that those Aryans had the clearest conception that a big

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

thing could be shown for convenience on a reduced size, that is, they had some idea of scale. Further they understood that scale was necessary for enlargement and reduction both of the shapes.

Reduction and enlargement of the *Mahā-vedi* (in the shape of an isosceles trapizium) points to the fact they had realised the need of and actually used the concept of modern R. F. (Representative Fraction)[38]. In reduction of the area to one-third and enlargement to twice the original area they employed the R. F. $1 : \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ and $1 : \sqrt{2}$ respectively. (Of course here the two second numbers of the ratios are not whole numbers).

It can be easily seen that the enlargement and reduction of the plans or maps of *Vedis* are very much similar to the modern pantographic methods and processes.

Survey and Measurement.—How the actual and practical survey work was carried on and how the measurement and cartographical drawing on the ground proceeded can be made clear like a picture by the following descriptions, "From that (the largest post on the east side) one proceeds three vikramas (a unit of measure) to the east and there fixes a pole, this is the middle hindpole (autaḥpātaḥ). From the middle hind pole, he goes 15 prakramas (a measure) towards the south and fixes a pole there; this is the south-west corner (of the Mahāvedi). From the middle hind pole, he proceeds 15 prakramas towards to the north and fixes a pole there; it is the northwest corner. From the middle hind pole he goes 36 prakramas towards the east and fixes a pole; this is the middle front pole. From the middle front pole, he strides 12 prakramas towards the south and fixes a pole; this is the south-east corner. From the middle front pole, he goes 12 prakramas towards the north

[38] The *Science of the Śulba*, p. 153-4.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and fixes a pole there; this is the north-east corner. Such is the measurement (survey) of the (*Maha-vedi*)".[39]

"Add to the length of thirty-six (i.e. to a cord of the length of thirty-six either padas or prakramas) eighteen (the whole length of the cord is then 54), and make two marks on the cord, one at twelve, the other at fifteen, beginning from the western end; tie the ends (of the cord of the Pṛṣthyā line (the pṛṣthyā is the same as the prāchī, the line directed exactly towards the east and west points, and going through the centre of the *Vedi*. The fixing of the prācī was the first thing to be done when any altar had to be measured out. The methods devised for this end will not be discussed here, as they are based on astronomical observations; for our purpose it is sufficient to know that a line of 36 padas length and running from the east towards the west had been drawn on the ground. On both ends of this line a pole was fixed and the ends of the cord of 54 padas length tied to these poles) and taking it by the sign at 15 draw it towards the south; (at the place reached by the mark, after the cord has been well-stretched) fix a pole. Do the same off the northern side (i.e. draw the cord towards the north as you have drawn it just now towards the south). By this process the two Śroṇis, the south-west corner and the south-east corner of the Vedi are fixed. After that exchange (the ends of the cord; i,e. tie that end which had been fastened at the pole on the east end of the prācī to the pole on its west and viceversa), and fix the two Aṁśas ("shoulder" of the *Vedi*, i.e. the south-east corner and the north-east corner). This is done by stretching the cord toward the south having taken it by the mark at fifteen and fixing a pole

[39] *S.B.* III. 5.1.1—6 (quoted from *The Science of the Śulva*, pp. 31-32. In the original text, however, the word "vikrama" is used everywhere for Prakrama occuring in this English Translation. But it is immaterial.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangrf Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

on the spot reached by the mark at twelve; and by repeating the same operation on the northern side. The results are the two Aṁśas. This is the measurement of the *Vedi* by means of one cord."[40]

Here the prāchī line or the line joining middle hind pole (Sālāmukhī or Antaḥpātaḥ Śaṅku) and the middle front pole (Yūpātīya Śaṅku) form a sort of base line of survey corresponding to the modern base line AB in the plane table survey for triangulation.

On baked clay bricks they drew diagrams like those of the Babylonians found in Gaisur and in the vicinity and this is proved by Baudhāyana Śulvasūtra.[41]

Raisz[42] says that modern division of circle into 360 degrees is due to the duodecimal system of the Babylonians. But in India the division of circle into twelve parts was known earlier than the *Ṛgveda*, as in the preparation of Gārhapatya Vedi (which is definitely earlier than the Ṛgveda) a circle was divided into twelve parts. The earliest Śulvakāra Baudhāyana refers to it clearly.[43] And this was independent of any foreign influence and perhaps was earlier than the idea of the Babylonians.

From this and the construction of Rathacakra-citi (wheel-shaped pile of *Vedi*) it is evidenced that these Āryans had some conception of angles and angular measure also. The clear mention of Āgneya (south-east) Nairṛtya (south-west), Vāyavya (north-west) and Īśāna (north-east) Koṇas (angles) also point to the validity of the same. There are devices for drawing rhombus, and parallelogram which indicate that they had an idea of angular measurement. It was called Nata.[44]

---

[40] *Āpsl*, II. 5, (quoted from "on the Śulvasūtras by Dr. Thibaut *J.A.S.* Bengal, 1875).

[41] Chap. II, *Sūtra* 43. (The *Pandit*, Vol. X, p. 143).

[42] *General Cartography*, *Raisz* p. 11.

[43] B. Sl. Chap. II, sūtra 71. (The *Pandit*, Vol. X, p. 166).

[44] *The Science of the Śulba*, pp. 67-70.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Triangulation, Squaring and Rectangulation.—Various forms of *Vedis* and their preparation or piling with bricks proves the division of areas into triangles, squares and rectangles. This triangulation resembles the modern triangulation. Later townplanning also followed this method of division of areas.

This method of division of land was followed upto very late times (c. 18th century) in surveying the country. The following quotation will prove this assertion :

"The indigenous method of land measurement by simple geometry is commented on by Macrabie, brother-in-law and private secretary to Philip Francis—

'We drove out again to the gardens. I have been talking all round and showing the Boundaries to a black surveyor. How the plague these people measure land, I cannot conceive. They neither use the compass nor take sights as our people do, and yet they get the contents of ground with tolerable accuracy. It is by means of square, I believe."[45]

Though Europeans already had arrived in India and begun to influence the country in various ways, still the indigenous method of survey was continuing without being affected at all. Their accuracy, simplicity and suitability has already been testified to in the above quotation.

Concept of Levelling.—In all survey work concept of leveleing is indispensable. In the Kātyāyana śulvasūtra we find the mention of the same. The Āpastamba śulvasūtra also knew it as is clear from यावानग्निस्सरन्ति सा नित्या प्रयुगम् and तावदेव दीर्घंचतुस्स्रम्"[46]

For the survey and cartographical work, śulvasūtras had definite sets of measures which were wonderfully subtle

[45] *Historical Records of Survey of India* by R. H. Phillimore, vol I, p. 134.

[46] *K.S.L.* I. 2.; *Āp. SL.* p. 202 and 20 Mysore edition vide *G.N.R.E.I.* Vol. IV, 1947. pp. 262-3.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

and clearly defined. The smallest unit could measure nearly a one-third of the mileimetre.[47] Kātyāyana gives still smaller unit which could measure nearly one-fortieth of a mileimetre.[48]

Instruments of Measurements.—In this surveying and cartography, the following instruments were used :—

1. Ox-hides (Aukṣṇa Carma)—some sort of linear or spatial measure for measuring ground[49].
2. Bamboo-rod,[50] sticks and canes.
3. Rope or cord.
4. Poles.
5. Gnomon.
6. Śamyā (a ruler of 36 or 32 Angulas, one Angula $=\frac{3}{4}''$ nearly).
7. Sphya—wooden sword for drawing lines etc.

The Aryans of those days performed geometrically what the Romans did with Groma.

In Harappa a broken rod with graduation mark has been found.

The cord used for these purposes had different marks like measuring tape of the modern times. The Mānava-Śulvasūtra says it had five joints (Pañcāṅgī) two ties and three marks.

Kauṭilya, perhaps almost contemporary of the Kātyāyana Śulvasūtra mentions a measure Rajju which was nearly 60 ft. resembling the modern Gunter chain.

Those well-versed in the science of Śulva were quite expert in plotting and drawing the very complicated figures of various types of Vakrapakṣa-śyenaciti (a falcon or hawk shaped pile)[51] Kaṅkaciti (kite or heron-shaped pile)[52] and Rathacakra-citi (wheel-shaped pile) and also knew the

---

[47] *B.Sl.* Chap. I, Sūtra 4.
[48] Verses 23—26.
[49] *S.B.* I. 2.5.2.
[50] *M.S.* III. 2.4.
[51] *Pandit*, Vol. X, p. 211—13.
[52] *Ibid.*, New Series, Vol I, p. 323.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

drawing of triangle, rhombus, parallelogram, rectangles, squares and circles[53] and the determination of the areas of these, it proves that they could perform survey of any plot of land[54] howsoever complicated and irregular and calculated its area.

But division of ground into squares and plotting of details in them had become a more general practice in later times.

A Comparative Study—Encyclopaedia Britannica[55] says "It is very probable that surveying had its origin in ancient Egypt." Raisz[56] observes "For purposes of taxation the land was carefully measured and registered and the boundaries marked. Ramses II (1333—1300 B.C.) initiated a systematic land survey of the empire." Similarly Babylonian art of cartography is also considered to be of great antiquity. Some assign it a date of even 2500 B.C.[57] Whatever be the antiquity of survey and cartography in these lands, if we make comparative study of the former two with India, it would be found that these two branches of practical sciences are still older in the latter country. Harappa and Mohenjodaro plannings (of at least 3000 B.C.), measurement and construction of the *Vedis* coming down from an age prior to the *Ṛgveda* and accurate measurement of land mentioned in the *Ṛgveda*[58] obviously and very easily prove this.

The survey, planning and cartography of very large *Vedis* like Aśwamedha and others were conclusively superior to those required and performed in the construction of the biggest pyramid (Khufu's 2898—2875 B.C.) of

---

[53] *The Science of Śulba*, Chap. IV.

[54] *Ibid.*, Chap. V.

[55] Vol. 21; page 609.

[56] *General Cartography*, p. 11.

[57] *Ibid.*, p. 12; *Antiquity*, September, 1935, Ancient Babylonian maps and plans by Eckhard Unger.

[58] *Vedic Index*, Macdonell and Keith, Vol. I, pp. 210-11.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Gizeh in Egypt covering a volume of 85,000,000 cubic feet and height 481 feet.[59] In laying out the Aśwamedha Vedi survey of no less than $\frac{85,000,000}{481} = 180,000$ square feet had to be carried on very accurately. And most probably this was carried on in India near about the same date as in Egypt.

About these sciences of Śulva, Prof. Louis Renou remarks that these,"... constitute the most ancient document of India Geography". (namely practical geography—survey and cartography).[60]

In conclusion it is obligatory to observe that no actual cartographic specimen of the period under consideration has been found, nor is perhaps expected to be found, since the ancient Hindus had little propensity to put the history or geography systematically on record. This was still more emphatically applicable to maps, plans, diagrams or other cartographic specimens. Whatever was drawn or made was destroyed; or carelessness and cruel time engulfed their existence. Naturally then it is only through the description and references to these in the śulvasūtras that we have to build our entire edifice of investigation.

Abbreviations.

SBE=Sacred Books of the East.
KSl=Kātyāyana Śulvasūtra.
BSl=Baudhāyana Śulvasūtra.
ĀpSl=Apastamba Śulvasūtra.
SB=Śatapathabrāhmaṇa.
T.S=Tattirīya Saṁhitā.
J.G.N.R.I=Journal of the Ganganatha Jha Research Institute.
M.S=Maitrāyāṇīya Saṁhitā.
General Cartography by Raisz (1938 edition).

---

[59] *History of the World*, J. A. Hammerton, Vol. I, p. 509.
[60] *Vedic India*, p. 41.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

REVIEWS OF BOOKS

THE INDO-GREEKS by Dr. A. K. Narain, Reader in Ancient Indian History and Culture, Banaras Hindu University, published by Oxford University Press, 1957, pp. XVI-201 with three maps and six plates, price Rs. 26/-.

The present book deals with the political history of the Indo-Greeks, also known as the Graeco-Bactrians or the Yavanas, who dominated the land from the Jaxarates to the Ganges in the second and first centuries B.C. It substantially represents the author's thesis for the Ph. D. Degree of London University, prepared under the guidance and consultation of some of the greatest living scholars of ancient Indian history, not only in this country, like Drs. A. S. Altekar and R. C. Majumdar, but also in some other countries, like Dr. A.L. Basham, Dr. R. B. Whitehead, Dr. John Allan, Prof. E. H. Warmington and others. The author of the book has taken full opportunity of his stay at the School of Oriental and African Studies, London for thoroughly examining all the sources of Indo-Greek history, and, as such, his work serves as a model for critical revision of a chapter of ancient Indian history, haphazardly shaped in a long course of time, by a fresh examination of its sources.

The history of the Indo-Greeks, no doubt, suffers badly from the paucity of source-material. But this suffering has been still more aggravated by speculative thinking of some of its writers, which seems to be at its best in the writings of two great masters of learning namely, Dr. K. P. Jayaswal and Dr. W. W. Tarn. Dr. A. K. Narain deserves our thanks for bringing the Greek period of Indian history out of the clutches of the fertile imagination of

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

some of these scholars notably those of Dr. Tarn. Unfortunately, however, Dr. Narain himself has indulged in conjectures at certain points. In the 'Preface' of his book he himself admits, "I have been forced to make surmises." He thinks that these surmises "have been made with caution." But it is possible that others do not think so. To us it seems that Dr. Narain has been forced to make these conjectures because of his 'numismatistic' approach to the Indo-Greek history. His "reconstruction of the history of the Indo-Greeks is primarily based on numismatic evidence", and the literary sources have been used only to "strengthen" "very important conclusions" (p. viii). This seems to us putting the cart before the horse. Naturally we may best learn history only from the literary (including epigraphic) sources and coins can generally be used, by their scrappy nature, only to corroborate this history. It appears to us that all the two or three "very important conclusions" in Dr. Narain's book, drawn from the numismatic evidences, are hardly untenable, and the learned Doctor's attempts to get support for them from the literary sources are not very convincing.

Perhaps the most important discovery in the whole of Dr. Narain's thesis is apportioning of some work, attributed to Demetrius I by almost all other historians to another king of the same name (Chap. II). Dr. Narain takes some points of differences between the Bactrian and the cis-Hindukush coins of Demetrius I indicative of the existence of two Demetrii—one king of Bactria and the other king of 'India'—completely disregarding the possibility of these differences due to geographical conditions (pp. 29—33). Dr. Narain applies his idea of two Demetrii even to the literary sources for the history of Demetrius, in my opinion, caring little for what naturally follows from them. We learn from Polybios that king Euthydemus of Bactria had a son named Demetrius, who "was worthy of royal power".

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Then Strabo quite unambiguously informs us that, with Menander, this Demetrius, son of Euthydemus, king of the Bactrians, "took possession, not only of Patalene but also, on the rest of the coast, of what is called the kingdom of Saraostus and Sigerdis." Justin and Chaucer have most probably referred to this Demetrius as "King of India" in contrast with Eucratides, who, having seized Bactria from Demetrius, left him only as a king of India. But quite contrary to the clear statement of Strabo that Demetrius, the son of Euptydemus, conquered Pāṭala, Surāshṭra etc., with Menander, Dr. Narain tries to differentiate Demetrius, son of Ethydemus, from Demetrius, the king of India, even on the basis of literary sources (pp. 34—39). It is on the basis of the following passage of Strabo, as given by M' Crindle (Ancient India As Described In Classical Literature, p. 209), that all the historians have conclusively accepted Demetrius, the son of Euthydemus, as the conqueror of some parts of India :—

"The Greeks who occasioned its (Bactri's) revolt became so powerful by means of the fertility and advantages of the country that they became masters of Ariana and India according to Apollodorus of Artemita. Their chiefs, particularly Menander (if he really crossed the Hypanis to the east and reached Isamus) conquered more nations than Alexander. These conquests are achieved partly by Menander, partly by Demetrius, son of Euthydemus, king of the Bactrians. They got possession not only of Patalene but of the kingdom of Saraostus and Sigerdis, which constitute the remainder of the coast. Apollodorus, in short, says that Bactriana is the ornament of all Ariana. They extended their empire even so far as the Seres and Phryne."

Inspite of the defect of not giving the Indian conquests of Menander and Demetrius separately, the general import of this passage is quite clear. In the first sentence,

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

it says that the Graeco-Bactrians became masters of Aríana and India. In the last two sentences it says that not only this, the Graeco-Bactrians had conquered even Seres and Phryne. Between these two statements, giving extention of the Graeco-Bactrian dominions, this passage gives some details of the Graeco-Bactrian conquest of India. In this connection it says that the Graeco-Bactrian chiefs, Menander and Euthydemus's son, Demetrius, conquered all lands upto Pāṭala and Surāshṭra. Menander is said to have made still more conquests in the east—if he really crossed the Beas (which was the returning point of Alexander) and reached Isamus (now generally identified with the Jamunā or the Kālindī etc.), then he conquered more of India than even Alexander the Great did.

To me Dr. Narain seems a bit confused about the interpretation of this passage when he says that this passage attributes the conquests of "Saraostus and Sigerdis in India, and the Seres and Phryne towards Ferghana" to Demetrius and Menander jointly (pp. 36—37). Probably the above passage assigns to Menander and Demetrius only Indian conquests upto Isamus in the east and Patalene, Saraostus and Sigerdis in the south in contrast with comparatively smaller Indian conquests of Alexander. Then Dr. Narain distributes this joint conquest by assigning Seres and Phryne to Demetrius and Saraostus and Sigerdis to Menander, although the passage says quite clearly that "they" (not Menander alone) got possession of Patalene, Saraostus and Sigerdis. Dr. Narain has taken all pains to show that some area to the north-east of Bactria (most probably comprising of Seres and Phryne) was conquered by Demetrius (pp. 25—28), but hardly to any conviction.

Another important conclusion drawn from the numismatic evidences by Dr. Narain, unlike his theory of creating two Demetrii out of Demetrius I, is the merger of two

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Apollodoti into Apollodotus II (pp. 64—69 and 122—127), although, as he himself says, "No one seems to doubt the existence of two Apollodoti" (p. 64). In opposition to all other numismatists and historians, Dr. Narain says that "there is hardly any evidence for the existence of an early Apollodotus I as a king of the Indo-Greeks" (p. 69), and once more that "we have hardly any evidence to suppose the existence of an Apollodotus I" (p. 122). Dr. Narain comes to this very big conclusion from certain little peculiarities of the coins attributed to Apollodotus I, which are, according to him, indicative of a late date, such as absence of tetradrachms among his issues, non-appearance of king's portrait on his coins, occurrence of some types and monograms etc. A sneaking doubt of some numismatists about the authenticity of one coin of Eucratides I of the 'Kavisiey Nagar' type overstruck on a piece of Apollodotus, which has been accepted by almost all numismatists and historians as an evidence for more or less contemporaneity of Apollodotus I with Eucratides, has been turned by Dr. Narain into a well established fact of unauthenticity of this coin without much evidence commensurate with the importance of this point. For supporting his theory Dr. Narain tries even to disparage the authority of some literary sources referring to an early king named Apollodotus (pp. 64—68). He quotes the following passage from the Periplus of the Erythraean Sea about Apollodotus with emphasis on some parts of it (p. 68): "The country in land from Barygaza is inhabited by numerous tribes, such as the Aratti, the Arachosii the Gandarii and the people of Poclais, in which is Bucephalus Alexandria. *Above these is the very warlike nation of the Bactrians who are under their own king.* And Alexander setting out from these parts, penetrated to *the Ganges*, leaving aside Damirica and the southern part of India; and to the present day ancient drachmae are current in Barygaza, *coming from this country; bearing inscriptions*

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

in Greek letters, and the devices of those who reigned after Alexander, Apollodotus and Menander".

Most of the historians have naturally inferred from this passage that, among the successors of Alexander, Apollodotus was a well-known king like Menander. As the Periplus places him before Menander, he might be a predecessor, at any rate more or less a contemporary, of Menander. This Apollodotus must have ruled over the extensive "country inland from Barygaza" from where his coins came. But it is most probably in connection with such simple inferences that Dr. Narain says, "Much has been made of this passage without justification" (p. 68). Dr. Narain himself draws the following conclusions from this passage: "The passage clearly implies that these coins came from some outside area, probably from where the warlike nation of the Bactrians ruled. Or it may be that the author of the Periplus had seen the coins of a certain Apollodotus and Menander and noticed similar coins in Barygaza not necessarily of their own minting. The name of Apollodotus mentioned in the Periplus evidently refers to the later kings of that name" (p. 68). The readers may judge for themselves the strength and validity of these conclusions. The author of the Periplus clearly says that the coins of Apollodotus came from "this country" meaning most probably "the country inland from Barygaza", that is, the Indo-Kābul valley; but Dr. Narain makes them come from Bactria which is referred to as a "nation" in this passage. Similarly the Periplus refers to the coins of Apollodotus as genuine "ancient drachmae" "bearing inscriptions in Greek letters" and "the devices" of Apollodotus, but Dr. Narain seems to think that these coins struck as forgeries to the author of the Periplus. The Periplus places Apollodotus before Menander, but to the mind of Dr. Narain it "evidently" (?) refers to a later king of that name.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

It is perfectly certain from the Periplus that there was a great Indo-Greek king with the name of Apollodotus who most probably lived before Menander. This makes Bayer's emendation of Apollodorus (which is not known to be the name of any Indo-Greek king) into Apollodotus in Trogus' reference to the conquest of India by Apollodorus and Menander. Dr. Narain, however, tries to disparage this simple emandation without much justification (pp. 66—67) and proposes his own emendation involving much more tampering with the whole sentence in Trogus' Prologue (p. 67).

Dr. Narain's historical reconstruction of the Mitra coins of Pañchāla, Mathurā, etc. also does not seem to us to be wholly convincing. He is quite right to think with all other historians that these coins are indicative of the existence of local states of Mitra kings at Ahichhatrā, Mathurā, Kauśāmbī etc. But his acceptance of John Allan's date for the beginning of these dynasties from before the time of Pushyamitra Śuṅga (pp. 86. 91), which is to some extent only a guess, will hardly find universal acceptance. Dr. Narain goes still further and identifies the Mitra kings of Sāketa, and Magadha with those of Pañchāla and Mathurā (p. 86—91) against the opinion of some great numismatists and historians. He furthermore thinks that the inscriptions of Brahmamitra and Indramitra on the Bodhagayā railings were engraved by the Mitra kings of the same name and that they were not engraved in some pilgrimage etc., but after their conquest of Bodhagayā region (p. 86). Dr. Narain tries to adduce support for his theory of invasion of Magadha by the Mitra kings of Pañchāla and Mathurā by accepting Prof. D. R. Mankad's restoration of a doubtful passage of the *Gārgī-Saṁhitā* meaning that Sāketa and Pāṭaliputra were invaded by the Pañchālas, Mathurās and Yavanas—not by the Yavanas alone as accepted by other historians

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

(pp. 82-83 and also Appendix IV). A critical examination of the relevant passage of the *Gārgī Saṁhitā* would require a separate article. Suffice it to say here that Dr. K. P. Jayaswal's reading, based on Kern's manuscript, which has been accepted by almost all historians but rejected by Dr. Narain, comes almost perfectly from a manuscript, no matter the manuscript is lost, and so it is preferable to the imperfect reading of even four other Mss. which come to a sensible reading only after conjectural restorations of Prof. Mankad. Even if we do not believe Kern, in absence of the Mss. consulted by him, to have given a true reading, there is hardly any justification for completely ignoring Jayaswal's reading for that of Mankad's. Moreover, the Yavana (not Pañchāla and Mathurā) invasion of Sāketa and Magadha is strongly corroborated respectively by the *Mahābhāṣya* (not to mention even Abhayānandī) and the Hāthīgumphā inscription of Khāravela. Of these two, though in vain, Dr. Narain tries to impeach the testimony of the Hāthigumphā inscription mainly on two grounds; firstly, the reading Yavanarāja in this inscription is not certain, and secondly, the word Yavana may here mean Śaka—not Greek (p. 43). So far as the reading Yavanarāja is concerned it has been ultimately accepted by almost all epigraphists and historians and Dr. Narain himself does not suggest anything more than meaningless possible alternate readings of one or two letters of this word. The term Yavana was being used for the Graeco-Bactrians definitely about the time of Khāravela as evidenced from the epithet 'Śaka-Yavana-Pahlava-nihudanasa' in the Nasik cave inscription used for Gautamīputra Śatakarṇī who must be supposed to have been more or less a contemporary of Khāravela. About Patañjali's reference to the Yavanas as the invaders of Sāketa to complete exclusion of the Pañchālas and Mathurās, who were associated with the Yavanas in their invasion of

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Sāketa and Pāṭaliputra, according to Dr. Narain, the learned Dr. Says, "It would be very natural for the Yavanas to receive undue prominence in the account, since they must have been quite conspicuous, because this was probably the first time that a Greek army penetrated as far east as Pāṭaliputra" (p. 175). To say the least all this is mere presumption without any evidence.

Dr. Narain thinks that "the Mauryan empire must have begun to break up nearly a quarter of a century before the usurpation of Pushyamitra" (p. 9). In this connection he advances the following arguments :—'Already. . . a son of Aśoka named Jālauka, had taken possession of Kashmir (according to Kalhaṇa's Rājataraṅgiṇī). From the late and confused evidence of Tārānātha, Gandhāra was apparently ruled by Vīrasena, another descendant of Aśoka; and from Polybius we know that Antiochus III renewed his alliance with Sophagasenus, the Indian king" (pp. 8-9). But hardly any of these arguments is conclusive. Kalhaṇa and Tārānātha are not known always to give historical information. Dr. Narain himself finds faults with them. Antiochus III had met Sophagasenus just after crossing the Hindukush, and for showing isintegration of the Mauryan empire on this evidence it has to be proved that the Mauryan emperors ever ruled directly, not through sub-kings, over all the lands upto the Hindukush. Eminent historians, like R. C. Majumdar, K. P. Jayaswal, R. P. Chanda, P. C. Bagchi, H. C. Raichaudhary and others, have held on several evidences that the empire of Pushyamitra included the Indus valley. But Dr. Narain does not appear to take these evidences worthy of even passing reference.

According to Dr. Narain Menander was the Yavana invader of Pāṭaliputra (p. 81). For this Dr. Narain relies upon the chronological evidences which are perhaps the

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

weakest elements of ancient Indian history (pp. 82-83). He places the reign of Menander, the Yavana invasion of Sāketa, mentioned in the *Mahābhāṣya* of Patañjali, and victory of Vasumitra over the Yavanas on the banks of the Sindhu at the same time near about 150 B. C. However, as a matter of fact, none of these events is known definitely to have taken place about 150 B.C. This also is by no means certain that they are in any way connected with one another. Menander's invasion of Pāṭaliputra goes against the testimony of Strabo also who has expressed doubt even on Menander's crossing the Beas. Dr. Narain thinks that "Strabo's doubts may be due to the fact that he knew something about the unsuccessful nature of the Yavana advance in the Madhyadeśa" (p. 83). This is a conjecture pure and simple. Had Strabo known of Menander's advance upto Pāṭaliputra, successful or unsuccessful, why should he have doubted his going beyond the Beas even ?

We know with certainty only this much that the Greeks who came to India were the off-springs of the Bactrian or Hellenistic Greeks. But Dr. Narain says that "the people with whose history we are concerned included not only late arrivals on the scene, the veterans of Alexander or colonists of the Seleucids, but also many settlers from Greek cities of Asia who had dwelt in the region for some generations" (p. 6). For supporting this theory of the existence of the Greeks near about Bactria before Alexander, Dr. Narain relies upon the unreliable myths of Dionysus, Branchos etc. in the Graeco-Roman literature, and those of 'Yavana' or 'Yona' in Pāṇini's Grammar, and *Majjhima Nikāya* of Indian literature (pp. 1—3), which may well be later interpolations or vague allusions to the Achaemenids or some other foreigners. Even if correct, these casual references are hardly adequate enough to postulate

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

a theory of Greek colony close to the north-west of India before the time of Alexander. For the sake of argument even if we accept this colony, it has to be proved that the Graeco-Bactrians, who came to India, were connected with it.

The history of the Indo-Greeks has yet to be cleared off surmisings.

K. C. OJHA,
M.A., D. Phil.,
Ancient History Department,
University of Allahabad.

VIṢṆUDHARMOTTARA-PURĀṆA. THIRD KHAṆḌA, VOL. I, Edited by Dr. (Miss) Priyabala Shah, Gaekwad's Oriental Series, No. CXXX, pp. 411. Price Rs. 20. Oriental Institute, Baroda, 1958.

Scholars would welcome this edition of the *Viṣṇudharmottara* Khaṇḍa III, for the first time critically edited with the help of four manuscripts. The work is important for the study of fine arts in ancient India. In fact, it is a treatise on the Fine Arts of Ancient India. The learned editor is the Head of the department of Ancient Indian Culture, Rāmānanda Mahāvidyālaya, Ahmedabad and should be congratulated for this excellent edition so critically edited. The text *inter alia* consists of 15 chapters on नृत्तसूत्रम्, 9 on चित्रसूत्रम्, 42 on प्रतिमालक्षणम्, and 32 on प्रसादलक्षणम्. The Director of the Baroda Oriental Institute states in his foreword that the editor's critical discussion and interpretation of various topics covered by the text will follow in the second volume which is in the press, and hence, we eagerly await the release of that volume and reserve all our remarks when that is taken up for review.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

The Director notifies in his foreword that the Nepal manuscript could not be utilized as the State policy in this respect seems to be undecided. Without appearing to defend Nepal, it is our duty to point out that India is not entitled as of right to the free use of manuscripts when Nepal gets in return the printed edition. When the India Government gives financial help for learning the languages of Spain, Brazil, etc., and wants to send India's Cultural ambassadors to those countries, is it not our duty to adopt a similar measure for Nepal which is and had been culturally one with India from time immemorial. Even in the editing of a text, the अध्यापन is the real meaning of अध्ययन as Prabhākara states in his Mīmāṁsā commentary. When this is done and not till then could we legitimately satisfy Nepal. This is a matter not of mere political reciprocity, it is *cultural justice*. There is a manuscript in Dacca which was not procurable. Ways and means for getting such Mss. should be devised.

INTRODUCTION TO THE VYAVAHĀRAKĀṆḌA OF KṚTYA KALPATARU of Lakṣmīdhara by K. V. Rangaswami Aiyangar, Gaekwad's Oriental Series, No. CXXVII, pp. xvii & 129 in English and Index of half verses in Sanskrit, pp. 108. Price Rs. 10·50. Oriental Institute, Baroda, 1958.

The Sanskrit text of the Vyavahāra Kāṇḍa of the *Kṛtyakalpataru* of Lakṣmīdhara was edited in 1953 by the present editor. In view of the bulk (834 pages) of the Sanskrit text, the English introduction was reserved for a separate volume viz., the one under review. Lakṣmidhara devotes the 12th section (out of 14 on the whole) to a treatment of *Vyavahāra* which is the adjectival and substantive law. The section which immediately precedes this is the *Rājadharma*. The two duties of a king are protec-

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

tion in the widest sense (प्रजारक्षणम्) and seeing to the settlement of disputes between men (दर्शनम् व्यवहाराणाम्). The elaboration of this second duty is the *Vyavahārakāṇḍa*.

Lakṣmīdhara's special value in this volume is that he was the minister of Govindacandra of Kanouj who ruled over the greater part of northern India and as judge he tried suits which came up to him. The intrinsic merits of the work invoked the reverence of later writers on the subject and even entire passages were absorbed. The learned historian and editor has given in English in 129 pages a succint account of the entire law of Vyavahāra as laid down by Lakṣmīdhara and the world of scholarship is indebted to him. The editor has *inter alia* explained the four bases of Vyavahāra including *Rājaśāsana* laid down by Nārada and others; and the erroneous motion that Nārada exalts the power of the king to absolutism is exposed. What was the state of the Law prior to Lakṣmīdhara and how it has changed, if at all, during the time of Lakṣmīdhara questions bristling with difficulty are left to future research scholars. We look forward eagerly to the publication of the other volumes at an early date.

SEVEN WORDS IN BHARATA—What do they Signify by K. M. Varma, xv 144 pp, Orient Longmans Rs. 5/-.

Nāṭya Śāstra of Bharatamuni is considered to be the basic work on Indian dramaturgy and the earliest available commentary on this work is the *Abhinavabhāratī* by Abhinava Gupta. *Nāṭyaśāstra* with its commentary has been published under the Gaekwad's Oriental Series edited by the late M. Rama Krishna Kavi. In the preface to this edition it is stated that the manuscripts of the commentary were highly imperfect and fully corrupt in their contents and that in spite of the best efforts of reputed scholars to improve the commentary there still remain a number of places where

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

the text of the *Abhinavabhāratī* does not yield a sensible and satisfactory construction which agrees with the text. The present thesis under notice is another effort to improve the text of the *Abhinavabhāratī* firstly with reference to two sets of questions put by the Munis to Bharata mentioned in the 1st and the 6th Chapters (Ch. 1. Ver. 4 and 5 and Ch. 6. Ver. 2 and 3) and secondly to the meaning of the seven words occurring in the text. 1. Sūtra, 2. Bhāṣya, 3. Saṅgraha, 4. Kārikā, 5. Nirukta 6. Ānuvaṁsya and 7. Nidarśana. Regarding the two sets of questions, Abhinava takes the view that they are not separate as the second set comes out of one of the previous set. But the present author rightly points out that the two distinctly separate, indicating that the first set is fully answered in the first chapter itself and that the second set in the 6th chapter raises fresh points. With regard to the seven technical terms the author has given very apt meanings which exactly fit in with the context in the original text. In the last part (Part III) of the thesis the author has dealt with some topics pertaining to the *Nāṭyaśāstra* such as chronology of works of the Pre-Bharata period method of quoting Ānuvaṁsyas etc. In the exposition of the subject there is much repetition of ideas and even of sentences. The author admits this and says that he had to do it for the sake of emphasis. Among the modern scholars who have interpreted Bharata's text, the author makes mention of Mm. P. V. Kane and Dr. S. K. De and disapproves their approach. *Nāṭya Śāstra* has assumed much importance now-a-days and the students of this śāstra should feel thankful to the author for throwing light on points which had remained un-noticed till now.

—V. Hanumanthachar

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

THE BHAGAVADGĪṬĀ as a Philosophy of God-realisation by Prof. R. D. Ranade, XV, 321 pp. Pub. Nagpur University. Price Rs. 10/-.

In five parts, divided into twenty one chapters, with minor divisions this book deals with the *Bhagavadgītā* and its teachings. This is in the nature of a symposium on the teachings of the *Gītā* explaining the views of various writers, Indian and Western and giving the author's interpretation on some important topics. Chapters 1–3 are devoted to explaining the relation of the *Bhagavadgītā* to the upaniṣads, the systems of Sāṅkhya, Yoga and the *Brahmasūtras*. Chapter IV deals with the Vedāntic interpretations of Śaṅkara. Rāmānuja, Mādhva and Vallabha while chapter V is assigned to explaining the mystical interpretation of the *Gītā* according to Jñānesvara. Then follow Chapters VI to XIV dealing with modern interpretations e.g. interpolationism of Garbe etc. Devotionalism of Bhandarkar, Christianism of Weber etc. who hold that the *Bhagavadgītā* was influenced by Christianity, Buddhism of Buddhirāja who says that the *Bhagavadgītā* has borrowed from Buddhism, Activism of B. G. Tilak, detachment theory of Gandhi, Divinisation of Aurobindo and a host of interpretations by other modern prominent interpreters. In Chapters XV to XX the author draws attention to some antinomies in the *Gītā* and his solutions for them such as God-Personal or impersonal, activity or passivity, immanence or transcendence, world real on unreal, Videhamukti or Kramamukti etc. Moralism, Super-moralism and beatiffcism are next explained followed by the problem of God, methods of meditation and an exposition of what is sublime vision of God. The last Chapter deals with the sublime and the Divine besides these. Several connected topics have been discussed and comparisons have been drawn with the views of western philosophers.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

In connection with the interpretation of the conception of liberation according to the great Ācāryas, the author quotes two verses, 54 and 55 from the 18th Adhyāya. Therein he points out four stages in the process of final liberation as implied in the words, (1) ब्रह्मभूत, (2) मद्भक्ति, (3) मामभिजानाति and (4) मां . . . विशते and thinks that the first stage is absolutely unnecessary as he sees no necessity of attaining to Bhakti or Jñāna after there is Brahmabhāvanā. He further says that if the devotee began with Bhakti it would have been quite understandable (p. 54). Here, the author has evidently equated ब्रह्मभवन with ब्रह्मप्रवेश which is the last stage itself and hence, the confusion. Śrī Mādhva, on the other hand, has explained ब्रह्मभवन as ब्रह्मणि स्थिति : सर्वदा तन्मनस्कता which is distinct from ब्रह्मप्रवेश. This meaning is quite consistent and according to this, the first stage becomes quite necessary leading on to the second stage, Bhakti, since Bhakti cannot spring all on a sudden without constant thinking about God (सर्वदा तन्मनस्कता as a pre-requisite to Bhakti.

Bhagavadgītā is verily the fountain head of philosophical thoughts lending itself to be interpreted according to the view which one holds. The teachings of the *Bhagavadgītā* are so complex and apparently conflicting that there is no finality in their interpretation as may be seen from the different views explained in the chapter under "The labyrinth of modern interpretations" although there may be some element of truth in each of them just like the description of an elephant by a set of blind men, one describing its leg, another its trunk, the third its tail and so on. This book containing different views on the subject will provide a basis for those who are in quest of fresh light on the teachings of the *Bhagavadgītā*.

—V. Hanumanthachar

———

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

ṚGVARṆAKRAMALAKṢAṆA of Narasiṁha Sūri, ed. by Pandit V. Krishnamacharya, 43 pp., Pub. Adyar Library, Madras.

As the title indicates this is a treatise bearing on the order of letters that make up words in Vedic texts, in 44 verses with author's own commentary. In the very 1st verse the author says "tanoti pūrvaśāstroktamṛgvarṇa-kramalakṣaṇaṁ" and in the 1st line of the 3rd verse he states "tallakṣaṇaṁ prātiśākhyājjñeyaṁ Vyākaraṇāt kvacit" i.e. the author is writing what has been already explained in earlier works and what is said herein can be known from Grammar and also from Prātiśākhya. So the justification for writing what has already been said by earlier writers, seems to be that the present author wants to put together for the sake of convenience what is found diffused in various texts. The various grammatical points which are explained here in such as duplication augmentation, elision etc. of syllables are indicated in verses 3 to 6 followed by detailed explanation in the remaining verses. From the style of the work the learned editor has come to the conclusion that it is not earlier than the beginning of the 19th century. This clearly shows the great importance that is attached to the preservation of the Vedic texts to the very letter even to the present times. Pandit V. Krishnamacharya who has to his credit good number of works edited by him is to be congratulated for editing this work from an old injured manuscript without the aid of second copy for collation.

—V. Hanumanthachar

———

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

SAṄGĪTARATNĀKARA of Śāraṅgadeva, edited by Pandit S. Subrahmanya Sastri, revised by Pandit V. Krishnamacharya. x, 434 pp., Pub. Adyar Library, Madras.

This book under notice is the revised edition of the classical work on music. *Saṅgītaratnākara* of Śāraṅgadeva, Vol. II containing Adhyayas 2 to 4, namely, Rāgaviveka-dhyāya, Prakīrṇakādhyāya and Prabandhādhyāya with the two commentaries, *Sudhākara* of Siṁhabhūpāla and *Kalānidhi* of Kallinātha. The fact that the first edition of this volume went out of print necessitating a reprint shows the great popularity of this book among the students of music and we congratulate the authorities of the Adyar Library for printing it a second time on account of the impact of what is known as light music, the traditional music is now experiencing a slight set back especially among the younger generation. In order to check this trend and to restore the traditional music to its place, the publication of such books is quite welcome. But the subject being highly technical and the texts and commentaries written in Sanskrit their usefulness is at present limited to a few scholars only. If, however, such books are followed also by translations and illustrations in some popular languages, they would certainly benefit more people. A beginning was made in that direction by Dr. C. Kunhan Raja who translated the first Adhyāya of the *Saṅgītaratnākara* with its two commentaries. Translation of the other Adhyāyas is awaited.

ṚGARTHASĀRA of Dinakara Bhaṭṭa, vol. I, ed. by Dr. Aryendra Sharma and K. Sitaramaiya, iv, 70 pp., Púb. Sanskrit Academy, Osmania University, Hyderabad, Decn. Price Rs. 2.50.

Among the commentators of the Vedas who are accepted to be traditionalists, Sāyana is the latest who has

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

interpreted the Vedas from a ritualistic point of view. His commentary has given a strong foot hold for others who have attempted to comment on the Vedas, perhaps with the object of improving upon Sāyana's commentary. The book under notice is one such commentary on the same model as Sāyana's on 207 ṛks selected at random from different Aṣṭakas. The learned editors have clearly brought out in their short but critical introduction the merits and defects of this commentary. On a perusal of this work, a doubt naturally arises whether Dinakara Bhaṭṭa wrote the commentary in full on all the Aṣṭakas, otherwise what is the object in writing it in the manner it is now available ? The Director of the Academy deserves all our praise for starting the series and publishing important works.

THE VĀLMĪKI-RĀMĀYAṆA. Critical Edition, vol I, Bālakāṇḍa. Fascicule 1, edited by G. H. Bhatt and illustrated by the Faculty of Fine Arts, M. S. University of Baroda. Published under the authority of the Maharaja Sayajirao, University of Baroda, Oriental Institute, Baroda, 1958. Price for the critical and illustrated edition of the Rāmāyaṇa. Rs. 250 cloth, Rs. 200 paper. Fascicule 1. Bālakāṇḍa, pages xxxiv and 80. 2 plates containing facsimile of the Nepal manuscript and 2 tri-coloured illustrations.

This is the first part of the critical edition of the *Rāmāyaṇa* of Vālmīki. The model, of course, is set by the critical edition of the *Mahābhārata*, now nearing completion, edited by the Bhandarkar Research Institute of Poona. In addition, we have the factor that the present editor Prof. G. H. Bhatt, the ex-Director of the Baroda Oriental Institute, was a disciple of Dr. Sukthankar, the talented editor of the critical edition of the *Mahābhārata*; and after imbibing the principles of textual criticism of the *Mahābhārata*, G. H.

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

Bhatt is applying by Atideśa (अतिदेश) the same principles to the *Rāmāyaṇa* of Vālmīki.

The undertaking of the critical edition is one of great national importance and the M. S. Gaekwad Oriental Institute has taken time by the forelock in launching upon this venture; and all the States in India including the Union Government are contributing their mite towards this national cause.

The following suggestions may be given for the publication of this great work :—

(1) The three main recensions of the *Rāmāyaṇa* are those of (i) the North-West, (ii) Bengal and (iii) South India including Bombay. But there is a fourth as well, the Mithilā recension known only to a few scholars; and rare manuscripts are still available in Mithilā and in the Darbhanga Raj Palace Library and in the State libraries of Nepal. Cultural contacts with Nepal are now in the increase and it should be very easy to send a team of scholars to work at the manuscripts in Mithilā and Nepal. And a critical edition of the Mithilā version of the *Rāmāyaṇa* should form a separate publication and an integral part of the work of the Institute.

(2) Again, we have to emphasise that the separate critical editions of the three recensions North-Western, Bengal and South Indian should be published serially and separately; and then only the present critical edition which is the result of the collaboration of the three recensions should be published. This alone would enable one to understand how the present critical text is worked into and to appreciate the inter se relation of the recensions.

(3) Several commentaries are available on the *Rāmāyaṇa* and a few of them are still unpublished. For example, the *Kataka* purports *interalia* to be the clearing-nut for the text of the *Rāmāyaṇa*. No doubt, this commentary in manuscript would be used to the fullest advantage by the

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

editor. But the scholar requires the text of the *Kataka* on which any conclusion has been based, to ascertain whether the conclusion of the editor could be the only one. Hence, the publication of the chief unpublished commentaries should be one main part of the undertaking of this critical edition. Any useful information imbedded in other manuscripts may also be given. Thus there will be a variorum edition of all the commentaries on the *Rāmāyaṇa*. The commentary styled धर्माकूतम् which discusses the legal and Dharma aspects of the *Rāmāyaṇa*, the editing of which began in 1911 with the Vani Vilas Press, Srirangam and is now taken up by the S. M. Library Tanjore, has come up only to four Kāṇḍas. If this publication of the chief commentaries and the essence of all the other commentaries is not taken up now and that by the editors of this critical edition, we may well state that it may not perhaps be taken up at all by any one else.

With these suggestions we may conclude that the world of scholars is anxiously expecting the future instalments of this Himalayan undertaking at a very early date.

—A. S. Nataraja Ayyar, M.A., M.L.

———

VEDA-PURĀṆAKĀVYE PṚTHIVI O BHĀRATER ITTHĀSA (in Bengali) by Sri Ramprasad Majumdar, M.A., Munsirhat, Howrah, West Bengal, pp. 1—10 with fwo big Chronological Charts. Price Rs. 2/-

This is a fresh attempt to arrive at some sensible conclusions regarding the History of the World and of India in particular based on Vedic and Pauranic materials. The author in a nutshell has given here the results of his researches which require elaborate treatment. He has given a more plausible explanation of the Parikṣita Janamejaya problem. We will expect more light from the young scholar who seems to be a genuine student of Indian History.

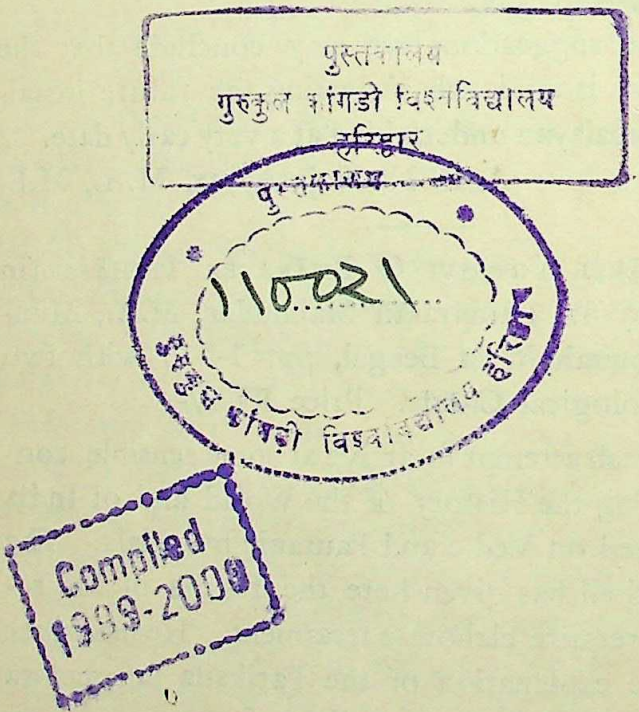
CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

BHĀṢĀTATTVA MANJARĪ—Philology Primer on a model method (in Bengali) by Sri Ramprasad Majumdar, M.A., pp. 1—23. Price Re. 1/-.

The tract under review is also a new attempt in the field of comparative philology. The author objects to many time-honoured theories, for example, he does not subscribe to the view that the Aryan and the Non-Aryans form two different races. He has substantiated his conclusions by citing numerous examples from different languages, ancient and modern. He wants to establish the fact that '*Pratnavaidika*' or earlier Vedic language is the parent stock from which all the Aryan languages sprang forth.

—A. Thakur



CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

यह पुस्तक वितरित न की जाय
NOT TO BE ISSUED

संदर्भ
REFRENCE BOOK

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri

CC-0. In Public Domain. Gurukul Kangri Collection, Haridwar

Digitized by Arya Samaj Foundation Chennai and eGangotri